

GUIDE



New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات

PART ONE

للصف الثالث الثانوى
عـــام – أزهـرى
الفصل الدراسى الأول



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى

3rd Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM




By: Sawsan kameL

Manage Your Term

قم بإدارة فصلك الدراسي (منهجك)



1 6 Units

18 Lectures

المحاضرة	المحتوى
الأولى	Part One: Lessons 1&2
الثانية	Part Two: Lessons 3&4
الثالثة	Part Three: Lessons 5&6

Or Plan B

2 6 Units

12 Lectures

المحاضرة	المحتوى
الأولى	Part One: Lessons 1&2
الثانية	Part Two: Lessons 3&4

3

2 Lectures

المحاضرة	المحتوى
الأولى	Part Three: Lessons 5&6 الوحدات ١،٢،٣
الثانية	Part Three: Lessons 5&6 الوحدات ٤،٥،٦

Total

وبذلك تكون قد انتهيت من دراسة المنهج بالكامل كالآتى :

المحاضرة	المحتوى
١٨ محاضرة	Plan A
١٤ محاضرة	Plan B

تنويه : تختلف الخطة الزمنية بحسب طريقة وأسلوب كل معلم وطالب والوقت المتاح له.

CONTENTS

MODULE 1 Making history

MODULE 2 Working well

NOVEL on Great Expectations

UNIT
1 Read all about it !

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 2 : 7

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  Compare different newspaper styles
- **Writing :**
  A persuasive essay
- **Listening :**
  Understand the key points in a lecture
- **Speaking :**
  Report an event
- **Language :**
  Review past simple, past continuous and present perfect tenses
- **Life skills :**
  Identify bias and exaggeration



إتقان الوحدة

- لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) فى ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل **المعاصر** فى المهارات.
- دليل **المعاصر** فى القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس **المعاصر** اللغوى.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 6 - 9 WB pages 2 & 3



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

announce (d) (v)	يُعلِن	occur (red) (v)	يَحدُث
broadsheet(n)	صحيفة رسمية	piracy(n)	القرصنة
casualty(n)	خسارة - فَقْدْ - حالة وفاة	pirated(adj)	مُقرصَن - مسروق
cheat (ed) (n/v)	غشاش - يغش	ruin(ed) (v/n)	يُدمِّر - حُطام
claim (ed) (v/n)	يزعُم/يدَّعي - زعم - إدعاء	shock(ed) (v/n)	يصدم - الصدمة
compensate (d) (v)	يُعوِّض	shocked(adj)	مصدوم
convict(ed) (n/v)	مُذنب - يُدين	spin - spun (v)	يلفّ/يُدير
demand(ed) (v/n)	يطالب - طَلَب - أمر	tabloid(n)	صحيفة شعبية/ صحيفة إثارة
incident(n)	واقعة - موقف عارض - حَدَث		
investigate(d) (v)	يُحقِّق فى - يتحرى عن	wait with bated breath	ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
investigator(n)	مُحقِّق		
nosy(adj)	مُتطفِّل (حِشَريّ) - فضولى		

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

accurate(adj)	دقيق	midday(n)	منتصف النهار
analysis(n)	تحليل	miss(ed) (v)	يفتقد (يستوحش) - يُفَوِّت
apprenticeship(n)	تدريب مِهَني	nervousness(n)	تَوتُّر
around(adv/prep)	حول/حَوالي	non-native(adj)	أجنبي
author(n)	مُؤلِّف	obtain(ed) (v)	يحصل على - يكتسب
authority(n)	السُّلْطة	obviously(adv)	من الواضح - بوضوح
behave(d) (v)	يتصرَّف - يَسْلُك	permission(n)	إذن/تصريح
block(ed) (v)	يَسدّ/ يُغلِق - يحجب	prove(d) (v)	يُثبِت
celebrity(n)	شخصية مشهورة	publication(n)	النشر - عمل مقروء
chance(n)	فُرصة	publish(ed) (v)	ينشر
content(n)	مُحتوي	publisher(n)	ناشِر (شخص/مؤسسة)
copyright(n)	حق النشر	pun(n)	التورية/التلميح

court(n)	مَحْكَمَة - فناء	punish(ed) (v)	يعاقب
crime(n)	جريمة - جناية	punishment (n)	عقاب - عقوبة
criminal(adj/n)	جنائي/إجرامي - مُجرم	quote(d) (n/v)	اقتباس - يقتبس
deathly (adj)	قاتل/قتَّال	recent(adj)	حديث
digital(adj)	رقمي	refer(red) (v)	يُحيل - يوجّه - يشير
e-book(n)	كتاب الكتروني	remove(d) (v)	يُزيل/يمحو
emotional(adj)	عاطفي	require(d) (v)	يتطلب - يستلزم
event(n)	حَدَث - مُناسَبَة	rescue(d) (v)	يُنقذ
excitement(n)	إثارة - تَحَمُّس	rescuer(n)	مُنقذ
exist(ed) (v)	يوجَد	right(n)	حق
experience(n)	خبرة - تجربة - موقف	route(n)	مسار/خط سير
expert(n/adj)	خبير	secret(n/adj)	سِرّ - سِرّي
factual(adj)	حقيقي - مُتعلق بالحقائق	security(n)	الأمن - التأمين
financially(adv)	مالياً	sensational(adj)	مثير - عاطفي
former(adj)	سابق	share(d) (v)	يشارك/ينشر - يتقاسم
grumpy(adj)	مُتأفف/ مُتذمّر	similarity(n)	تشابُه - شَبَه
highlight(ed) (v/n)	يُبرز - يُظلل - الجزء الأبرز	slang(n)	اللغة العامية
illegal(adj)	غير قانوني	source(n)	مَصْدَر
include(d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن - يُضَمِّن	spoil - spoiled/ spoilt (v)	يُفسد - يُتلف
including(prep)	بما في ذلك	state(d) (v)	يَذْكُر/يقول
intellectual(n)	فكري/عقلي	strict(adj)	صارم/حازم
journalism(n)	الصحافة	sum(n)	مَبْلَغ
journalist(n)	صحفي	thankfully(adv)	لحُسن الحظ - بفضل الله
knock(ed) (v/n)	يَطرق الباب - طَرْقة	trainee(n)	مُتدرب
lawyer(n)	محامي	type(d) up (v)	ينسخ
lecture(d) (v)	مُحاضرة - يُحاضر	violate(d) (v)	ينتهك - يخالف
local(adj)	مَحَلِّيّ	warning(n)	تحذير
long-awaited(adj)	طال انتظاره	whole(adj/n)	كامل - كُلّ/جُلّ
mention(ed) (v)	يقول/يَذْكُر		

3 Definitions تعريفات

announce(d) (v) يُعلن	to officially رسميًا tell people about something, especially about a plan or a decision
broadsheet(n) صحيفة رسمية	a newspaper printed مطبوعة on large sheets of paper, especially a serious جاد newspaper

cheat (n) غشاش	someone who behaves in a dishonest غير أمين way in order to get something
claim(ed) (v) يزعُم/يدَّعي	to say something is true, although it has not been proved
compensate(d) (v) يُعوِّض	to replace or balance يوازن the effect of something bad
demand(ed) (v) يطالب - يأمر	to ask for something in a very strict صارم and serious way
incident(n) حَدَث	- an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent عنيف - a formal word meaning 'event'
investigate(d) (v) يُحقِّق	to try to find out the truth الحقيقة about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem
occur(red) (v) يَحدُث	to happen or exist يوجد in a particular مُحدَّد place or situation
piracy(n) القرصنة	when someone illegally بشكل غير قانوني copies and sells someone's work
ruin(ed) (v) يُدمِّر	to completely spoil something
shocked(adj) مصدوم	an extreme adjective صفة قوية meaning very surprised and upset مُنزعج
tabloid(n) صحيفة شعبية/ صحيفة إثارة	tabloid newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures and stories about famous people, and are often thought of as less serious than other newspapers
wait with bated breath ينتظر بفارغ الصبر	waiting with a lot of nervousness التوتُّر and excitement

Exercise **On Vocabulary** • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. A .... newspaper has small pages and large photos. (LM)
   a. broadcast b. poster c. tabloid d. blog
2. A .... newspaper is a more formal newspaper with large pages. (LM)
   a. tabloid b. poster c. blog d. broadsheet
3. It is .... that some people were typing up copies of the book to share it illegally. (LM)
   a. comfortable b. appeared c. climbed d. claimed
4. Online book .... is an illegal action. (LM)
   a. proficiency b. piracy c. accuracy d. security
5. The accident .... despite the carefulness of the driver because there was a sudden leak in the brake فرامل oil. (LM)
   a. claimed b. caused c. occurred d. excused
6. The factory had collapsed, إنهار so the lawyers .... that the insurance company pay the legal compensation. (LM)
   a. protested b. demanded c. rejected d. disappeared
7. .... is one of the behaviours that you must stop practising. (LM)
   a. Charity b. Checking c. Cheating d. Chatting
8. I was .... to hear that my car had been stolen. (LM)
   a. cheered b. checked c. chocked d. shocked
9. The captain said that a strong wind .... the ship so that both its front and back hit the sides of the canal. (LM)
   a. stopped b. robbed c. begun d. spun
10. The Prime Minister .... that there was a severe penalty against those who build illegally. (LM)
    a. announced b. advertised c. refused d. decreased
11. The police officers are .... the cause of the crime to arrest the criminal. (LM)
    a. announcing b. hiding c. refusing d. investigating

12. Unfortunately, the collapse انهيار of the house has caused tens of .... and a lot of injuries. (LM)
a. facilities b. abilities c. casualties d. impurities

13. After the accident, the injured people were .... financially. ماليًا (LM)
a. regulated b. compensated c. fined d. freed

14. The .... was found guilty of murder after a trial in a court of law. (LM)
a. convict b. innocent c. crime d. judge

15. This Windows version is ...., not genuine.
a. pirated b. criminal c. secret d. shocked

16. The road is closed because there has been a dangerous ....
a. permission b. incident c. cheat d. authority

17. The violent storm completely .... the old wooden house.
a. ruined b. required c. highlighted d. investigated

18. I got tired of those .... people who do not respect others' privacy. خصوصية
a. former b. nosy c. long-awaited d. illegal

19. "He is waiting for a reply to his offer ....". He is very nervous and excited.
a. with baited breath
b. with bated breath
c. with good health
d. in a non-native way

2 Important vocabulary

20. It is not easy for young writers to .... their new books. (LM)
a. write b. appear c. come out d. publish

21. The giant ship had broken down and .... navigation in the Suez Canal for seven days. (LM)
a. allowed b. blocked c. refused d. eased

22. It is a crime to .... copyright law.
a. behave b. investigate c. violate d. prove

23. She was over the moon at her .... wedding party.
   a. former   b. nosy   c. long-awaited   d. illegal
24. Taha Hussein's books have been translated into many languages, ... English, French and Chinese. *(LM)*
   a. including   b. containing   c. consisting   d. taking
25. The World Cup is an important sports ....
   a. event   b. piracy   c. celebrity   d. bias
26. In the past, there was strong cultural .... against women.
   a. event   b. support   c. celebrity   d. bias
27. What really makes this book series at the top is its professional educational ....
   a. court   b. content   c. change   d. lecture
28. I had to answer all the questions of the .... before I could go home.
   a. eyewitness   b. version
   c. investigator   d. exaggeration
29. All students attend the .... of Professor A. Karim.
   a. journalism   b. lectures   c. cliffs   d. locations
30. You have the .... to express your opinion.
   a. warning   b. casualty   c. piracy   d. right
31. The case will be tried in a .... court. Hany will be the lawyer for defence.
   a. pirated   b. criminal   c. secret   d. shocked
32. My father is a retired banker. He was a / an .... manager of the National Bank.
   a. former   b. nosy   c. long-awaited   d. illegal
33. The file was .... to the legal department القسم القانوني to study it.
   a. compensated   b. obtained   c. referred   d. announced
34. The Egyptian .... succeeded in putting an end to building on farmland.
   a. permissions   b. incidents   c. cheats   d. authorities

35. Taking a break is .... to renew your energy.
a. ruined b. required c. highlighted d. investigated

36. At the very beginning of a speech, ... your full name.
a. spoil b. spin c. claim d. state

37. A .... is a place where justice is achieved and crime is punished.
a. court b. content c. copyright d. source

38. In his speech خطبة, Mr Mahmoud .... all his team members by their names.
a. occurred b. mentioned c. blocked d. demanded

39. It is .... to take something that does not belong to you.
a. former b. nosy c. long-awaited d. illegal

40. It is better if the readers can .... ebooks at a lower price.
a. compensate b. obtain c. refer d. announce

41. I can't take this decision without my father's ....
a. permission b. incident c. cheat d. authority

42. Your CV should .... your qualifications and skills.
a. ruin b. require c. highlight d. investigate

43. The students stopped making noise when the teacher's look gave them ....
a. warning b. casualty c. piracy d. right

44. If someone tells you a/an ...., it is not honest to let others know it.
a. pirated b. criminal c. secret d. shocked

3 Definitions

45. To .... is to officially tell people about something, especially about a plan or a decision.
a. cheat b. claim c. announce d. compensate

46. A/An .... is someone who behaves in a dishonest way in order to get something.
a. incident b. cheat c. court d. piracy

47. To .... is to say something is true, although it has not been proved.
a. cheat b. claim c. announce d. compensate

48. To .... is to replace or balance the effect of something bad.
a. demand
b. claim
c. announce
d. compensate

49. A/An .... is an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent.
a. incident
b. aircraft
c. tabloid
d. broadsheet

50. To .... is to ask for something in a very strict and serious way.
a. demand
b. claim
c. announce
d. compensate

51. To .... is to try to find out the truth about something such as a crime, accident, or scientific problem.
a. ruin
b. occur
c. investigate
d. compensate

52. .... newspapers have small pages and short articles with a lot of pictures and stories about famous people, and are often thought of as less serious than other newspapers.
a. Incident
b. Aircraft
c. Tabloid
d. Broadsheet

53. To .... is to happen or exist in a particular place or situation.
a. ruin
b. occur
c. investigate
d. compensate

54. .... is when someone illegally copies and sells someone's work.
a. Incident
b. Cheat
c. Court
d. Piracy

55. To .... is to completely spoil or destroy something.
a. ruin
b. occur
c. investigate
d. compensate

56. .... means very surprised and upset.
a. Deathly
b. Shocked
c. Recent
d. Factual

57. "............" is a phrase meaning waiting with a lot of nervousness and excitement.
a. Wait with bated breathe
b. Wait with bated breath
c. Wait and see
d. Wait patiently

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

Verb	Collocation
compensate	... financially يُعوِّض ... ماليًا
demand	a better pay يطالب بأجر أفضل
do	a sport يُمارِس رياضة
	an amazing job يقوم بعمل رائع
find	a chance for يجِد فرصة لـ
follow	the correct route يأخذ أو يتبع المسار الصحيح
have	a bigger emotional effect on له تأثير عاطفي أكبر علي
	a copy of لديه نسخة من
highlight	the problem يُبرِز المشكلة
make	a lot of money يكسب الكثير من المال
	it clear that يوضح أن
own	the rights to يمتلك حقوق ..
pay	a large sum of money يدفع مبلغ كبير من المال
put	... in place يضع ... في المكان الصحيح
	... in prison يحبس - يضع ... في السجن
receive	a punishment for يتعرض لعقوبة بسبب
	warnings from يتلقى تحذيرات من
ruin	the surprise يحرق المفاجأة
send	... by air ينقل ... بالطائرات
	... by ship ينقل ... بالسُّفُن
share	... on social media يشارك ... على وسائل التواصُل
show	... online يعرض ... على الإنترنت
tell	the media يُخبِر وسائل الإعلام
violate	copyright law ينتهك قانون حقوق النشر
win	running races يفوز بسباقات الجري

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The government will .... those who lost their homes in the earthquake financially.
   a. own b. violate c. compensate d. make

2. One of the ways to .... problems is to discuss them on social media and talk shows.
   a. pay b. highlight c. do d. tell
3. The warning we .... from our teacher made us all work hard.
   a. pay b. won c. demanded d. received
4. J.K. Rowling .... the rights to Harry Potter series.
   a. owns b. shows c. compensates d. makes
5. I wish I knew who .... the media about our secret plan.
   a. put b. highlighted c. did d. told
6. You have the right to .... your rights, but first carry out your duties واجبات.
   a. pay b. send c. demand d. violate
7. It is a crime when the copyright law is ....
   a. owned b. violated c. compensated d. made
8. The security cameras have already been .... in place.
   a. put b. highlighted c. done d. told
9. The emotional effect our family house .... on us is what stops us from selling it.
   a. pays b. has c. demands d. receives
10. A lot of money has been .... by communication businesses.
   a. told b. violated c. compensated d. made

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
casualty(n)	حالة وفاة	mortality/death
casualty(n)	ضحية/ مُتضرِّر	victim/sufferer
Casualty(n)	قسم الطوارئ	Emergency
cheat (n)	غشاش	cheater/ deceiver
compensate for (v)	يُعوِّض	make up for
demand(ed) (v)	يطالب	call for/ask for/request
investigate(d) (v)	يُحقِّق	look into
nosy(adj)	مُتطفِّل - فضولى	curious/ inquisitive
occur(red) (v)	يَحدُث	happen/take place
ruin (v)	يُدمِّر	destroy/wreck
with bated breath	بفارغ الصبر	in a nervous and excited state
violate(d) (v)	يخالف	break/disobey

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
pirated(adj)	مُقرصَن - مسروق	genuine / legal	أصلى / شرعى
ruin (v)	يُدمِّر	• restore / save • build / construct	يستعيد / يُنقذ يبنى - يشيد
violate (v)	يخالف	comply with/respect/follow	يتّبع

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I applied for the new job and I am waiting for the answer to my application with bated breath." This means that I .... *(LM)*
   a. no longer expect that I will get the new job
   b. am waiting hopelessly to get promoted
   c. am in a nervous and excited state anticipating what will happen
   d. am sure I will get the new job
2. A successful journalist must be nosy and interested in people. This means that he/she has to be .... *(LM)*
   a. not curious and ambitious
   b. curious and inquisitive
   c. cheerful and forgiving
   d. unenthusiastically waiting for good news
3. "The new traffic law aims to reduce road casualties." The word 'casualty' in this sentence is a synonym of ....
   a. deaths b. victims c. emergency d. a & b
4. "I never download pirated material." In this sentence. 'pirated' is an antonym of ....
   a. genuine b. illegal c. efficient d. destroyed
5. '............' is to ''wreck' as 'nosy' is to 'curious'.
   a. Restore b. Save c. Ruin d. Violate
6. "The ship was ruined in a storm." In this utterance, the verb "ruined" can be replaced by ....
   a. restored b. wrecked c. saved d. a & c

7. "A good citizen never violates the law." This means a good citizen always .... the law.

a. follows b. breaks c. disobeys d. works against

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
announce يُعلِن - يُقِرّ بـ	announcement إعلان - بيان announcer مُعلِن / مُذيع	announced مُعلَن unannounced سرّي - غير مُعلَن	unannounced سرًا - بشكل غير مُتوقَّع
cheat يغش / يخدع	cheat/ cheater غشاش cheating الغش	-	-
claim يَزعم/يدَّعي - يطالب بـ	claim زَعْم/إدعاء - مُطالبة	-	-
investigate يُحقِّق في	investigator مُحقِّق investigation تَحقيق	investigatory تحقيقي	-
occur يَحدُث	occurrence حدوث	-	-
pirate يُقرصِن - يستولي على	pirate قُرصان piracy القرصنة - الاستيلاء على عمل الغير	pirated مُقرصَن - مسروق	-
shock يَصْدِم/يفاجئ	shock صدمة	shocking صادم shocked مصدوم	-
spin يلفّ/يدور - يُلفِّق/يخلط الأمور - يَغزِل	spin لفة/دورة - تلفيق/خلط الأمور	spinning دوّار	-

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What a ....! He sold me expired goods.

a. cheat b. cheater c. cheating d. a & b

2. Online............ is punished by law.

a. cheat b. cheater c. cheating d. a & b

3. The .... of the exam results is expected to take place tomorrow.
   a. announce b. announcer c. announcement d. unannounced
4. A news .... on TV needs to be a good speaker.
   a. announce b. announcer c. announcement d. unannounced
5. The local authorities will .... the causes of the energy cut-offs.
   a. announce b. announcer c. announcement d. unannounced
6. "The team of experts arrived unannounced." In this sentence, 'unannounced' is a/an ....
   a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
7. The police .... kidnapping children in this area.
   a. investigate b. investigation c. investigators d. investigatory
8. Two police .... are looking into the kidnapping of children in this area.
   a. investigate b. investigation c. investigators d. investigatory
9. Kidnapping children in this area is under ....
   a. investigate b. investigation c. investigators d. investigatory
10. Earthquakes are common .... in Japan.
   a. shock b. shocking c. occur d. occurrence
11. Earthquakes .... very often in Japan.
   a. shock b. shocking c. occur d. occurrence
12. I was .... by his violent reaction.
   a. shocked b. shocking c. occurred d. occurrence
13. His violent reaction was .... to me .
   a. shocked b. shocking c. occurred d. occurrence

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as far as	على قدر – نفس مسافة	large sum of money	مبلغ كبير من المال
at a lower price	بسعر أقل	long-awaited ending	النهاية التى طال انتظارها
at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة	on other sites	على مواقع أخرى
at midday	فى منتصف النهار	on social media	فى وسائل التواصل
be about three times more	يكون أكثر بثلاثة أضعاف	on the internet	على شبكة الإنترنت
be due to	يكون من المُقرَّر أن	pirated digital copy	نسخة رقمية مُقرصَنة

be punished by law	يعاقب عليه القانون	possible casualties	الخسائر المحتملة
Great Bitter Lakes	البحيرات المُرّة العظمى	return to normal	يعود للوضع الطبيعي
business products	مُنتجات تجارية	sand storm	عاصفة رملية
crime court	محكمة جنائية	seriously ill	مريض بشدة
crime of piracy	جريمة القرصنة	square metre	متر مربع
deathly hallows	المقدسات القاتلة	strong wind	رياح قوية
extreme adjective	صفة قوية	that is because	ذلك لأن
for ages	لمدة طويلة	the true cause of	السبب الحقيقي لـ
in a dishonest way	بطريقة غير أمينة	the whole book	الكتاب بالكامل
in addition to	بالإضافة إلي	twenty-year-old student	طالب يبلغ من العمر عشرون عامًا
in her late 20s	في أواخر العشرينات من عمرها	wait with bated breath	ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
internet cheat	الغش الإلكتروني/ الغش عبر الإنترنت		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

encourage ... to	يُشجّع ... أن	plan to	يخطط أن
find out	يكتشف	refer ... to	يُحيل ... إلي
get into	ينخرط في - يدخل	travel past	يجتاز/يمُر بجوار
give up	يستسلم - يتخلى عن	wait for	ينتظر
pass through	يمر من خلال		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He took a short route, so he didn't run as .... as other runners.
   a. soon b. well c. far d. good
2. A good teacher encourages students .... hard.
   a. work b. to work c. working d. to working
3. Sama is a five-............-old child.
   a. year b. year's c. years d. years'
4. I found the report long, so I referred it .... the secretary to summarise it.
   a. from b. into c. with d. to
5. You can find all types of information .... the internet.
   a. in b. on c. to d. with
6. While looking for my keys, I found .... that there were some important documents under the desk.
   a. from b. up c. of d. out

7. They agreed to meet .... midday.
   a. on b. in c. at d. with
8. No ship could travel .... Ever Given. It blocked the canal.
   a. on b. past c. paste d. pass

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

announce - advertise

- **announce+ obj.** يُعلِن عن (قرار/نية/خطة/خبر/مناسبة...) بغرض تبليغ أو إخبار الآخرين
  - We announce our decisions on El-Moasser page on Facebook.
- **advertise + obj.** يُعلِن عن (سلعة/خدمة...) بغرض تجاري
  - We advertise our publications إصدارات on El-Moasser page on Facebook.

investigate - check

- **investigate** يُحقِّق في (للوصول إلى الحقيقة/الفاعل...)
  - The police are still investigating the crime.
- **check** يتحقق من/يفحص (للتأكد من صحة/سلامة/صلاحية/كفاءة...)
  - The mechanic checked my car engine.

incident - accident - event - occasion

- **accident** حادِث (غير متوقع يؤدي إلي خسائر في الأرواح أو الممتلكات)
  - The car accident resulted in the death of two young people and an old woman.
- **incident** واقِعَة - حادِث عارِض - حَدَث (غير متوقع يؤدي إلي خسائر في الممتلكات)
  - This incident is strange here in our town.
- **incident** أزمة/نزاع بين دولتين
  - The terrorist attack caused a diplomatic incident.
- **event** حَدَث/مُناسَبة هامة
  - I have no comment on the recent political events.
- **occasion** مُناسبة اجتماعية
  - I invited all my friends on the occasion of my sister's wedding.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The .... between the two countries resulted from an attack near the borders الحدود.
   a. incident b. accident c. phenomenon d. occasion

2. We meet to celebrate the .... of my brother's success.
   a. incident b. accident c. phenomenon d. occasion
3. All official decisions are .... on Channel One.
   a. said b. advertised c. announced d. claimed
4. Our products are .... on our website.
   a. said b. advertised c. announced d. claimed
5. I think we do not have any apples left, but I will ....
   a. check b. advertise c. announce d. investigate
6. To .... something is to look into it.
   a. advertise b. check c. announce d. investigate

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

compensate

- **compensate (for) = make up for (v)** يُعوِّض (عن)
  - His hard work compensates his limited skills.
  - Ayman compensated Abdulrahman for making him return to work in his honeymoon شهر العسل.

لاحظ أن:

- Nothing will compensate me the death of my grandfather. (✗)
- Nothing will compensate me for the death of my grandfather. (✓)

- **compensatory (adj)** تعويضي
  - I was given a compensatory sum of money.
- **compensation (for) (n)** تعويض (عن)
  - Workers get compensations for work injuries إصابات.
- **compensation (from) (n)** تعويض (من)
  - Workers get compensations from their employers.
- **in compensation (for) (n)** عوضًا (عن)
  - She got 240 thousand pounds in compensation for her damaged car.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- pay/award/give/offer ... a compensation ... يدفع/يعرِض تعويضًا لـ
- receive a compensation يتلقي تعويضًا
- claim/demand/seek a compensation يطالب بتعويض
- financial compensation تعويض مالي
- full compensation تعويض كامل
- partial compensation تعويض جزئي

demand

- **demand (for) (n)** الطلب/الإقبال (علي)
  - Demand for cold drinks increases in summer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- in demand (=wanted) مطلوب
- high/big/great/huge demand طلب مرتفع
- low demand طلب منخفض
- cope with/satisfy/meet demand يُلبّي الطلب
- a surge in demand طفرة في الطلب
- supply and demand العرض والطلب

- **demand (for) (n)** المطالبة (بـ)
  - Your demand for a better pay راتب أفضل during coronavirus pandemic جائحة is not wise.
- **demand(ed) (to) (v)** يطلُب/يطالب (بـ)
  - We demand to know when we will be promoted.

لاحظ أن:

عند استخدام جملة بعد الفعل demand فإن فعلها يكون (inf. / should + inf.):

- ... demand + (that) + subj. + inf. / should + inf. ... .

- My father demands that Ali be home before midnight. (formal)
- My father demands that Ali should be home before midnight. (formal)
- My father demands that Ali is home before midnight. (informal)

piracy

- **pirate (n)** قُرصان
  - In this area, pirates attack and take ships.
  - Copyright pirates should be punished.
- **pirate (d) (v)** يستولي علي/يُقرصِن
  - Those who pirate novels, videos and music are criminals.
- **pirated (adj)** مسروق/ مُقرصَن
  - When you buy pirated materials, you encourage copyright thieves.



spin

- **spin - spun - spun (v) يلف/يدور**
  - When you press the On button, the laptop fan starts to spin.
- **spin - spun - spun (v) يغالط/يُلفّق/يختلق**
  - Sometimes, children spin stories to escape punishment يفلت من العقاب.
- **spin (n) لفة/دورة**
  - The earth's spin around itself takes 24 hours.
- **spin (n) تلفيق/تزيين الكلام/مغالطة**
  - Don't try to put a spin on the situation. You've made a big mistake.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A writer has to provide evidence دليل to prove his/her ....
   a. claim b. casualty c. violation d. chance
2. Her fluency and intelligence .... her lack of experience.
   a. wait with bated breath for b. check
   c. find out about d. make up for
3. We are given a/an .... day off when a national holiday falls on a Friday.
   a. investigatory b. compensatory c. thankful d. right
4. By way of .... their busy week, I take my children out on boat trips every week.
   a. violation b. announcement c. investigation d. compensation
5. I banged my head and the room started to ....
   a. pirate b. announce c. spin d. shock

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	التعبير (prove a claim) يعني (يُثبت افتراض أو رأي).
2.	d	التعبير (make up for) يعني (يُعوِّض).
3.	b	التعبير (a compensatory day off) يعني (يوم إجازة تعويضي).
4.	d	التعبير (by way of compensation) يعني (من قبيل التعويض).
5.	c	التعبير (the room started to spin) يعني (بدأت أشعر بالدوار).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Tabloid Vs. Broadsheet

(SB page 6)

A **tabloid** newspaper has small pages and large photos. It has short stories[1] which are easy to explain[2]. It uses simple language and large headlines[3], which often include[4] funny[5] rhymes[6] or jokes[7].

A **broadsheet** newspaper is a more formal[8] newspaper with large pages. It has more international news. Articles[9] are more factual[10] and use longer sentences and paragraphs. They have fewer photos than tabloid newspapers.

Extra information

Broadsheets are also known as the quality press[11] and are more likely to include analysis[12] of the news, as well as reporting and opinion pieces.[13] People believe they are more intellectual[14] and are read by better educated readers. Some examples are The Times (UK) and The Washington Post (US). Tabloid newspapers often focus on sensational[15] or celebrity[16] stories as well as general news. Although they use simple language, they often include slang[17] and puns[18] so are not necessarily easier for non-native[19] speakers to understand. Some examples are The Sun (UK) and The New York Post (US).

Check Vocabulary

(1) قصص - أخبار
(2) يشرح - يُفسّر
(3) عناوين رئيسية
(4) يتضمن
(5) مُضحك
(6) أبيات شعر / أناشيد
(7) نكات
(8) رسمي
(9) مقالات
(10) حقيقي
(11) صحافة نموذجية (عالية الجودة)
(12) تحليل
(13) أجزاء - فقرات
(14) فكري/عقلي
(15) مثير
(16) شخصية مشهورة
(17) اللغة العامية
(18) التورية / التلميح
(19) أجنبي

New Harry Potter book shown online

(SB page 6)

Photographs of all 784 pages of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows[1] have appeared on the internet, four days before J.K. Rowling's final[2] book is due to[3] be published[4].

It is not known who took photographs of the book, whose contents[5] have been kept a secret[6] before the book is published at 12.01 am on Saturday.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المقدسات القاتلة
(2) نهائي
(3) من المقرر أن
(4) ينشر
(5) مُحتويات
(6) سِرّ

Some websites have removed[7] the photos after receiving[8] warnings[9] from the publisher's[10] lawyers[11], but photos of the book can still be read on other sites. It is also claimed[12] that some people were typing up[13] copies[14] of the book from the photos to share[15] on social media[16].

This all occurred[17] despite[18] the careful security[19] which has been put in place before the book is published. This included[20] asking booksellers[21] not to tell the media[22] when or if they had copies of the book. The incident[23] highlights[24] the problems of online book piracy[25], which is becoming much more common[26].

(7) يُزيل/يمحو
(8) يتلقَّي - يتسلم
(9) تحذيرات
(10) ناشر
(11) محامون
(12) يَزْعُم - يَدَّعي
(13) ينسخ
(14) نُسَخ
(15) يشارك/ينشر
(16) وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي
(17) يَحدُث
(18) بالرغم من / برغم
(19) الأمن - التأمين
(20) يتضمَّن - يشتمل علي
(21) موزعي الكُتب
(22) وسائل الإعلام
(23) حادث
(24) يُبرز
(25) القرصنة
(26) شائع - مُنتشِر

Internet cheat ruins Potter surprise

(SB page 7)

Just four days before J.K. Rowling's final book about Harry Potter is published, an internet cheat[1] has shared every page of the book online. This has ruined[2] the surprise for millions of readers, who have been waiting with bated breath[3] to find out[4] what happens to the famous character.

Several websites[5] show photographs of every page of Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows, which means that you can read the whole book[6] online, including[7] the long-awaited[8] ending[9]. Lawyers have demanded[10] that the websites stop showing the illegal[11] photos, and fortunately[12] some websites have agreed. However, other people have typed up the text from the photos and are likely to share the story on other websites.

Check Vocabulary

(1) غشاش
(2) يُدمِّر
(3) ينتظر بفارغ الصبر
(4) يكتشف
(5) مواقع الكترونية
(6) الكتاب بالكامل
(7) بما في ذلك
(8) طال انتظاره
(9) نهاية
(10) يطالب
(11) غير قانوني
(12) لحُسن الحظ

Fans[13] of Harry Potter were shocked[14] by the news [15]. "It's terrible[16]," says Kate Strong from Cambridge, who plans to[17] buy the new book for her children. "The person who has done this should be put in prison[18]".

(13) مُعجَبين
(14) يصدم
(15) خبر/أخبار
(16) فظيع
(17) يخطط أن
(18) السجن

Punished for stealing books! *(WB page 2)*

An International[1] Crime[2] Court[3] in Denmark punished[4] a twenty-year-old student for selling pirated[5] digital[6] copies of textbooks [7].The student said she was only trying to help others buy cheaper books.



The student was punished and required[8] to pay[9] a large sum[10] of money for her crime. Her crimes were referred[11] to the country's International Crime Court.

Check Vocabulary

(1) دُوَليّ - عالمي
(2) جريمة - جناية
(3) مَحْكَمَة
(4) يعاقب
(5) مُقرصَن - مسروق
(6) رقمي
(7) كتاب دراسي
(8) يتطلَّب - يستلزم
(9) يدفع مال
(10) مَبْلَغ
(11) يُحيل - يوجّه

Piracy is a Crime! *(WB page 2)*

In recent[1] news, a former[2] Danish[3] student in her late 20s was punished for selling[4] pirated digital copies of textbooks. The criminal lawyer[5] made it clear[6] that copying e-books[7] without the permission[8] of the author[9] is a crime.

The criminal lawyer stated[10] that the convict[11] has now received a punishment[12] for violating[13] copyright[14] law[15]. He also said that it is important to understand that even though it is easy to do so, it is a crime to copy e-books without the permission of the author.

When asked to give a reason why she sold books that she does not own[16] the rights[17] to, the student said she was helping students obtain[18] books at a lower[19] price. It was made clear to her that copying e-books that one does not own the rights to is illegal[20]. In addition to being punished by law, she is also required to pay a large sum of money for the crime of piracy.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حديث
(2) سابق
(3) دانماركي
(4) يبيع
(5) محامي جنائي
(6) واضح
(7) كتاب الكتروني
(8) إذن/تصريح
(9) مُؤلِّف
(10) يَذْكُر/يقول
(11) مُتَهم - مُذنِب
(12) عقاب - عقوبة
(13) ينتهك / يخالف
(14) حق النشر
(15) قانون
(16) يمتلك
(17) حقوق
(18) يحصل على - يكتسب
(19) أقل
(20) غير قانوني

Ever Given blocks Suez Canal, March 2021

(SB page 9)

Rescuers[1] have finally moved[2] a huge[3] ship which was blocking[4] traffic[5] going through the Suez Canal. The ship, called the Ever Given, is 400 metres long and weighs[6] 200,000 tonnes[7]. It is one of the largest of this type of ship in the world.

The ship was travelling through the Suez Canal on 23 March when there was a sand storm[8]. The ship's captain[9] said that a strong wind spun[10] the ship so that both its front[11] and back[12] hit the sides[13] of the canal. The result was that no ships could travel past[14] the ship for nearly[15] a week.

Yesterday, more than 380 ships were waiting to pass[16] through the canal. Many ship companies wanted to know if there was another route[17]. A few of the ships' captains decided to go around the south of Africa instead[18], but this added about eight days to their journeys. At the same time, some countries announced[19] that they would send products by air, but this is about three times more expensive as sending it by ship.

The accident was terrible for businesses[20] around the world. That is because around[21] 12% of the world's business products[22] pass through the canal each day, so the accident[23] cost[24] both Egypt and other countries millions of dollars.

Luckily[25], smaller Egyptian boats were finally able to move the Ever Given yesterday.

They did an amazing job. They moved around 30,000 square metres[26] of sand under the ship before they took the ship to the Great Bitter Lakes[27], in the middle[28] of the canal. The canal authorities[29] told us that they won't know the true[30] cause[31] of the accident until they investigate[32].

Although the canal is open for ships again today, traffic through the canal won't return to normal[33] for many days. Experts[34] are investigating the possible[35] casualties[36] for all sides. They are also studying the accident carefully to see how Egypt can be compensated[37] financially[38].

Check Vocabulary

(1) فرق الإنقاذ
(2) يُحرِّك - يتحرك
(3) هائل الحجم
(4) يَسدّ/ يُغلق
(5) حركة السَّيْر
(6) يَزِن/يبلغ وزنه
(7) طَنّ
(8) عاصفة رملية
(9) قبطان
(10) يلفّ/يُدير
(11) مُقدِّمة
(12) مؤخِّرة
(13) جانب
(14) يجتاز/يَمُرّ من
(15) تقريبًا
(16) يجتاز/يَمُرّ
(17) مَسار/خط سير
(18) بدلًا مِن
(19) يُعلن
(20) أنشطة تجارية
(21) حول/حوالي
(22) مُنتجات
(23) حادثة
(24) يُكلِّف - يتكلَّف
(25) لحُسْن الحظ
(26) متر مربع
(27) البحيرات المُرّة العُظمى
(28) وسط
(29) السُّلطات
(30) حقيقي/صحيح
(31) سبب
(32) يُحقِّق
(33) طبيعي/عادي
(34) الخُبراء
(35) مُمكن/مُحتمَل
(36) خسائر
(37) يُعوِّض
(38) ماليًا

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 8)

Reporter : How did you get into[1] journalism[2] ?

Journalist : I started as a trainee[3] on a local[4] newspaper and then I started a three-year apprenticeship[5]. I've written for many newspapers since that time.

Reporter : What advice can you give a student reporter[6] like me?

Journalist : Learn from your mistakes! When I was first interviewing people, I was asking too many questions. Let the person talk and always listen very carefully. Give both sides of the story and make sure any facts or quotes[7] are accurate[8]. When I first wrote news stories, I often included my own feelings and opinions. This was not good. If you're writing a news story, try to be objective [9].

Reporter : Have you ever interviewed anyone famous?

Journalist : I have interviewed lots of celebrities[10].

Reporter : Who was the most annoying [11] person you've interviewed?

Journalist : There was one grumpy [12] person that I remember! I was interviewing a well-known [13] actor [14] when he told me to be quiet. The actor didn't want to answer my questions!

Reporter : Is it a hard job?

Journalist : It can be. Sometimes I wonder why I'm tired, and I remember that I've worked for twelve hours without a break! But journalists usually love what they do.

Reporter : What kind of person does a good journalist have to be?

Journalist : You obviously [15] have to be good at writing, but you also have to be a naturally nosy [16] person and you really need to be interested in people. I've worked with a lot of journalists and the best ones have these three qualities.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ينخرط في
(2) الصحافة
(3) مُتدرب
(4) مَحَلِّيّ
(5) تدريب مهني
(6) صحفي
(7) اقتباسات
(8) دقيق
(9) موضوعي
(10) شخصية مشهورة
(11) مُزعج
(12) مُتأفف/ مُتذمر
(13) مشهور
(14) مُمثل
(15) من الواضح
(16) فضولي (حِشَرِيّ)

Reporter : What advice would you give to young people listening who want to become journalists ?

Journalist : Get some experience(17) on the school newspaper or work for a local newspaper for free(18) . And don't give up(19) . Keep trying until someone gives you a chance(20) . I was working as a volunteer(21) and at a shop while I was at university. And I applied for eighteen jobs before I got my first full-time job. 12 years later, I'm still here!

(17) خبرة
(18) مجاناً
(19) يستسلم
(20) فُرصة
(21) متطوع

(WB page 3)

Manal : Mum, Soha has broken the computer! It's not working.
Soha : I didn't break it, Manal!
Manal : But you used it last.
Soha : Yes, but it was already broken when I tried to use it.
Mum : Sorry, girls, I forgot to say that it broke yesterday.
Dad : That computer is always breaking! We need a new one.



Part IV Language

تنويه تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Present Perfect simple : active and passive
المضارع التام البسيط : المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active المبنى للمعلوم

⇨ I / You / We / They + have ('ve) + P.P. ... .
⇨ He / She / It + has ('s) + P.P. ... .

- I have watched a film. - Omar has bought some CDs.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

⇨ Object المفعول + have / has + been + P.P. ... .

- A film has been watched (by me).
- Some CDs have been bought (by Omar).

Uses of the Present Perfect simple

استخدامات المضارع التام البسيط

١ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف غير منتهية (بدأت فى الماضى و لم تنتهى حتى الآن):

- I've studied English since 2013. *(I still study English at present)*

٢ التعبير عن مواقف حدثت فى الماضى دون ذكر وقت حدوثها ، و هذا يشتمل علي:

أ . التعبير عن الخبرات و التجارب السابقة :

- She has worked in this school for years.
- I've never played squash.

ب . التعبير عمّا أنجزه أو حققه الفاعل (حتى الآن):

- My daughter has learned to speak English. *(She can speak English now)*

جـ . أحداث منتظرة أو متوقعة:

- The train hasn't arrived at the station yet.

٣ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف فى الماضى و لها أثر على الحاضر (جملة الأثر تكون فى المضارع):

- I've eaten a lot of food, so I feel very full.

٤ التعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف قابلة للتكرار (يمكن استخدام تعبيرات زمنية مثل):

this week | this month | this morning | today | in the last year

- I have drunk two cups of coffee today. *(I can drink more cups of coffee today)*

٥ التعبير عن المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية (يمكن استخدام المضارع البسيط لنفس الغرض):

- After my father has left (leaves) home, I'll ask mum to give me more money.

٦ لاحظ ما يلى جيدًا :

have / has been to	ذهب وعاد
have / has gone to	ذهب ولم يعد بعد

- I've been to Paris three times. I want to go there again.
- Ahmed has gone to the club. You can join him there now.

Mini Test 1 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... bought some flour.
   a. have b. has c. have been d. has been
2. Some flour .... bought.
   a. have b. has c. have been d. has been
3. She .... fed the babies.
   a. have b. has c. have been d. has been

4. The babies .... fed.
a. have b. has c. have been d. has been

5. He .... physics for the last two hours.
a. studied b. was studied c. has studied d. was studying

6. The train hasn't arrived .... We're still waiting.
a. yet b. lately c. already d. ago

7. Mum .... lunch. I can smell her delicious food.
a. had prepared b. has prepared c. is prepared d. would prepare

8. I .... three emails this morning. I'll send two more.
a. send b. had sent c. was sent d. have sent

9. She .... to the fruitseller's. The apples she has bought are fantastic.
a. has gone b. had gone c. has been d. had been

10. I .... squash. I don't even know its rules.
a. have never played b. didn't play
c. have ever played d. ever played

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية مع المضارع التام:

just تواً | **already** بالفعل | **recently** مؤخراً | **lately** مؤخراً | **yet** حتى الآن

- The manager has just left the office.
- We have visited some friends lately / recently.
- Ahmed hasn't done his homework yet. (فى النفى والإستفهام)

② يأتى بعد (for) المدة التى استغرقها حدوث الفعل:

for لمدة + **a moment**	**a while** لحظة	**two seconds**
three minutes	**half an hour**	**five days**
six months	**ten years**	**a decade** عقد
two centuries قرنين	**ages** مدة طويلة	**a long time** لمدة طويلة
a short time	**the last**	**long**
as long as I can remember		

- I've had this mobile for 10 years. - He's been here for 6 months.

③ يأتى بعد (since) تعبير زمنى يدل على توقيت بداية حدوث الفعل:

since منذ + **(six o'clock)**	**Monday**	**26th September**
March	**summer**	**2013**
yesterday	**last month**	**then** منذ ذلك الحين
arrival وصول	**his departure** رحيله	**her birth** ميلادها
death موت	**... etc.**	

- I've lived in this flat since 2015. - He's been here since May.
- Rodayna has lived in this town since her birth.
- She has not slept since her departure.

④ فى حال وجود جملة بعد (since) يكون زمنها ماضى بسيط/ مضارع تام:
- I haven't eaten anything since I left (have felt) home this morning.

⑤ يمكن استخدام مدة زمنية بعد (since) بشرط استخدام (ago) بعد المدة زمنية:
since + a period of time + ago
- We've started this project since 10 years ago.

⑥ تذكر أن (since) تستخدم أحيانًا بمعنى (because):
- He is tired since he has been working all day.

⑦ لاحظ أن :
- يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للسؤال عن وقت بداية الحدث:
Since when + have / has + Subj. فاعل + p.p. .... ?
- Since when have you lived in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر ما زال يعيش فى أسوان)
- يمكن استخدام الصيغة التالية للسؤال عن المدة التى استغرقها الحدث :
For how long + have / has + Subj. فاعل + p.p. .... ?
=How long + have / has + Subj. فاعل + p.p. .... for ?
- For how long have you lived in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر لا يزال يعيش فى أسوان)
- How long have you lived in Aswan for, Omar ? (عمر لا يزال يعيش فى أسوان)
- ولاحظ أن :
How long ago + did + Subj. فاعل + inf. .... ?
- How long ago did you live in Aswan, Omar ? (عمر لم يعد يعيش فى أسوان)

The difference between the present perfect and the past simple
الفرق بين المضارع التام والماضى البسيط

Present Perfect المضارع التام	Past Simple الماضى البسيط
① الاهتمام بنتيجة الحدث. - They have lost their money. (أصبحوا مفلسين)	① الاهتمام بالحدث نفسه. - They lost their money.
② حدث من فترة قصيرة للغاية. - He has just arrived.	② حدث تم من فترة معينة. - He arrived two hours ago.
③ حدث قد يتعدل. - I haven't met Mohammed Salah. (محمد صلاح مازال حيًا و قد تقابله)	③ حدث يستحيل تعديله. - I didn't meet president Sadat. (لأن السادات توفى)

٤ حدث تم في فترة لم تنتهي بعد. - It hasn't rained this morning. (لم ينتهي الصباح بعد ولم تمطر)	١ حدث تم في فترة وانتهت. - It didn't rain this morning. (انتهى الصباح)
٥ حدث أو عادة مستمرة. - He has always been fit. (استمر على حاله ولم يتغير)	٢ حدث أو عادة غير مستمرة. - He was always fit. (هو كان ولكن الآن أصبح غير لائق بدنياً)
٦ زمن غير محدد في الماضي. - He has travelled to America.	٣ زمن محدد في الماضي. - He travelled to America yesterday.

Mini Test 2 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He has .... arrived home. Let him relax for a few minutes before you talk to him.
   a. just b. ever c. never d. yet
2. I have met some old friends ....
   a. yet b. lately c. recently d. b & c
3. I haven't heard from her .... ages. I hope she is better.
   a. at b. since c. for d. a & c
4. I haven't heard from her .... last April. I hope she is better.
   a. at b. since c. for d. a & c
5. I have watched football matches .... as long as I can remember.
   a. so b. such c. since d. for
6. I have watched football matches .... my childhood.
   a. so b. such c. since d. for
7. We haven't met since we .... to our new villa.
   a. moved b. move c. were moved d. has moved
8. .... when have you waited for her?
   a. For b. Since c. Ago d. a & c
9. .... how long have you waited for her?
   a. For b. Since c. Ago d. a & c
10. How long .... did you start waiting for her?
    a. for b. since c. ago d. a & c

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

First Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن المرور بموقف أو تجربة لأول مرة:

Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... before (now).

- Ahmed has never visited Paris before (now).

This is the first time + subj. + have/has + (ever) + p.p. ...

- This is the first time Ahmed has (ever) visited Paris.

This is the first time + for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. ...

- This is the first time for Ahmed to visit Paris.

A different Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية لتمييز موقف أو تجربة عن مواقف سابقة :

جملة تفضيل .... + subject + have/has + ever + p.p. ...

- This is the cleverest student I have ever seen.
- That is the most delicious food we have ever eaten.

Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... such (a / an) + صفة + اسم .

- I have never seen such a clever student.
- We have never eaten such delicious food.

Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... (a / an) + صفة + اسم + like ... .

- I have never seen a clever student like this (one).
- We have never eaten delicious food like that.

Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... (a / an) + اسم + as + صفة + as + ...

- I have never seen a student as clever as this (one).
- We have never eaten food as delicious as that.

Subj. + have/has + never + p.p. ... (a / an) + اسم + صفة مقارنة + than ... .

- I have never seen a student cleverer than this (one).
- We have never eaten food more delicious than that.

Last Experience

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن آخر حدوث للموقف أو التجربة:

Subj.+ haven't /hasn't + p.p. ... + since / for ...

- Zamzam hasn't gone out since Monday.

Subj. + last + تصريف ثان + in / on / at + تعبير زمني ماضي

- Zamzam last went shopping on Monday.

The last time + subj.+ تصريف ثان + was + in / on / at + تعبير زمني ماضي

- The last time Zamzam went shopping was on Monday.

Subj. + haven't /hasn't + p.p. ... + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط

- Ahmed hasn't met his grandmother since he was in Assuit.

Subj. + last + تصريف ثان + when + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط

= Ahmed last met his grandmother when he was in Assuit.

Starting point / duration

* لاحظ استخدام الأساليب التالية للتعبير عن وقت بداية الحدث أو المدة التي استغرقتها:

Subject + have /has + p.p. ... + for + period

- Mohammed has lived in Aswan for 21 years.

Subject + have /has + p.p. ... + since + a point in time

- Mohammed has lived in Aswan since 1999.

Subject + started /began + (to + inf. / gerund). + period + ago

- Mohammed started to live (living) in Aswan 21 years ago / in 2001.

It is / has been + period + since + past simple جملة ماضي بسيط

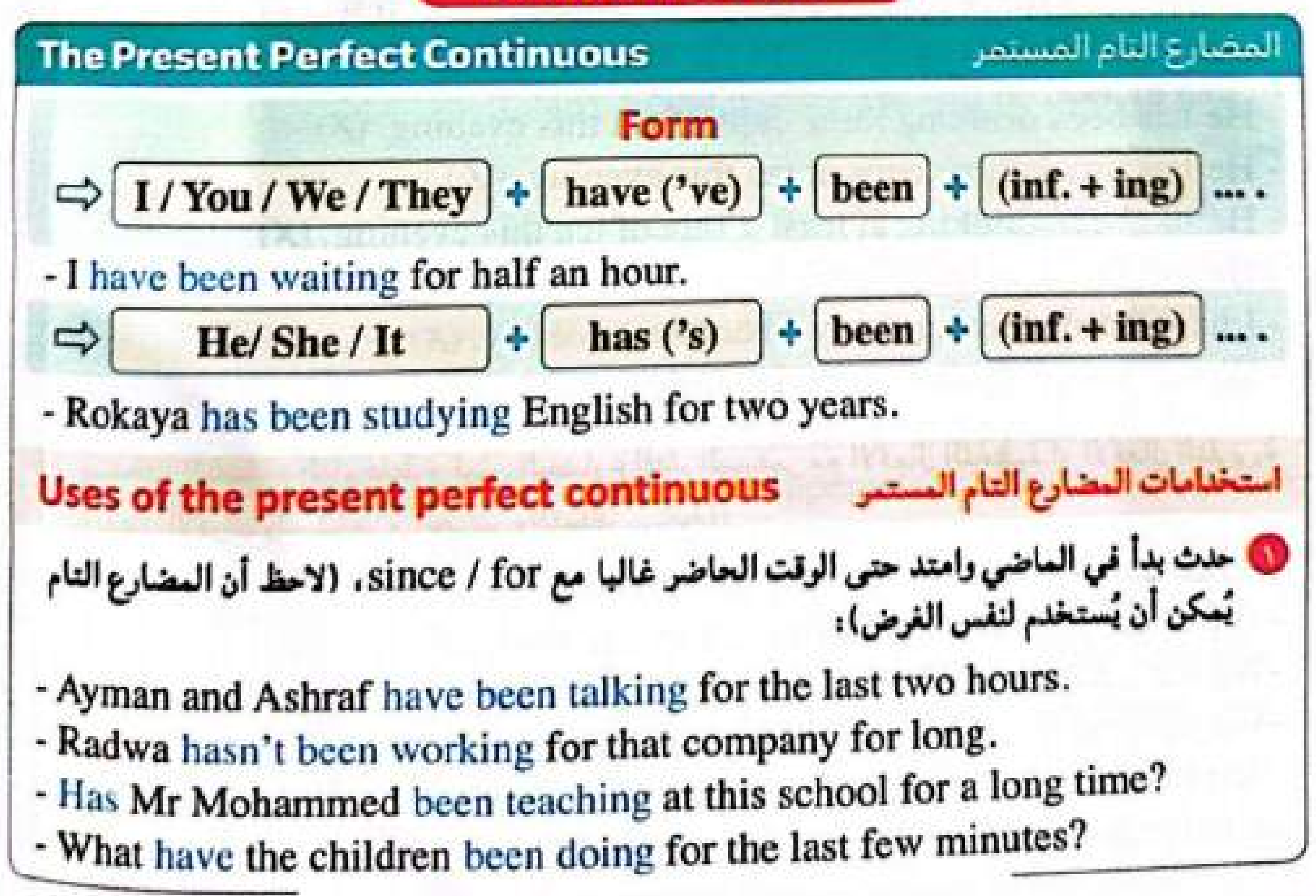
- It is 21 years since Mohammed started to live in Aswan.

Mini Test 3 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She has never travelled abroad ....
   a. already b. ago c. now d. before now
2. This is the first time I have .... seen a real kangaroo.
   a. never b. ever c. just d. always
3. This is the first time for me .... a real kangaroo.
   a. see b. have seen c. to see d. to seeing

4. Amira is .... student I have ever seen.
   a. a clever b. clever c. cleverer d. the cleverest
5. I have never seen a student .... Amira.
   a. as clever as b. cleverer than c. the cleverest d. a & b
6. I have never seen a clever student .... Amira.
   a. like b. as c. such d. similar
7. She .... me at five.
   a. has just called b. had just called c. last called d. never call
8. The last time she called me .... five.
   a. at b. was at c. in d. was in
9. She hasn't called me .... I returned home.
   a. when b. after c. before d. since
10. She last called me .... I returned home.
   a. when b. while c. for d. since
11. She .... to work here two months ago.
   a. has started b. hasn't started c. started d. starts
12. It is a week .... I last went to the club.
   a. for b. since c. while d. after



Remember تذكر

The Present Perfect Continuous المضارع التام المستمر

Form

⇨ I / You / We / They + have ('ve) + been + (inf. + ing) ....

- I have been waiting for half an hour.

⇨ He/ She / It + has ('s) + been + (inf. + ing) ....

- Rokaya has been studying English for two years.

Uses of the present perfect continuous استخدامات المضارع التام المستمر

1. حدث بدأ في الماضي وامتد حتى الوقت الحاضر غالبا مع since / for، (لاحظ أن المضارع التام يُمكن أن يُستخدم لنفس الغرض):

- Ayman and Ashraf have been talking for the last two hours.
- Radwa hasn't been working for that company for long.
- Has Mr Mohammed been teaching at this school for a long time?
- What have the children been doing for the last few minutes?



٢ في حال عدم وجود (since / for) يكون المضارع التام المستمر أكثر عمومية ليعني في الآونة الاخيرة:

- Recently, he has been feeling unwell.
- Sara has been watching too much television lately.
- Hassan has been feeling a little worried about his job.
- Lisa has not been doing exercise.

The difference between the present perfect simple and continuous

الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

١ يُستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للدلالة على حدث تم وله أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت علي اكتمال أو تمام الحدث):

- He's had his meal, so he is full.
- Rokaya has done the housework, so she can watch TV now.

٢ لكن يُستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للدلالة على حدث له أثر أو نتيجة في المضارع (الأثر أو النتيجة نتجت عن الحدث وليس تمامه):

- I've been having my meal so there are plates, spoons and cups all over the table.
- Rokaya has been doing the housework, so she looks very tired.

٣ يُستخدم المضارع التام فقط وليس المضارع التام المستمر عند ذكر العدد أو الكم، ومن الكلمات الدالة على ذلك :

two	three …..	many	a few	few	several
a lot of	lots of	all	plenty of …+ مفعول		

- He has been drinking three cups of tea this evening. (✗)
- He has drunk three cups of tea this evening. (✓)
- He has been drinking at least a litre of tea this evening. (✗)
- He has drunk at least a litre of tea this evening. (✓)
- I have been meeting many customers recently. (✗)
- I have met many customers recently. (✓)

٤ يُستخدم المضارع التام فقط و ليس المضارع التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية أو الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الادراك والمشاعر و الحواس والتملك ...الخ):

- A fast car has been crashing into a rock by the road.(✗)
- A fast car has crashed into a rock by the road. (✓)
- We have been owning this flat for 15 years. (✗)
- We have owned this flat for 15 years. (✓)
- She has been knowing these friends for a year. (✗)
- She has known these friends for a year. (✓)

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. The government .... a lot of villages recently. (LM)
   a. has modernised b. had modernised
   c. was modernising d. was modernised
2. Rami is very happy; he .... a medal for writing poetry. (LM)
   a. is winning b. won c. has won d. had won
3. I haven't travelled to my village by train .... my early childhood. (Practice Ex. 3)
   a. when b. ago c. for d. since
4. In the last two hours, I .... my lessons. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
   a. had revised b. have revised c. revise d. was revised
5. So far, many schools .... in rural and urban areas. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
   a. will have been built b. are building
   c. have been built d. were built
6. Oh! I .... my mobile. What can I do? (دور أول ٢٠١٩)
   a. broke b. had broken c. was broken d. have broken
7. He .... to the bank to draw some money. He will be back in half an hour. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩ - علمي)
   a. has been b. has gone c. had been d. was going
8. Dr Tamer .... four patients so far this morning. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)
   a. had seen b. has seen c. saw d. was seen
9. Nothing like this .... to her. (دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
   a. had happened b. has never happened
   c. has ever happened d. happened
10. My uncle .... to Germany lately.
    a. is b. will be c. has been d. is being
11. I .... the Olympic Games every four years for my whole life.
    a. was watching b. am watching c. have watched d. watched
12. You look pale. .... to you?
    a. Has anything happened b. Has anything been happened
    c. Had anything happened d. Was anything happening



3. I haven't seen Mr Ayman ....
   a. long time ago b. recently c. lately d. b & c
4. He .... the piano since he was eight.
   a. plays b. is playing c. has played d. had played
15. We haven't seen him .... over a year.
   a. since b. for c. from d. in
16. **A :** .... been to Aswan? **B:** Not yet.
   a. Had you ever b. Have you ever
   c. Have you never d. You have never
17. Fareed is still at the office. He .... all night and he is very tired.
   a. has been working b. works
   c. had worked d. has worked
18. A long time has passed .... I saw him.
   a. as long as b. because c. since d. until
19. Rania .... as a doctor for the last ten years.
   a. has been working b. worked
   c. had worked d. is working
20. We .... our old friends for a year. They are too busy.
   a. hadn't met b. have met
   c. haven't met d. haven't been met
21. I .... the Olympic Games all evening and now I'm going to bed.
   a. was watching b. have been watching
   c. have watched d. watched
22. It .... for the past three hours.
   a. was rained b. had rained c. was raining d. has been raining
23. Sara .... to call Rania all afternoon, but each time she calls the number is busy.
   a. has been trying b. has tried c. tried d. is trying

2 Special Cases

24. A terrible accident .... place on the Cairo- Alexandria desert road. (LM)
   a. was taken b. has taken c. has been taken d. had taken
25. You needn't make food. I .... a good meal already. (LM)
   a. was cooking b. have cooked c. was cooked d. had cooked

26. It's been two months since we .... our uncle in the village. *(LM)*
    a. had visited b. visited c. have visited d. visit

27. My friend .... a health problem since he lived in this highly polluted area. *(LM)*
    a. has had b. had had c. had d. has been

28. Sorry for being late, Sir. Please, let me in; I .... in very bad traffic. *(LM)*
    a. have been b. have gone c. was d. had

29. I haven't met the General Manager .... It's my first time to meet him. *(LM)*
    a. yet b. before c. already d. never

30. My uncle .... as a taxi driver for ten years. Now, he is a worker in a big clothes factory. *(LM)*
    a. worked b. was working c. has worked d. works

31. I haven't seen Wael .... the last time we met in the village. *(LM)*
    a. while b. when c. for d. since

32. He wanted to know .... I have been a member in this sports club.
    a. since how long b. for how long c. for when d. how long ago

33. My car .... down, so I have to call a mechanic at once.
    a. broke b. has broken
    c. had broken d. has been breaking

34. I .... the kitchen all morning and mum says it's still dirty.
    a. have cleaned b. clean
    c. am cleaning d. have been cleaning

35. Survivors of this morning's accident ....to the city's main hospital.
    a. have been taken b. have taken
    c. took d. have been taking

36. I .... all my homework and now I am ready to go out!
    a. have been finished b. finish
    c. have been finishing d. have finished

37. What .... your mother for her birthday tomorrow?
    a. have you been buying b. have you bought
    c. you bought d. had you bought

38. .... I started my job; I have met important people from all over the world.

a. For b. Since c. Until d. When

39. The committee members' disagreement .... caused a serious problem.

a. has b. have c. was d. were

40. Why .... away last week-end?

a. didn't you go
b. won't you go
c. are you going
d. haven't you gone

41. It .... very cold lately, but it's just beginning to get warmer.

a. hasn't been b. has been c. is d. had been

42. So far today, I .... e-mails to six of my friends to tell them the good news.

a. wrote
b. am writing
c. have been writing
d. have written

43. This is the first time for Jane .... her car alone.

a. to fix b. has fixed c. had fixed d. fixed

44. Rokaya .... three tests this month.

a. has taken
b. has been taking
c. had taken
d. had been taken

45. I can't remember the last time I .... to the cinema.

a. have been b. will go c. went d. am going

3 Check your understanding

46. Ali last caught fish when he was in Alexandria. This means that .... *(LM)*

a. Ali didn't catch fish since he was in Alexandria.
b. Ali didn't catch fish when he was in Alexandria.
c. Ali hasn't caught fish since he was in Alexandria.
d. Ali has been catching fish since he returned from Alexandria.

47. My pen friend arrived at Cairo Airport a moment ago. This means that he .... *(LM)*

a. has just arrived
b. just has arrived
c. hasn't arrived
d. will arrive

48. Which of the following is structurally correct? *(LM)*
   a. Have you already travelled to Aswan by ship?
   b. Have you ever travelled to Aswan by ship?
   c. I haven't already travelled to Aswan by ship.
   d. I haven't travelled to Aswan by ship already.

49. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct? *(Practice Ex. 2)*
   a. I haven't seen him for the last time we met in the club.
   b. I haven't seen him since the last time we met in the club.
   c. I haven't seen him since the last time we have met in the club.
   d. I didn't see him since the last time we met in the club.

50. Which of the following is structurally correct? *(Practice Ex. 3)*
   a. Since years, I haven't played football.
   b. It's years since I have last played football.
   c. It's years since I played football.
   d. I had played football years ago.

51. She has been to America. This means that she .... there.
   a. is still   b. is no longer   c. will be   d. won't be

52. Mai has never flown before this time. This means ....
   a. it is the first time for Mai to fly
   b. Mai has flown once before this time
   c. we do not know if Mai has flown before or not
   d. Mai has flown before that time

53. Rodayna is the cleverest girl I have ever known. This means ....
   a. Rodayna is as clever as some girls I have known before
   b. Rodayna is less clever than some girls I have known before
   c. Rodayna is cleverer than some girls I have known before
   d. Rodayna is cleverer than all girls I have known before

54. I have never eaten such a delicious meal. I mean that ....
   a. I am not enjoying the meal I am eating
   b. I am enjoying the meal I am eating
   c. the meal I am eating is not delicious
   d. the meal I am eating is not as delicious as meals I have eaten before

55. Sama is the kindest friend I have ever had. This means ....

a. I have never known kind friends.

b. I have ever known kind friends.

c. Sama is kinder than my other friends.

d. Sama is as kind as than my other friends.

56. I have never gone fishing. This means ....

a. this is the first time for me to go fishing.

b. I went fishing but I can't remember.

c. I have ever gone fishing.

d. I haven't ever gone fishing.

57. My wife hasn't gone out since Friday. This means ....

a. my wife last went out on Friday.

b. my wife didn't go out on Friday.

c. my wife has gone out on Friday.

d. my wife hasn't gone out on Friday.

58. I have lived in Edfu since 1999. This means ....

a. I lived in Edfu in 1999.

b. I have been lived in Edfu since 1999.

c. I started to live in Edfu in 1999.

d. I left Edfu in 1999.

59. I haven't gone shopping for a week. I mean to say that ....

a. I didn't go shopping last week.

b. it is a week since I last went shopping.

c. I didn't go shopping a week ago.

d. I wanted to go shopping last week.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have never known .... honest people.

a. such b. such a c. such an d. like

2. I .... a cake. Would you like some?

a. 've been making b. 've made

c. 'd been made d. 'd been making

3. One Thousand and One Nights .... many times.
   a. has told b. has been told
   c. was telling d. told
4. What have you .... that you would like to do?
   a. ever done b. done ever
   c. never done d. done never
5. How long have you studied English ....?
   a. since b. for c. yet d. ago

No.	Answer & Explanation	
		الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	كلمة (people) بمعنى الناس اسم جمع لا يأخذ (a/an)
2.	b	التركيز هنا على اكتمال الحدث الذي تم بالفعل (بدليل أننا نعرض على شخص ما أن يتناول البعض منها) فنستخدم المضارع التام البسيط المبني للمعلوم
3.	b	الجملة مبنية للمجهول
4.	c	المعني المقصود هو (ما الذي لم تفعله أبدًا وتتمنى أن تفعله) لذلك نستخدم (never).
5.	b	السؤال عن المدة (how long) لذلك نستخدم (for) التي يأتي بعدها مُدة.

LESSONS 3 & 4



SB pages 10 & 11 WB pages 4 & 5

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

balanced(adj)	متوازن – عادل – موضوعي	misleading(adj/n)	مُضلِّل – التضليل
bias(ed) (v)	يتحامل – يتحزّب – يُحرِّض	omission(n)	الحذف – الاستبعاد
bias(n)	تَحامُل – تَحزُّب – تَحيُّز	placement(n)	وَضع (شئ في مكان مُعيَّن)
citizen journalism(n)	صحافة المواطن	point of view	رأي/وجهة نظر
mislead - misled (v)	يُضلِّل – يخدع	spin (n)	تلفيق – تزيين الأمور
		spin - spun (v)	يُقنع بتزيين الكلام (يحوِّر)
		inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ – غير دقيق

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

access(n)	صلاحية استخدام – حق الدخول	responsibility(n)	مسئولية
affairs(n)	شئون – أحداث	restate(d) (v)	يعيد صياغة
anxious(adj)	شاعر بالتوتر / القلق	share(d) (v)	يُشارك – يتقاسم
available(adj)	مُتاح	slide(n)	شريحة – زحليقة
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر – يعصِف ذهنيًا	slide- slid (v)	ينزلق – يتزحلق
cause(d) (v/n)	سبب – يُسبب	snowstorm(n)	عاصفة جليدية
certain(adj)	مُعيَّن – مُحدَّد	social (adj)	اجتماعي
constant(adj)	ثابت – مستمر	spade(n)	جاروف
current(adj)	حالي – جاري	stressed(adj)	مضغوط – تحت ضغط
cycle(d)(n/v)	دورة – يقود دراجة	summarise/ze(d) (v)	يُلخِّص – يختصر
effort(n)	جهد	summary(n)	تلخيص – خُلاصة
impact(ed) (n/v)	أثر – تأثير – يؤثر	support(ed) (v/n)	يدعم – الدعم
impression(n)	انطباع – أثر	survey(n)	بحث استطلاعي
leak(ed)(n/v)	تسريب – يتسرب – يُسرِّب	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
objective(adj/n)	موضوعي – منطقي – هدف	trap(ped) (v), (n)	يحتجز – يحبس – يوقع بـ – فخ
persuade(d) (v)	يُقنع	trust(ed) (v/n)	يثق بـ – الثقة
persuasive(adj)	إقناعي/ مقنع	update(d) (n/v)	تحديث – يُحدِّث
regular(adj)	مُنتَظِم	up-to-date(adj)	حديث

3 Definitions تعريفات

balanced (adj) متوازن - مُحايد	- giving equal متساوي attention to all sides or opinions
bias (n) تَحَامُل - تَحَزُّب - تَحَيُّز	- an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences يؤثر على how you deal تتعامل with it
citizen journalism (n) صحافة المواطن	- reports and pictures of events recorded مُسجَّلة by ordinary people and shown especially on the internet
inaccurate (adj) خاطئ/ غير دقيق	- not completely correct
mislead - misled (v) يُضلِّل/يخدع	- to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete
omission (n) الحذف - الإستبعاد	- the act of not including somebody/something or not doing something - the fact of not being included or done
placement (n) وَضع (شئ فى مكان مُعيَّن)	- the act of placing something somewhere
point of view رأي/وجهة نظر	- the particular attitude or opinion that somebody has about something
spin (n) تلفيق - خلط الأمور	- the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Key & Important vocabulary

1. What bad news! The book had been .... before it was published. *(LM)*

a. leaked b. locked c. disappeared d. written

2. Finally, the police discovered what had .... the accident. *(LM)*

a. caused b. reasoned c. excused d. rescued

3. The journalist was biased by ....; he put the story at the top of the page to show it was interesting. (LM)

a. repetition b. omission c. placement d. spin

4. "In his advertisement, he left out the fact that the flat isn't opposite the Nile to make others buy it for a higher price. This is bias by .... (Practice Ex.)

a. spin b. placement c. omission d. replacement

5. The police were able to rescue the people who were .... inside the house during the fire. (LM)

a. typed b. tripped c. wrapped d. trapped

6. Social media has made .... possible.

a. responsibility b. omission
c. citizen journalism d. journalism

7. Having a/an .... diet keeps you healthy and fit.

a. balanced b. misleading c. inaccurated d. available

8. This referee has a clear .... against our team. He didn't even consult the VAR room about the penalty.

a. fairness b. bias c. placement d. support

9. The salesman tried to persuade me to buy by putting a positive .... on the advantages of their products.

a. spade b. trap c. bias d. spin

10. He didn't get high marks in the exam because some of his answers were ....

a. balanced b. misleading c. inaccurate d. available

11. Taking the wrong decision is the direct result of .... information.

a. balanced b. misleading c. accurate d. available

12. "This is a misleading report". In this sentence, "misleading" is a/an ....

a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

13. "Misleading voters الناخبين is a crime". In this sentence, "misleading" is a/an ....

a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb

14. Bullying is a / an .... problem. It affects all members of a community.
a. certain b. stressed c. social d. up-to-date

15. You need to .... this mobile application.
a. brainstorm b. update c. trap d. summarise

16. Don't interfere تدخل with other people's ....
a. surveys b. slides c. updates d. affairs

17. The death of her aunt had a sad .... on her.
a. impact b. effort c. objective d. slide

18. But for your ...., I wouldn't have solved my problems.
a. bias b. support c. slide d. trust

19. The writer of this article left out .... information to mislead the readers.
a. certain b. stressed c. social d. false

20. The manager asked Rahma to .... the long report for him.
a. brainstorm b. update c. trap d. summarise

21. Sending and receiving emails is one of the secretary's ....
a. surveys b. responsibilities c. updates d. impacts

22. Revising 'The present perfect' is one of the .... of Unit 1.
a. impacts b. efforts c. objectives d. slides

23. I .... his thinking because he is wise.
a. persuade b. skid c. slide d. trust

24. I'm .... due to the amount of work I have to do every day.
a. certain b. stressed c. social d. up-to-date

25. Mr Ashraf got his students to .... some ideas to solve the problem.
a. brainstorm b. bias c. trip d. impact

26. I've installed the latest Facebook ....
a. surveys b. responsibilities c. updates d. affairs

27. The great .... Dr Alaa had made saved the injured man's life.
a. impacts b. efforts c. objectives d. slides

28. Don't try to .... me to waste my time chatting online.
a. persuade b. support c. slide d. trust



9. El-Moasser has .... information about the new types of exam questions.

a. petrified b. stressed c. social d. up-to-date

30. Doing .... aims at collecting accurate information.

a. surveys b. responsibilities c. updates d. affairs

31. I used Powerpoint .... to make my presentation.

a. impacts b. efforts c. objectives d. slides

32. I .... on the icy ground and broke my leg.

a. persuaded b. supported c. slid d. trusted

33. In the past, there was strong cultural .... against women.

a. event b. equality c. celebrity d. bias

2 Definitions

34. .... is an opinion about whether a person, group, or idea is good or bad that influences how you deal with it.

a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias

35. Your .... is the particular attitude or opinion that you have about something.

a. citizen journalism
b. point of view
c. exaggeration
d. the act of placement

36. .... is the way someone talks about information or a situation, especially in order to influence the way people think about it.

a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias

37. To .... is to make someone believe something that is not true by giving them information that is false or not complete.

a. petrify b. mislead c. skid d. guide

38. The adjective .... means not completely correct.

a. balance b. balanced c. accurate d. inaccurate

39. .... means reports and pictures of events recorded by ordinary people and shown especially on the internet.

a. Citizen journalism
b. Point of view
c. Exaggeration
d. The act of placement

40. To be .... means giving equal attention to all sides or opinions.
a. balance b. balanced c. accurate d. inaccurate.

41. .... is the act of putting something somewhere.
a. Placement b. Omission c. Spin d. Bias

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

avoid	the negative effects يتجنب الآثار السلبية	**have**	a negative impact on له تأثير سلبي على
become	the main source of يصبح المصدر الرئيسي لـ		a social responsibility عليه مسئولية اجتماعية
brainstorm	ideas يستثير أفكار		internet access لديه إمكانية الدخول على الإنترنت
get	anxious يتوتر - يقلق	**make**	every effort يبذل قصارى جهده
	regular updates يحصُل على تحديثات منتظمة	**spread**	false information ينشر أخبار كاذبة
give	a lecture يُحاضِر	**suggest**	a solution يقترح حل
	reasons يُعطي مبررات	**support**	your opinion تدعم فكرتك
keep	up-to-date with يواكب	**take**	a photo يلتقط صورة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Ayman asked us to .... ideas to support our opinions.
a. support b. avoid c. become d. brainstorm

2. I have to .... every effort to solve this problem.
a. keep b. give c. make d. suggest

3. It's better if you .... regular updates for the applications on your tablet.
a. get b. give c. spread d. complain

4. You need to know how the negative effects of social media can be ....

a. made b. avoided c. become d. brainstormed

5. We must .... up-to-date with the latest advancements in science and technology.

a. keep b. give c. make d. suggest

6. Losing the match .... a negative impact on the team's fans.

a. avoided b. took c. had d. complained

7. The Egyptian Knowledge Bank has .... the main source of professional educational support.

a. supported b. avoided c. become d. brainstormed

8. The last lecture Dr Samira .... was about improving the listening skill.

a. kept b. gave c. told d. suggested

9. It's a crime to .... false information.

a. get b. take c. spread d. complain

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
balanced(adj)	متوازن – عادل	fair / unbiased / objective
bias(n)	تَحَامُل – تَحَزّب – تَحَيُّز	prejudice / partiality
inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ – غير دقيق	inexact / imprecise / incorrect / wrong
misleading(adj)	مُضلِّل	deceptive / confusing / deceiving / false / ambiguous
omission(n)	الحذف	deletion / leaving out/ exclusion

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
balanced(adj)	متوازن	biased / partial / imbalanced	مُتحيِّز
bias(n)	تَحَامُل – تَحَزّب – تَحَيُّز	objectivity / fairness / impartiality	الموضوعية – الحيادية
inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ – غير دقيق	accurate / exact	دقيق
omission(n)	الحذف	addition / inclusion	إضافة – تضمين

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. 'Omission' and 'inclusion' are ....
   a. synonyms b. antonyms c. acronyms d. adjectives
2. "The omission of the verb makes the sentence meaningless". In this sentence, 'omission' can be replaced by ....
   a. leaving-out b. addition c. deletion d. a & c
3. "The content of this report is misleading". The synonym of "misleading" in this context is ....
   a. false b. correct c. true d. accurate
4. When someone is biased, they are not expected to give a/an .... opinion.
   a. partial b. unfair c. balanced d. unjust

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
balance يتوازن - يوازن	balance توازن - ميزان	balanced متوازن - مُتَّزِن - موضوعي	–
bias يتحامل - يتحزَّب - يُحرِّض	bias تَحَامُل - تَحَزُّب - تَحَيُّز	biased/biassed مُتحامِل - مُتحيِّز unbiased موضوعي	–
–	accuracy الدقة inaccuracy عدم الدقة	accurate دقيق - مضبوط inaccurate خاطئ - غير دقيق	accurately بدقة
mislead يُضلِّل - يخدع	misleading تضليل - خداع	misleading مُضلِّل - مُخادِع	misleadingly بشكل مُضلِّل
omit(ted) يحذف - يستبعد	omission الحذف - الإستبعاد	omitted مُهمَل - محذوف	–
place يضع	placement وَضْع - توظيف - تشغيل	–	–

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It is not honest أمين to .... others.
   a. mislead b. misleading c. place d. placement
2. This article has .... information. The writer wants to influence the readers dishonestly.
   a. mislead b. misleading c. place d. placement
3. There's too much .... in your article against the other team.
   a. accurate b. inaccurate c. bias d. biased
4. As a football fan, I am .... I support Liverpool.
   a. accurate b. inaccurate c. bias d. biased
5. We have to .... freedom of opinion against public interest.
   a. balance b. balanced c. omit d. omission
6. Don't depend on this .... information in making the final decision.
   a. accurate b. inaccurate c. accuracy d. accurately
7. To be a good learner of English, one should be keen on his fluency and ....
   a. accurate b. accurately c. accuracy d. inaccuracy
8. To show that an article is important, the editor .... it in the first page.
   a. misleads b. misleading c. places d. placement

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

careful about حريص على	present ... as ... يُقدِّم ... كـ...
constant cycle حَلْقة / دورة مُتصلة	a record snowstorm عاصفة جليدية استثنائية/ شديدة
current affairs الأحداث الجارية	share ... on social media يشارك ... على وسائل التواصُل الاجتماعى
in general, بصفة عامة	social responsibility مسئولية اجتماعية
people with spades اشخاص معهم مجارف	
positives and negatives إيجابيات وسلبيات	
post ... on social media ينشر ... على وسائل التواصُل الاجتماعى	

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع/ يوافق على	sum up	يُلخِّص
dig out	يستخرج/ ينقب عن	trap ... in	يحتجز ... في
leave out	يستبعد - يُسقِط		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A gang of thieves were arrested while digging .... ancient Egyptian antiquities.
   a. out b. from c. with d. to
2. Leave .... the students who failed the exam from the school trip.
   a. down b. up c. in d. out
3. Mum went out and locked the door leaving me trapped .... my room.
   a. down b. up c. in d. out
4. Presenting an opinion .... a fact is considered bias by spin.
   a. to b. as c. on d. from

7 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

balance

• **balance (n)** إتزان - توازن - تكافؤ **≠ imbalance** اختلال التوازن
- He lost his balance and fell to the ground.
- Man has upset the balance of nature.

• **balance (n)** رصيد (في الحساب البنكي)
- I was surprised to know that my father's balance is zero.

• **the balance (n)** المخزون/المتبقي **= the rest**
- The balance of cheese in the market is nearly nothing.

• **balance (n)** ميزان **= scales**
- Most shopkeepers now have digital balances.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **keep your balance** تحافظ علي اتزانك **≠ lose your balance** تفقد اتزانك
- **the balance of power** توازُن القوي - **the balance of nature** توازُن الطبيعة

• **balance (d) (v)** يوازن - يُعادل - يتوازن

- I put just enough sugar to balance the acidity of lemon.
- Can you balance this dish on your head without using your hands?

• **balanced (adj)** موضوعي - مُحايد **= fair**

- The reporter gave a balanced view of what happened.

• **balanced (adj)** متوازن

- You need to follow a balanced diet to keep fit.

• **balanced (adj)** عاقل - حكيم **≠ unbalanced** طائش - متهور

- I like the fact that she is a balanced person.

bias

• **bias (ed) against (v)** يُحرض على

- This journalist has biased the fans against the captain of the team.

• **bias (ed) (v)** يؤثر سلبيًا على

- His wife's opinion has biased his decision.

• **bias (towards/in favour of /against) (n)** تحيُّز (مع/ضد)

- All students should be evaluated without bias.

• **biases/biased (towards/in favour of/against) (adj)** مُتحزِّب (مُتحيِّز)

- Some journalists are clearly biased towards businessmen.

placement

• **place (n)** مكان - مَوْضِع

- I couldn't find an empty place in the street to park my car.
- There's no place in the group for a troublemaker. مُثير للشغب

• **place (n)** دور

- I am against the idea that a woman's place is in the home.

• **place (d) (v)** يضع (في مكان) /يجعل شيء عُرضَة لـ **= put**

- Sama placed the vase carefully on the table.
- Never place your children at risk.
- A good student places their education above having fun.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- **take place** يحدُث **= happen**
- **in sombody's place** بدلًا من
- **in high places** ذو سُلطة - نفوذ

- **placement (n)**
توظيف - إلحاق بـ - إيواء
  - This charity جمعية خيرية provides a job placement service.
  - The placement of homeless children costs much money.
- **placement (= work placement) (n)**
تدريب عملي (كجزء من برنامج دراسي)
  - When I was a student in the faculty of education, كلية التربية I was sent out on placement as a training.
- **placement (n)**
وَضْع في مكان أو موضع مُعيَّن
  - The editor of a newspaper controls the placement of news stories according to importance.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't expect Omar to take a quick decision. He is a/an .... person who thinks carefully first.
   a. biased b. balanced c. stressed d. available
2. Sadly, some people in Europe and the USA still have .... against the black.
   a. responsibility b. impact c. support d. bias
3. His refusal has .... me in a tight corner.
   a. brainstormed b. summarised c. placed d. impacted
4. I had a three-month .... in the sugar factory.
   a. placement b. omission c. effort d. trust
5. Don't try to put a .... on your exam results. You have got low marks in all subjects.
   a. bias b. placement c. spin d. plunge

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- الاختيار المناسب حسب سياق الجملة هو (balanced)
2.	d	- التعبير (have bias against) يعني (مُتحيِّز ضد)، وهو ما يتفق مع السياق السلبي الذي يوحي به الظرف (sadly)
3.	c	- الفعل (place) يعني (put) أي (يضع) وهو ما يتفق مع باقي السياق، والتعبير الذي بعد النقط (in a tight corner) يعني (موقف صعب)
4.	a	- كلمة (placement) هنا تعني (تدريب عملي)
5.	c	- كلمة (spin) هنا تعني (تزيين/اختلاق)، أو ما يقال عنه بالعامية (حوار)

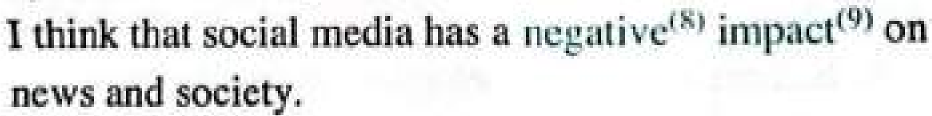
Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 11)

Social Media has a negative impact on news and society

Social media has become the main[1] source[2] of news. These days sixty-eight percent of people who have internet access[3] get their news from social media. Although[4] this means that we can find news easily and get regular[5] updates[6] on our phones, in my view[7] I think that social media has a negative[8] impact[9] on news and society.



To begin with[10], this constant[11] cycle[12] of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed[13] and worried. A recent survey[14] found that more than half of Americans say they get anxious[15] and sleep badly because of [16] the news.

Next[17], not everything we read or see on social media is true[18] or legal[19]. If we share it, before checking[20] the facts, we might spread[21] false[22] information. In turn, this means that the public[23] will stop trusting journalists. In addition, piracy is very common[24] on social media. It is very easy to copy books, films and music and to share them, but this means that the people who wrote the books or made the films and music do not get any money for their work.

Lastly[25], social media starts to control what news we see and don't see. Our social media 'friends' become the 'managing[26] editors'[27]. They share news stories they like and agree with, so the news we see is not balanced[28] or objective[29].

Check Vocabulary

(1) رئيسي
(2) مصدر
(3) إمكانية الوصول
(4) برغم أن
(5) مُنتظم
(6) تحديثات
(7) في رأيي
(8) سلبي
(9) أثر
(10) في البداية
(11) مستمر/ثابت
(12) دورة/حلقة
(13) مضغوط
(14) بحث استطلاعي
(15) شاعر بالتوتر
(16) بسبب
(17) ثم
(18) صحيح
(19) قانوني / شرعي
(20) مراجعة
(21) ينشر
(22) خاطئ
(23) الجمهور
(24) شائع
(25) أخيرًا
(26) مُتحكِّم
(27) المُحررين
(28) متوازن
(29) موضوعي

In summary[30], whilst[31] it is a good thing that we have so much news available[32] and it is easy to keep up-to-date[33] with current[34] affairs[35], we need to avoid the negative effects. It's important to be careful about where we get our news and how often we check it. We also have a social responsibility[36] to make every effort[37] not to spread inaccurate[38] or misleading[39] news and not to copy artistic content[40] without permission

باختصار (30)
فى حين / بينما (31)
مُتاح (32)
حديث (33)
حالي (34)
شئون/أحداث (35)
مسئولية (36)
جهد (37)
غير دقيق (38)
مُضلِل (39)
محتوى فنى (40)

Note : Spin is a type of media bias. Some journalists use words and phrases to support or oppose a service, product, or even one idea.

A. Millions to be spent on project that will make our traffic worse !

(WB page 4)

Car drivers are angry about plans to open a new bus lane[1] from the city centre[2]. The plan, which will cost $ 200 million, will stop all cars using Yellow Road, one of the most important roads into the city. "Traffic in the city is already terrible", says businesswoman[3] Mrs Joan Bates. "If they close Yellow Road, it will be even worse". Another business person who uses South Road regularly, Mr Jason Shelley, says, "Why are they planning to close roads? With so many cars in the city, they need to build new ones. No one wants to take buses because they are too slow".

B. New route[4] to serve[5] university

There are plans for a new bus lane from the city centre to the university.

The $ 200-million project will mean closing Yellow Road to cars, but will make the journey by bus 30 minutes faster.

The organisers [6] believe the project will help attract [7] students to the university and that the electric [8] buses will also reduce [9] pollution. The bus lane will also be used by bikes and taxis. The project is part of a long-term [10] plan to persuade[11] people to use public transport[12] rather than driving, to help reduce traffic and air pollution.

Check Vocabulary
خط سير أتوبيس (1)
وسط المدينة (2)
سيدة أعمال (3)
طريق (4)
يخدم (5)
منظمون (6)
يجذب (7)
كهربى (8)
يقلل (9)
طويل المدى (10)
يقنع (11)
النقل العام (12)



(WB page 4)

Tarek loves a football team called The Greens. He writes reports on their matches, online, but the reports do not give a balanced point of view! He always puts The Greens' report at the top of the page when they win, but not when they lose! This is bias by placement. He always puts a spin on his stories, too. For example, when The Greens lose, it is because they did not have their best players. However, he does not report the fact that the other team did not have their best players when The Greens win! This is bias by omission. Nevertheless[1], Tarek's reports are not inaccurate : He does not want to mislead you and the reports tell you what really happened in the match. After all, he cannot change the result!

Check Vocabulary

بالرغم من ذلك (1)

We still need guidebooks because we cannot rely on [1] the opinion of people online.

(WB page 5)

Check Vocabulary

يعتمد على (1)

يوصى بـ/ينصح بـ (2)

كتاب إرشادى (3)

بينما / فى حين (4)

With today's social media, it is possible to find online reviews of everything from a local park or café to a famous restaurant or museum. Before you book a holiday, you can read what other people think of a hotel or car hire company and what they recommend[2] you do when you get there. Although this means you can get information very easily, in my view, this is not as useful information as you can get from a guidebook[3].



To begin with, we need to ask ourselves why people write reviews online. Whilst[4] it is sometimes because people like writing their opinions, at other times they have a reason for writing it. Perhaps they know the owners of the café, or perhaps they are the owners of the café! That is why they give it a good review.

Secondly, who are the people writing the reviews ? It is difficult to know this information. If they are 50-year-old Europeans, will they have the same opinion as you ? It is very hard to know if you are going to like the same places that they like.

Lastly, we need to remember that guidebook writers are usually experts. You can trust them for accurate information and a balanced point of view. They also know who is using their books, so if the book is intended to be for young people, they will recommend places that young people will like.

To conclude, online reviews are useful, but it's important to remember that they are just people's opinions. If you want to know what experts think, personally I think you should buy a guidebook.

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 10)

Narrator : So, moving on, what exactly[1] is bias[2] ? First of all, let's look at bias by omission[3]. This means leaving something out[4], for example a fact or a quote, which maybe doesn't support[5] the writer's point of view[6]. Let's look at some examples. Imagine[7] Heba over here every morning checks[8] the same website to read the news. She likes the way the articles[9] are written and feels that she is getting good information. But one day her friend, Marwa over here recommends[10] a different news site. When Heba looks at this she sees completely different news stories with a very different point of view. Let's say on Heba's website, there is a big story about how angry people are that a local factory is about to[11] close. Marwa's website has the same story, but it doesn't mention[12] that anyone is angry. The writer has omitted[13] this information to make us feel differently about the story.

The second type of bias might be placement[14]. On Heba's website, the story is at the top of the page with a big photo and large text. This gives the impression[15] that it is an important story. But on Marwa's website, the story is very short on the third page and very low down on the page where people might not see it.

The third type of bias is spin[16].... The writer tries to make the reader

Check Vocabulary

(1) بالتحديد
(2) التحيّز
(3) الحذف/الإغفال
(4) يستبعد/يغفل
(5) يدعم/يساند
(6) وجهة نظر
(7) يتخيل
(8) يراجع/يطالع
(9) مقال
(10) يوصي بـ/يُرشّح
(11) على وشك
(12) يَذكُر/يقول
(13) يحذف/يغفل
(14) التموضع/الوضع في مكان محدد
(15) انطباع
(16) تزيين الكلام (التحوير)

feel the same way they do about a topic(17), and doesn't present(18) a balanced(19) point of view. They do this by choosing certain words, for example 'argued the factory manager' instead of 'agreed the factory manager'. Secondly, they choose to include(20) certain information and leave other information out. Thirdly, they give only one point of view, in our example, the journalist gives the reaction(21) of the staff(22) in the factory, but not the managers-it misleads(23) the reader into thinking it is a bad thing. On the other hand(24), in Marwa's story, it is presented as a good thing. It mentions that there is a lot of pollution(25) caused by the factory. The journalist in this case(26) is trying to ...

(17) موضوع
(18) يقدم/يطرح
(19) متوازن
(20) يضم / يضيف
(21) رد فعل
(22) هيئة العاملين
(23) يُضلِّل
(24) الناحية الأخرى
(25) التلوث
(26) حالة/وَضْع



Part IV Language

Past Simple and Past Continuous

1 Past Simple : active and passive

الماضى البسيط : المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active المبنى للمعلوم

(إثبات) ⇨ Subj. الفاعل + s.c. التصريف الثاني للفعل .... .

(نفى) ⇨ Subj. الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر .... .

- Tom bought some books. - Fredrik didn't play chess last weekend.

لاحظ استخدام (never) للنفى القاطع لحدوث شيء فى الماضى.

- When I was in primary school, I never went to school late.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

⇨ Object المفعول + was / were + P.P. .... .

- Some books were bought (by Tom).
- Chess wasn't played (by Fredrik) last week.

Interrogative الاستفهام

⇨ Did + subj. + inf. ... ? (سؤال بـ "هل")

- Did you finish your paragraph ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

⇨ Q.W. أداة استفهام + did + subj. ... ? (سؤال بـ "هل")

- Where did you park your car, Moataz ?

تذكر :

لابد أن يكون الفعل فى المصدر (.inf) بعد (did / didn't) :

- I didn't have a car when I was young.
- Did you feel worried about the exams ?
- How did you cook that delicious meal ?

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama .... me with my homework two hours ago.
   a. helped b. was helped c. helps d. am helped
2. I .... with my homework two hours ago.
   a. helped b. was helped c. helps d. am helped
3. I .... lunch. Mum did that.
   a. cooked b. was cooked c. didn't cook d. wasn't cooked
4. Lunch .... by me. Mum did that.
   a. cooked b. was cooked c. didn't cook d. wasn't cooked
5. .... the children to school in your car?
   a. You took b. Did you take
   c. you were taken d. Were you taken
6. .... to school in your car?
   a. You took b. Did you take
   c. The children were taken d. Were the children taken
7. A: What ....to solve the problem? B: I paid the bill.
   a. you did b. did you do c. you were done d. were done
8. A: What ....to solve the problem? B: I paid the bill.
   a. you did b. did you c. you were done d. was done

Uses of the Past Simple

استخدامات الماضي البسيط

❶ حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضي :

- President Sadat took the decision of war in October 1973.

❷ سرد أحداث وقعت فى الماضي :

- Yesterday evening, I did my homework. Then I watched a film. Finally, I went to bed.

❸ فى الحالة الشرطية الثانية (للتعبير عن حدث غير محتمل فى الحاضر) :

- If I had a car, I'd drive you to school.

❹ يُستخدم مع الماضى البسيط تعبيرات زمنية مثل :

yesterday in the past	ago منذ always	last الماضى sometimes	once ذات مرة usually	the other day often	in 2012..... etc.

Used to + inf.

اعتاد أن

❶ تُستخدم (used to + inf.) للتعبير عن عادات كانت فى الماضى لم تعد موجودة الآن :

- When I was young, I used to spend the weekend in the countryside.
- When I was young , I didn't use to spend the weekend in Cairo.

❷ تُستخدم (was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing) لتدل على أن شيء ما كان معتاداً فى الماضى :

- They were used to working in the fields.
- I was used to eating salty food.

❸ تُستخدم (got / became + used to + n. / inf. + ing) لتدل على التعود (أى أن شيئًا لم يعد غريبًا أو صعبًا):

- Mohammed got used to the hot weather of Aswan.
- I became used to living in the desert.

❹ لاحظ أن :

Subj + used to + inf. + p.p. ....
=Subj.+ no longer لم يعد + inf. (inf. + s / es / ies) ....
=Subj.+ don't / doesn't + inf. … + any more / any longer.

- I used to go to bed late.
= I no longer go to bed late.
= I don't go to bed late any more.

❺ لاحظ استخدام (used to) بمعنى (يُستخدم فى) فى الصيغة التالية:

Obj. مفعول + be + used + → to + inf. / → for + (inf. + ing)

- A knife is used to cut food.
- A knife is used for cutting food.

Mini Test 2 · Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Leen used .... her best at school.
   a. do b. to do c. to doing d. doing
2. Leen got used .... her best at school.
   a. do b. to do c. to doing d. doing
3. I .... watching football matches in the stadium.
   a. am used to b. used to c. used for d. was used for
4. Cotton was used .... paper.
   a. for making b. to making c. to make d. a & c
5. I .... some old friends the other day.
   a. meet b. met c. have met d. am meeting

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

❶ بالنسبة للفعل (be) فى الماضى البسيط ، نستخدم (was / were) ولا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد فى النفى أو السؤال:

- She didn't be late yesterday. (✗)
- She wasn't late yesterday. (✓)
- Where did you be last Friday evening? (✗)
- Where were you last Friday evening? (✓)

❷ بالنسبة للفعل (had) فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم (did) معهما كفعل مساعد فى النفى و السؤال:

- I hadn't meat for lunch. (✗)
- I didn't have meat for lunch. (✓)
- Had you a shower yesterday? (✗)
- Did you have a shower yesterday? (✓)

❸ يمكن استخدام (did) قبل الفعل الأساسى فى الجمل المثبتة بشكل بلاغى للتأكيد على المعنى المقصود:

- Mariam did want to go to the party, but she had to look after her baby sister.

❹ يستخدم الماضى البسيط بعد التعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن شيء غير متحقق فى الواقع :

I wish / It's (high/about) time / I'd rather + subj. فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- I wish I were a doctor. I don't earn enough money as an engineer.
- It's time the secretary sent the report. I don't know why she hasn't sent it yet.
- I would rather you didn't call me so late. I go to bed early.

يُستخدم الماضى التام و ليس الماضى البسيط بعد التعبيرات السابقة فى حالة استخدام تعبير زمنى دال على الماضى:

- I wish I had taken a rest yesterday.

Mini Test 3 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Ashraf .... at home yesterday.
   a. hasn't been b. didn't be c. wasn't d. wasn't being
2. I .... any drinks for breakfast this morning.
   a. haven't b. hadn't c. didn't have d. had
3. I called you because I .... who took your tablet.
   a. will know b. did know c. knows d. knowing
4. I'd rather you .... my tablet.
   a. don't take b. haven't taken c. hadn't taken d. didn't take
5. I'd rather you .... my tablet yesterday.
   a. don't take b. haven't taken c. hadn't taken d. didn't take

Past Continuous : active and passive

الماضى المستمر : المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active المبنى للمعلوم

⇨ Subj. الفاعل + was / were + (inf. + ing) ... .

- She was watching a film at nine o'clock yesterday.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

⇨ Object المفعول + was / were + being + P.P. ...

- A film was being watched (by her) at nine o'clock yesterday.

Uses of the Past Continuous

استخدامات الماضي المستمر

1. التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى وقت معين فى الماضي:

- I was having lunch at two o'clock yesterday.

2. التعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا فى وقت معين فى الماضى عندما قطعه (وقع) حدث آخر:

- I was reading a story when I fell asleep in my chair.

3. التعبير عن أحداث متزامنة (حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت فى الماضي):

- I was watching a match on TV while my children were playing in the garden.

Mini Test 4 — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. At three yesterday, the mechanic .... my car engine.
   a. checks
   b. is checked
   c. was checking
   d. was being checked

2. At three yesterday, my car engine ....
   a. checks
   b. is checked
   c. was checking
   d. was being checked

3. My shirt was .... ironed yesterday at 7:30.
   a. be b. been c. being d. having

4. While Salma was swimming in the pool, her aunt .... to music.
   a. listens b. was listening c. is listening d. listen

5. What .... when I saw you yesterday ?
   a. happened b. has happened c. was happened d. happens

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية التالية مع الماضى المستمر و الماضى البسيط:

أ. للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا وقطعة حدث آخر :

While / As / Just as / When + past (continuous), past simple

- While / As / Just as he was doing his homework, a friend phoned him.

= A friend phoned him while / as / just as he was doing

When + past simple, past (continuous)

- He was doing his homework when a friend phoned him.

= When a friend phoned him, he was doing his homework.

ب. للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين فى نفس الوقت فى الماضى :

While / As / Just as + Past Cont. ماضي مستمر + Past Cont. ماضي مستمر

- While she was drawing a picture, her sister was singing.

② لاحظ ما يلى جيدا:

While + sentence .... جملة كاملة

While + (inf. + ing) (وليس اسم)

During + noun / noun phrase (وليس فعلا منتهيا بـ ing)

- While I was watching the film, I fell asleep.

= While watching the film, I fell asleep. = During the film, I fell asleep.

ذكر :

بد أن يكون الفاعل واحد فى الجملتين عند استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (while) أو أى رابطة

خرى حتى يكون المعنى واضح وصحيح :

- While she was preparing lunch, she cut her finger. (نفس الفاعل)

- While preparing lunch, she cut her finger. (نفس المعنى) (✓

- While Ahmed was doing homework, I went to bed. (فاعلين مختلفين)

- While doing homework, I went to bed. (✗

معنى مختلف : القارئ سيفهم أننى كنت أعمل الواجب قبل أن أذهب للنوم وليس أحمد).

When + sentence .... جملة كاملة

When + (inf.+ing)

On + noun / (inf. + ing)

- When I arrived home, I drank some orange juice.
- When arriving home, I drank some orange juice.
- On arriving home, I drank some orange juice.

= On my arrival home, I drank some orange juice.

While + حرف جر + noun .... اسم

- While on holiday, I forgot all about work..
- While in the office, I met some customers.

Mini Test 5



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... I was taking a shower, my phone rang twice.
   a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
2. I was taking a shower .... my phone rang twice.
   a. while b. when c. during d. a & b
3. .... my shower, my phone rang twice.
   a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
4. .... doing homework, she usually had her glasses on.
   a. While she was b. While c. When d. a , b & c
5. .... my departure, I felt very nervous and even sad.
   a. While b. On c. When d. As

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

غالبًا لا تستخدم الأزمنة المستمرة مع الأفعال التقريرية (التملك / الإدراك / المشاعر) ويستخدم بدلًا من ذلك الأزمنة البسيطة، ومن هذه الأفعال:

- Feeling المشاعر :

like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish, etc.

- Senses الحواس :

hear, see, smell, feel, sound, taste, appear, seem, look, etc.

- Communication التواصل :

promise, satisfy, surprise, agree, deny, disagree, etc.

- **Thinking الإدراك :**

realize understand
know mean
think = believe
imagine يتخيل recognize يتعرف على
remember forget

- **Other states الأفعال التقريرية الأخرى :**

be belong
concern يهم depend
involve يشمل matter يهم
need owe يدين
possess = have = own

- I was understanding the lesson well. (✗)
- I understood the lesson well. (✓)

General Exercise **On Language** Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. I .... dinner when Adel arrived, so I warmly asked him to share th meal with me. (L
   a. had b. am having c. was having d. had had
2. My sister .... her university degree in 2018. (L
   a. was getting b. has got c. got d. had got
3. What .... at 7 pm yesterday? (L
   a. you were doing b. have you done
   c. were you doing d. will you be doing
4. She .... dinner when we returned home. (L
   a. doesn't make b. wasn't made c. isn't making d. wasn't maki
5. Mr Ashraf .... to the club yesterday.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. has gone
6. My uncle .... me at nine yesterday as arranged.
   a. called b. calling c. calls d. call
7. My uncle did not .... me at nine yesterday as arranged.
   a. called b. calling c. calls d. call
8. A: Did Mr Walid .... to help? B: I have no idea.
   a. offered b. offer c. has offered d. have offered
9. Where .... this nice blouse, Sama?
   a. you got b. did you get c. you had got d. b & c
10. I .... with my own homework.
    a. help b. helped c. was helped d. have helped

11. Rokaya, who is 16, was born ....
   a. the other day　　b. sixteen years
   c. once upon a time　　d. in 2007

12. Rokaya, who is 16, was born .... ago.
   a. the other day　　b. sixteen years
   c. once upon a time　　d. in 2007

13. I ran into قابلت بالصدفة Rokaya ....
   a. behind the time　　b. sixteen years
   c. the other day　　d. since 2005

14. Much noise .... when I arrived.
   a. has made　　b. were made　　c. was making　　d. was being made

15. The hair of the little girl's doll was ....
   a. combing　　b. been combing　　c. being combed　　d. been combed

16. .... presenting the lesson, the teacher allowed questions.
   a. While　　b. When　　c. During　　d. a & b

17. .... the lesson, the teacher allowed questions.
   a. While　　b. When　　c. During　　d. a & b

18. From seven to eleven, Leen .... her lessons.
   a. was revising　　b. was revised　　c. has revised　　d. was being revised

19. From seven to eleven, Leen's lessons ....
   a. were revising　　b. have been revised
   c. have revised　　d. were being revised

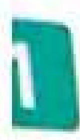
20. I used .... up before sunrise.
   a. get　　b. to get　　c. to getting　　d. to be got

21. I became used .... up before sunrise.
   a. get　　b. to get　　c. to getting　　d. to be got

22. There are always economic crises .... pandemics. *(LM)*
   a. while　　b.as　　c. when　　d. during

23. How long ago .... your father come back from London? *(LM)*
   a. did　　b. has　　c. will　　d. had

24. While .... for the school bus, I met one of my old friends. *(LM)*
   a. being waited　　b.am waiting　　c. was waiting　　d. waiting



5. While Samir was doing his homework, his sister .... to loud music. So, he wasn't able to concentrate. (LM)

a. listened b. was listening c. is listening d. had listened

26. I used to play football when I was young, but now I .... (LM)

a. am not b. don't c. didn't d. wasn't

2 Special Cases

27. My mother .... the table for lunch.

a. set b. has set c. was setting d. a, b & c

28. My mother .... the table for lunch when I arrived home, so I helped her.

a. set b. has set c. was setting d. a, b & c

29. My mother .... the table for lunch, then she called us.

a. set b. has set c. was setting d. a, b & c

30. She .... her thumb, didn't she?

a. hurts b. hurt c. didn't hurt d. has hurt

31. ...., Ali?

a. Did you feed b. Were you fed
c. Were you feeding d. You were fed

32. .... Ali?

a. Did you feed b. Were you fed
c. Were you being fed d. You were fed

33. ...., Ali.

a. Did you feed b. Were you fed
c. Were you feeding d. You were fed

34. I always .... up early when I was a primary school student.

a. get b. got c. have got d. had got

35. A sharp knife is used .... meat.

a. to cut b. to cutting c. cut d. cutting

36. I .... who had broken the glass window.

a. knew b. was knowing c. did know d. a & c

37. I wish I .... a larger car.

a. have b. had c. am having d. was having

38. It is high time he .... home.

a. return b. returns c. returned d. had returned

39. I'd rather you .... me to lend you money. You embarrass me.
    a. was asked b. didn't ask c. had asked d. hadn't asked

40. I wish you .... me to lend you money. You only embarrassed me.
    a. asked b. didn't ask c. have asked d. hadn't asked

41. .... on holiday, I had a nice time.
    a. While b. During c. As d. Just as

42. .... their father's arrival, the children cheered.
    a. When b. While c. On d. During

43. I .... my parents.
    a. loved b. was loved c. was loving d. was being loved

44. My car .... down midways.
    a. was breaking b. was broken c. had broken d. broke

3 Check your Understanding

45. "Mr Mohammed used to like hot pepper in his food." This means he ....
    a. likes it now
    b. like it now
    c. no longer liked it
    d. no longer likes it

46. "Mr Mohammed didn't use to like hot pepper in his food." This means he ....
    a. likes it now
    b. doesn't like it now
    c. no longer liked it
    d. no longer likes it

47. "I wish I were rich." The speaker .... rich.
    a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't

48. "I wish I had got up early yesterday." The speaker .... up late.
    a. got b. didn't get c. has got d. never gets

49. "When I was at home, I forgot all about work." What does this mean?
    a. While at home, I forgot all about work.
    b. During home, I forgot all about work.
    c. On home, I forgot all about work.
    d. When on home, I forgot all about work.

Advanced Exercise on Language

ويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... Sharm, I went diving every day.
   a. On b. While c. While in d. During
2. .... my stay with my aunt, I helped her with the housework.
   a. During b. While c. As d. By
3. I .... the cold weather of Canada.
   a. used to b. didn't use to c. got used to d. was using
4. There's a charger .... to the mobile.
   a. was attached b. attached c. attaching d. which attache

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	مكن أن يتبع (while) حرف الجر (in + noun) يمكن استخدام (while) فقط أو (during/on) قبل اسم مكان
2.	a	الاختيار الوحيد الذي يأتي بعده اسم (my stay) هو (during)
3.	c	تعبير (got used to) يتبعه (noun) وهو (the cold weather)
4.	b	تصريف الثالث (attached) هو اختصار لعبارة الوصل المبنية للمجهول: - (which is attached)



LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 12 - 15 WB pages 6 & 7



Part I — Chapter 1

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة والمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

blacksmith(n)	حَدَّاد	grab(bed) (v)	يجذب/يشد
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	handcuffs(n)	قيود (كلابشات) اليدين
convict(n)	مَسجُون - مُذنِب	leg-irons(n)	قيود (كلابشات) القدمين
file(n)	مِبْرَد	marsh(n)	مُستَنقَع
get away (phr. v)	يهرب	set off(phr. v)	ينطلق/يبدأ رحلة

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيداً. فهي موضع امتحان.

blacksmith(n) حَدَّاد	- a person who makes things from iron الحديد, especially horseshoes حدوة الحصان
commit a crime يرتكب جريمة	- to do something which is illegal غير قانوني
convict(n) مَسجُون - مُذنِب	- someone who is in prison السجن for a crime
file(n) مِبْرَد	- metal tool with rough خشن surfaces for shaping تشكيل or smoothing صقل metal
get away (phr. v) يهرب	- to escape
grab(bed) (v) يجذب/يشد	- to get hold of something suddenly or roughly بشدة
handcuffs(n) قيود (كلابشات) اليدين	- two metal rings linked together which are locked مقفولة around a prisoner's wrists معصم
leg-irons(n) قيود (كلابشات) القدمين	- two metal rings linked with a chain سلسلة, which are attached to a prisoner's ankles كاحل
marsh(n) مُستَنقَع	- low ground which is usually wet
set off (phr. v) ينطلق/يبدأ رحلة	- to begin a journey

3 Idioms التعبيرات

behave = act	يتصرف
get … breath back = start to breathe normally again	يستريح - يهدأ
jump out of … skin = something suddenly frightens (me)	يفزع - يخاف بشدة
roughly = approximately	تقريبًا

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "It takes roughly two hours to get to the company." 'Roughly' here means .... *(LM)*
   a. seriously b. hardly c. harshly d. approximately
2. "The convict behaved in a dishonest way." 'Behave' is similar in meaning to .... *(LM)*
   a. act b. refuse c. agree d. think
3. "Once I got my breath back, I hurried home as fast as I could." 'I got my breath back' means I .... *(LM)*
   a. found difficulty in breathing easily.
   b. shouted madly for help.
   c. faced the situation bravely.
   d. started breathing normally again.
4. When I saw a huge animal in the dark, I jumped out of my skin. This means I was .... *(LM)*
   a. amazed b. bold c. terrified d. brave
5. The police are looking for the criminal who has .... that horrible crime. *(LM)*
   a. made b. committed c. competed d. corrected
6. The robber grabbed the lady's handbag and .... quickly so he could escape. *(LM)*
   a. coped up b. sat down c. set off d. broke into
7. A .... is low ground which is usually wet.
   a. marsh b. convict c. soldier d. character

8. A .... is a person who makes things from iron, especially horseshoes.
   a. file b. blacksmith c. leg-irons d. handcuffs
9. A .... is someone who is in prison for a crime.
   a. marsh b. convict c. soldier d. character

Part II Skills

تنويه: المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

Synonymous Expressions تعبيرات مترادفة

تنويه: الجدول التالي يحتوى على بعض التعبيرات الهامة التى تستخدم لغرض أو لآخر أثناء الكتابة، وإن كان بعضها يرتبط بالقواعد اللغوية، وتعتبر هذه التعبيرات من نواتج التعلم الهامة.

These expressions are used to introduce the first point.
تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية لتقديم الفكرة الأولى.

Firstly, = To begin with, — أولاً

These expressions are used to introduce the second point.
تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية لتقديم الفكرة التالية.

Secondly, = Next = Then = After that — ثانيًا - بعد ذلك - ثم

These expressions are used at the beginning of the conclusion of a paragraph or an essay. تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية في بداية خاتمة الفقرة الإنشائية أو المقال

Finally, = Lastly, — أخيرًا

To conclude = In conclusion
= In summary — والخلاصة هى

These expressions are used to show contrast. تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية لإظهار التناقض

Although = Whilst
= Despite the fact that = In spite of the fact that ..... — برغم أن

But/However/Yet — لكن - مع ذلك

On the one hand, — من ناحية

On the other hand, — من الناحية الأخرى

1

These expressions are used to introduce result or effect

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية قبل العبارات الدالة على النتيجة.

SO = Consequently = That's why
= As a result = In turn

لذلك

These expressions are used to introduce cause or reason

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية قبل العبارات الدالة على السبب.

Because/Since/As + جملة
= Because of + n / (inf. + ing)
= Due to + n / (inf. + ing)
= Owing to + n / (inf. + ing)
= Thanks to + n / (inf. + ing)

لأن - بسبب

These expressions are used to introduce opinion

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية قبل العبارات الدالة على الرأي.

Personally = In my view,
= From my point of view,
= In my opinion,

من وجهة نظرى

These expressions are used for the addition of more ideas.

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية للإضافة.

In addition (to)
Moreover
Along with
Besides (that)
As well as
Furthermore

بالإضافة إلى - إلى جانب

These expressions are used to introduce a general idea or a conclusion

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية قبل العبارات الدالة على الفكرة العامة أو الخلاصة.

On the whole,= In general,

فى المجمل - بوجه عام

These expressions are used to introduce an idea you say it after considering all the facts

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية قبل الفكرة التي تقولها بعد التفكير في كل جوانبها.

إجمالاً

On balance,
= Considering everything
= Considering all factors

These expressions are used to introduce an idea the speaker or writer is sure about

تُستخدَم التعبيرات التالية قبل العبارات التي تحتوي على معلومات واضحة (مؤكدة) من وجهة نظر المتحدث أو الكاتب.

Obviously, = It is crystal clear that

من الواضح أن

Exercise On Synonymous Expressions

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Which of the following transitions shows cause? *(LM)*
   a. however b. firstly c. therefore d. due to
2. Which of the following means in general? *(LM)*
   a. On the other hand b. On balance
   c. On the whole d. On a bigger scale
3. We considered all factors; ...., the project has achieved high profits. *(LM)*
   a. on demand b. on the one hand c. on balance d. on the other hand
4. My father likes classical music. – I, on ...., like jazz. *(LM)*
   a. the one hand b. the other hand
   c. balance d. duty
5. Reading widens our horizons. Moreover, it enriches our culture. Moreover, here shows .... *(LM)*
   a. reason b. cause c. contrast d. addition
6. Which of the following doesn't express contrast? *(LM)*
   a. He contacts us although he is busy.
   b. He is busy, so he can't contact us.
   c. He is busy, but he contacts us.
   d. Despite being busy, he contacts us.
7. "People have different opinions about the use of the internet." Opinions is similar in meaning to: .... *(LM)*
   a. innovations b. expectations
   c. points of view d. points of clash
8. .... practising a lot of sport, he also likes reading. Which of the following completes the sentence, showing addition? *(LM)*
   a. Despite b. As well as c. Regardless of d. Because of
9. .... careful he is, he sometimes makes mistakes.
   a. Whatever b. Regardless c. However d. Despite
10. Which of the following is used to reflect contrast? *(LM)*
    a. Ahmad doesn't read stories because he has no free time.
    b. In addition to reading, I like swimming.
    c. While Ahmad likes reading, I prefer swimming.
    d. Amir, as well as Ahmad, like reading.

11. "A terrible accident happened in Banha, ..." Which of the following completions shows result? *(LM)*
   a. due to the rash driver.
   b. although the driver was careful.
   c. so some people were sent to hospital.
   d. but no one died.

12. When you want to introduce an opposite opinion when you are writing, you can say .... *(Practice Ex. 1)*
   a. In the other way
   b. On the other hand
   c. By the other hand
   d. On one side

13. I like reading short stories. Moreover, I am fond of writing poetry. This shows .... *(Practice Ex. 2)*
   a. reason
   b. cause
   c. addition
   d. contrast

14. Which expression can you not use to start your final paragraph in an essay? *(Practice Ex. 3)*
   a. To sum up
   b. In conclusion
   c. To conclude
   d. Firstly

15. Which expressions introduce a sequence تسلسل of ideas in an essay? There is more than one answer. *(Practice Ex. 3)*
   a. In conclusion, Lastly, In summary
   b. On the one hand, On the other hand
   c. However, In contrast, Nevertheless
   d. Firstly, Secondly, Finally

Translation

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. We can read thousand of newspapers and magazines from around the globe online. Subscribers get access to more than 7,000 of the world's top publications as soon as they're available for free or according to the rules. *(LM)*

أ. يمكننا قراءة آلاف الصُحُف والمجلات من جميع أنحاء العالَم عبر الإنترنت، ويمكن للمشتركين الوصول إلى أكثر من (٧٠٠٠) من أفضل المنشورات في العالَم بمجرد تَوَفُرها مجانًا أو وفقًا للقواعد.

ب. يمكننا قراءة آلاف الكتب والمجلات من جميع أنحاء العالَم عبر الإنترنت، ويمكن للناشرين الوصول إلى أكثر من (٧٠٠٠) من أفضل المنشورات في العالَم بمجرد تَوَفُرها مجانًا أو وفقًا للقواعد.

جـ. يمكننا قراءة ملايين الصُحُف والمجلات من جميع أنحاء الوطن عبر الإنترنت، ويمكن للمشتركين الوصول إلى أكثر من (٧٠٠٠) من أفضل المنشورات في العالَم بمجرد تَوَفُرها مجانًا أو وفقًا للقواعد.

د. يمكننا استيراد آلاف الصُحُف والمجلات من جميع أنحاء العالَم عبر الإنترنت، ويمكن للمستوردين الوصول إلى أكثر من (٧٠٠٠) من أفضل المنشورات في العالَم بمجرد تَوَفُرها مجانًا أو وفقًا للقواعد.

2. Social media has some negative effects, the most dangerous of which is spreading rumours.

أ. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها بعض الآثار المنفية، أخطرها نشر الشائعات.

ب. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي كان لها بعض الآثار السلبية، أخطرها نشر الشائعات.

جـ. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها بعض الآثار السلبية، والخطير هو نشر الشائعات.

د. وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لها بعض الآثار السلبية، وأخطرها نشر الشائعات.

3. Sharing false news affects the security and stability of the whole society without exception.

أ. مشاركة الأخبار تؤثر على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون استثناء.

ب. مشاركة الأخبار الكاذبة تؤثر على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون استثناء.

جـ. مشاركة الأخبار الكاذبة تؤثر على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون توقع.

د. مشاركة الأخبار الكاذبة أثرت على أمن واستقرار المجتمع بأسره دون استثناء.

4. All citizens should get COVID-19 vaccine, especially the old-aged and those who have chronic diseases.

أ. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا وخاصة كبار السن والمصابين بأمراض مزمنة.

ب. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا وخاصة كبار السن والمصابين بأمراض تنفسية.

جـ. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا وخاصة كبار السن وهؤلاء من لديهم أمراض مزمنة.

د. يجب على جميع المواطنين أن يتلقوا لقاح فيروس كورونا وخاصة كبار السن وأولئك يعانون من أمراض مزمنة.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. لقد يسَّرت التجارة الإلكترونية على الكثيرين من الناس عملية البيع والشراء إلكترونيًا، وهذا بدوره يوفر الوقت والجهد فضلاً عن خَلْق مناخ تنافسي يَصُبُّ في صالح المستهلك أولاً. *(LM)*

a. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and trade electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive climate that benefits the producer first.

b. E-learning has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a complete climate that benefits the consumer first.

c. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electronically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment that benefits the consumer first.

d. E-commerce has made it easier for many people to buy and sell electrically. This, in turn, saves time and effort in addition to creating a competitive environment that fits the consumer first.

٢. حققت النجمة المصرية فريال أشرف إنجازًا كبيرًا بفوزها بالميدالية الذهبية في الكاراتية في أوليمبياد طوكيو ٢٠٢١.

a. The Egyptian star Feryal Ashraf made a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.
b. The Egyptian star Feryal Ashraf did a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Paralympics.
c. Feryal Ashraf, the Egyptian star, made a great achievement by winning the gold medal in karate at the 2021 Tokyo Olympics.
d. a & c

---

٣. لم يعد سوق العمل بحاجة لمجرد شهادات، بل أصبح يبحث عن المهارات الشخصية والتقنية لدي المتقدمين للعمل.

a. The labour market no longer need just certificates, but rather searches for the personal and technical skills of job applicants.
b. The labour market no longer needs just certificates, but rather searches for the personal and technical skills of job applicants.
c. The labour market no longer needs just certificates, but rather searches for the personal and soft skills of job applicants.
d. The labour market no longer needs just certificates, and rather searches for the personal and technical skills of job applicants.

---

٤. من الجوانب السلبية للألعاب الحاسوبية أنها تقلل من فرصة اكتساب الطفل للمهارات العملية التي يحتاجها في الحياة.

a. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that it reduces the opportunity for the child to acquire the practical skills he needs in life.
b. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that it reduces the opportunity for the child to enquire the practical skills he needs in life.
c. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that they reduce the opportunity for the child to acquire the practical skills they need in life.
d. One of the negative aspects of computer games is that they reduce the opportunity for the child to acquire the personal skills they need in life.

Test on Unit 1

• Understand • Apply • Create



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You can't rely on this information; it's .... *(Practice Ex. 1)*
   a. reliable b. acute c. accurate d. inaccurate
2. The news story about the match missed out the injured player, so there was bias by .... *(Practice Ex. 1)*
   a. omission b. mislead c. spin d. inaccurate
3. All I .... is to know what mistake I have made.
   a. occur b. mention c. block d. demand
4. Luckily, there were no .... as a result of the car accident.
   a. warnings b. casualties c. piracies d. rights
5. .... depend on the emotional appeal to attract readers.
   a. Convicts b. Broadsheets c. Tabloids d. Punishments
6. You have to work hard to .... the absence غياب of Mr Ashraf.
   a. compensate b. obtain c. refer d. announce
7. Don't .... to have done something you didn't take part in.
   a. spoil b. spin c. claim d. shock
8. A police car took the .... to prison, the ideal place for them.
   a. convicts b. broadsheets c. tabloids d. punishments
9. She grew used .... for charities.
   a. to work b. to working c. work d. working
10. She left last Friday. I haven't heard from her .... then.
    a. ago b. already c. for d. since
11. While .... lunch, she cut her finger.
    a. was preparing b. prepared c. preparing d. prepares
12. Last month, she .... home without telling anyone.
    a. was leaving b. left c. was left d. has left
13. She .... to explain why she had turned down the offer.
    a. had refused b. has refused c. refused d. was refused
14. She .... in a hotel in the north of England.
    a. was seen b. has seen c. saw d. had seen

15. They .... reclaiming the desert land and farming it for about eight years now.
 a. had been b. would be c. are d. have been

16. Omar .... football since he was eight years old and now he is in the under-15 national team.
 a. played b. had played
 c. has been playing d. was playing

❯ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (امتحان الدور الأول علمى ٢٠٢١)

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left," or: "Whatever it is, there won't be much taste in it". Of course, there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future.

Nevertheless, not all the experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a world food shortage but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it.

Moreover, in most industrial countries, one important cause of trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are ready for a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population.

By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However, skeptically we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat!

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. According to the passage, using vegetable ingredients is one of the methods to overcome the shortage of ....
 a. protein b. fats c. vitamins d. calcium

18. Which of the following can best summarise the last paragraph?
a. Soya beans can change the taste of meat
b. Soya beans, steak and food ingredients
c. Beans, fats and skin
d. Soya beans as a replacement of meat

19. There won't be food shortage in the future if the food is ....
a. fairly distributed
b. unfairly distributed
c. of high quality
d. of low quality

20. The problem of food can be solved if we ....
a. use the internet and mass media
b. use advanced methods of cultivation
c. use more water from the sea
d. purify tho river water

21. According to the passage, our diet may be .... in the future.
a. the same
b. difficult
c. different
d. traditional

22. We feed animals on grain to produce ....
a. high quantity beef
b. fat and food supplies
c. skin and vegetables
d. high quality beef

23. According to the passage, food production is growing .... the population.
a. as slow as
b. as fast as
c. faster than
d. slower than

24. The main idea of the passage is ....
a. The advantages of eating soya beans
b. The causes of food shortage and its solution
c. The distribution of food
d. Population increasing all over the world

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (امتحان الدور الأول علمى ٢٠٢١)

Basel Rashid, who was a famous detective, working for businessmen to protect them and solve mysteries related to their work, had finished working on a crime in Aswan and was about to go home on the Spanish Train. When Basel got on the train, he noticed that it was unusually full for the time of the year.

Soon after the train had left Aswan, a wealthy businessman, Mr Mourad, asked Basel to protect him because he believed his life was in danger. Although Mourad offered Basel a lot of money to do this,

the detective did not believe the man's story and refused to help him.

During the night, the train had to stop because of heavy rain. The next morning, Mourad was found dead; he had been murdered. Had someone got on the train and killed him?

Now Basel believed Mourad's story and, together with a doctor, who was also on the train, he started work to solve the crime. The two men soon discovered that Mourad had a secret identity. He was not a businessman, but a criminal who was hated by many people.

After examining the train and Mourad's body, Basel realised that the man had almost certainly been murdered by one of the 13 people from the same part of the train as Mourad. This meant that there were 13 suspects. One by one, Basel discovered that these 13 people all had a good reason to hate Mourad. Together, they had carefully planned what they were going to do and had all taken part in the murder. That was why the Spanish Train had been so full on that journey.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The choice that can summarise the fourth paragraph is "............".
   a. Identifying who Mr Mourad really was and his real job.
   b. Protecting the other passengers from the murderers
   c. Discovering Mourad's secret passport and his work as a spy
   d. Finding out Mourad was wrong when he asked for the detective's help

26. Basel did not want to help Mr Mourad ....
   a. to take part in his murder
   b. as he was the murderer
   c. to kill the other criminals
   d. as he thought he was a liar

27. Basel found out there were 13 suspects because ....
   a. Mourad told him while dying
   b. he checked their identities
   c. he knew they hated Mourad
   d. the doctor told him so

8. Although Basel refused to help Mr Mourad, he ....
   a. was right not to help Mr Mourad
   b. helped the doctor to reach the truth
   c. suspected few of the passengers
   d. regretted helping Mr Mourad

. The central idea of the story is "............" .
   a. Criminals would help to protect each other.
   b. Crime would be committed by the help of the police
   c. Criminals always face their fears of the death
   d. The Spanish Train mysterious crime

30. Mourad thought he was certainly in danger, so ....
 a. he was suffering from heart problems
 b. he asked Basel for help
 c. the detective warned him not to take the train
 d. the doctor had examined him the day before

31. Basel was in Aswan ....
 a. because he worked as a policeman there
 b. because he was on a secret mission
 c. to investigate Mourad's murder
 d. to arrest people who killed Mourad

32. According to the passage, one must .... the others when they ask.
 a. help b. ignore c. encourage d. defeat

Choose the best Arabic translation : (امتحان الدور الأول علمي ٢٠٢١)

33. A civilized society should treat its elderly members well even if it is multicultural.

أ. المجتمع المتحضر ينبغي عليه أن يعامل كبار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان مجتمع متعدد الثقافات.
ب. المجتمع المتحضر يجب أن يراعي في تعامله الأعضاء ، القدماء ، ينبغي عليه حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات.
جـ. ويجب على المجتمع المتحضر أن يعالج كبار السن جيدًا رغم تعدد الثقافات.
د. المجتمع المتحضر هو الذي يجب عليه أن يتعامل مع صغار السن معاملة جيدة حتى لو كان متعدد الثقافات.

34. One of the current reform programmes is to stimulate investment in the industrial sector.

أ. أحد برامج الإصلاح الحالية تحفيز الاستثمار في القطاع الصناعي.
ب. أحد برامج التغير الحالية تحفيز الاستثمار في مجال الصناعة.
جـ. أحد برامج الإصلاح الحالية زيادة الاستثمار في المجال الصناعي.
د. أحد برامج الإصلاح الحالية تحفيز الاستثمار في المجال الصناعي.

Choose the best English translation : (امتحان الدور الأول علمي ٢٠٢١)

٣٥. يرتكب البعض خطأ كبير ببحثهم عن الشهرة لاعتقادهم بأنها سبب للسعادة.

a. Some people make a big mistake by looking for fame because they think that it is the cause of happiness.
b. Some people commit a big mistake by looking up fame, thinking that it is the cause of happiness.
c. Some people made a big mistake by looking for fame because they think that it is the cause of happiness.
d. Some people commit big mistake by looking for fame thinking that it is the cause of happiness.

٣٠. إنها مسئولية الوالدين ان يقوموا بتنوير الشباب بالاثار المدمرة لتناول المخدرات القاتلة.

a. Parents are responsible for making the youth unaware of the destructive effects of eating killing drugs.

b. It's the parents' responsibility to make the youth aware of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.

c. It's the parents' irresponsibility to lighten the youth of the destructive effects of taking killing drugs.

d. Parents are responsible for making their children unaware of the destructive effects of eating killing drugs.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. A/an .... essay is a form of academic writing which is built around a detailed description of a person, building, place, situation, etc. (LM

a. narrative b. descriptive c. argumentative d. formal

38. An argumentative essay .... (LM

a. recounts an incident that either you or others have experienced.

b. requires you to investigate an idea, evaluate evidence and set forth an argument concerning that idea.

c. tells readers a story, often about an experience that resulted in a powerful life change

d. is a form of academic writing that is built around a detailed description of a person, building, place, situation, notion, etc.

39. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? (LM

a. Did you know that I'd been working from home for two months, Hatim

b. Did you know that I'd been working from home for two months Hatim?

c. Did you know that I d been working from home for two months, Hatim?

d. Did you know that I'd been working from home for two months, Hatim?

40. A/An .... essay is a type of essay that takes a stance on an issue.

a. descriptive b. narrative c. persuasive d. expository

Answers of Test on unit 1

اسم الطالـب (رياضياً) : ....

•تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	21.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
2.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	22.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
3.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	23.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
4.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	24.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
5.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	25.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
6.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	26.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
7.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	27.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
8.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	28.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
9.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	29.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
10.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	30.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
11.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	31.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
12.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	32.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
13.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	33.	(د)	(ج)	(ب)	(أ)
14.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	34.	(د)	(ج)	(ب)	(أ)
15.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	35.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
16.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	36.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
17.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	37.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
18.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	38.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
19.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	39.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
20.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	40.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 1

تنويه
للمزيد من التدريبات للأزهر الشريف - بنك الأسئلة

. Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Youssef for advice about online information.

Ahmed : The internet has become the main source of information, (1) .... ?

Youssef : Of course, it has.

Ahmed : (2) .... ?

Youssef : Yes. Like anything else, it has some downsides.

Ahmed : Like what?

Youssef : (3) ....

Ahmed : How can I check the reliability of online information?

Youssef : (4) ....

Ahmed : That's great. If the same information is available on different websites, that means it is true.

Youssef : But, be careful of out-of-date information.

Ahmed : OK, thanks.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Social Media has a negative impact on news and society"

....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- The development of the educational system is a flexible ongoing process that needs thinking outside the box.

....

4. Translate into English :

- إن السعادة هي الهدف الذي يسعى جميع الناس إلى تحقيقه.

....

(الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

5. Choose the correct answer : (Islamic Selections) :

- Abu-Sufian .... take his caravan safely to Mecca.

a. wasn't able to b. failed to

c. managed to c. couldn't



GUIDE



New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات

PART ONE

للصف الثالث الثانوى
عام - أزهرى
الفصل الدراسى الأول



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى



FIRST TERM



By: Sawsan Kamel

UNIT

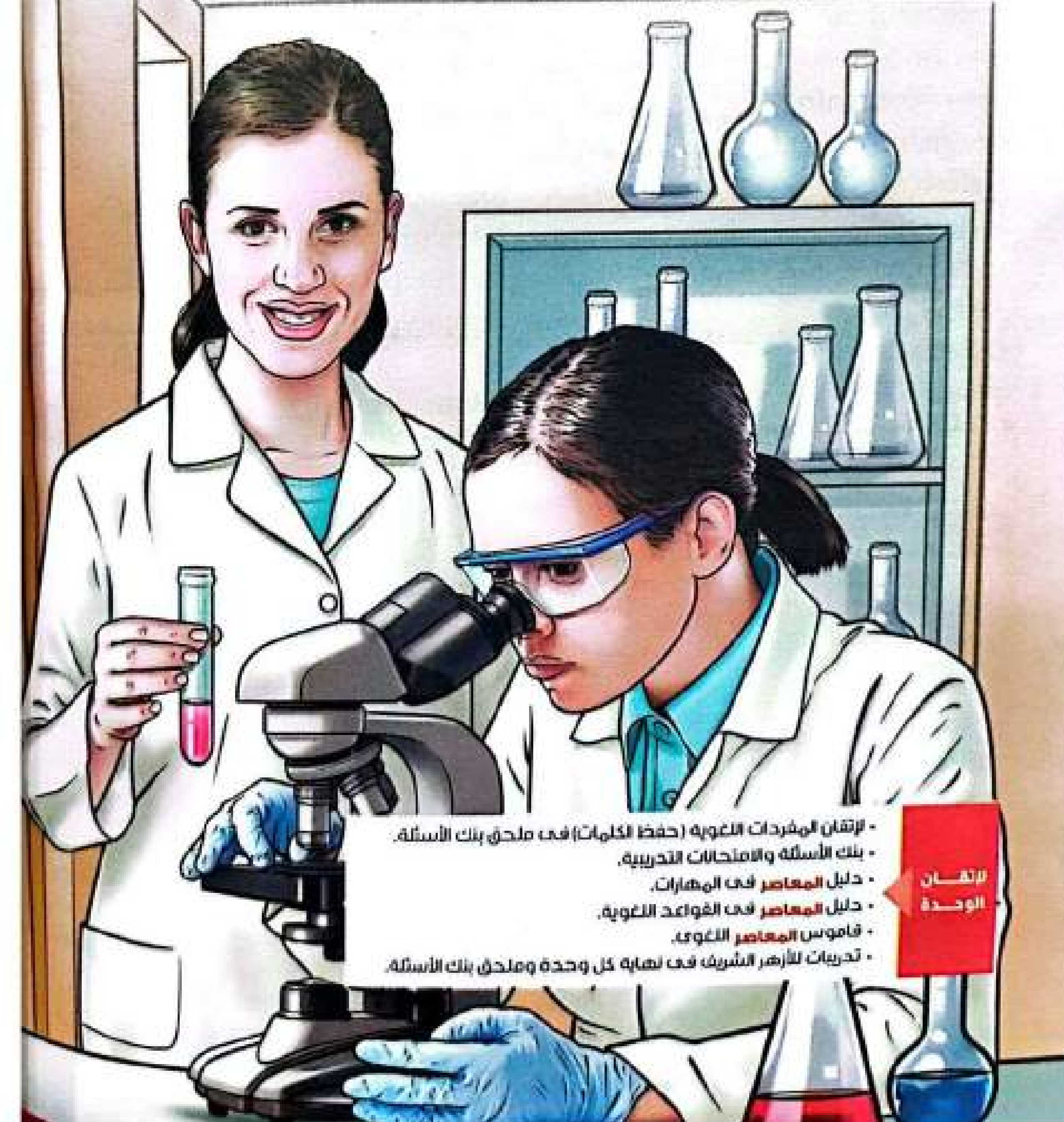
2

Her story

SB pages 16 : 25   WB pages 8 : 13

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  Extract information from three texts
- **Writing :**
  A report on the results of a survey
- **Listening :**
  Listen to a podcast about girls in education
- **Speaking :**
  Make a speech about equality
- **Language :**
  Comparatives and superlatives; past perfect simple and past perfect continuous
- **Life skills :**
  Critical thinking : Identifying inequality and challenging stereotypes



لإتقان الوحدة

- لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) فى ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التجريبية.
- دليل **المعاصر** فى المهارات.
- دليل **المعاصر** فى القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس **المعاصر** اللغوى.
- تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

LESSONS **1 & 2**





Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

award(ed) (n/v)	جائزة - منحة - يمنح جائزة	physicist(n)	فيزيائي - خبير في الفيزياء
contribution(n)	مُساهَمَة / مُشارَكَة	prejudice(d) (v)	يُؤلب - يُحرّض على - يؤثر سلبياً على
make a contribution	يساهم - يشارك	prejudice(n)	انحياز - تَحَامُل - ظُلم
court(n)	ملعب - محكمة	qualify (ied) (v)	يتأهل - يتخرّج
determination(n)	عزم - تصميم	rank(ed) (n/v)	مكانة - رتبة - يحتل مكانة
determine(d) (v)	يُصمّم/يُصِرّ - يُحدّد		
Karate(n)	رياضة الكاراتية	role model(n)	قدوة - مَثَل أعلى
lecturer(n)	مُحَاضِر	round(n)	جولة
overcome - overcame - overcome(v)	يتغلب على - يجتاز - يتخطى	stereotype(v)	يُصنّف بشكل غير عادل
		stereotype(n)	فكرة نمطية ثابتة - نموذج نمطي - قالب
pharmacist(n)	صيدلاني	tournament(n)	بطولة

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

achievement(n)	إنجاز	junior(n)	ناشئ - حديث السن
assume(d) (v)	يدعي - يفترض	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
atom(n)	الذَرّة	major(adj)	كبير - رئيسي
attend(ed) (v)	يَحضَر - يَدْرس	medical(adj)	طبي
attention(n)	انتباه - اهتمام	mental(adj)	عقلي - ذهني
attitude(n)	تَوَجُّه - وجهة نظر	nuclear(adj)	نووي
beat - beat - beaten (v)	يهزم	obstacles(n)	عقبات - عراقيل
		obtain(ed) (v)	يحصل على - يكتسب
celebrate(d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	organiser(n)	مُنظم
clay(n)	صلصال/طين	PhD (Doctor of Philosophy)	الدكتوراة
compete(d) (v)	ينافس		

competition(n)	مسابقة - منافسة
conditions(n)	ظروف - شروط
confidence(n)	الثقة
confident(adj)	واثق
consider(ed) (v)	يعتبر
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدى
demonstrate(d) (v)	يوضّح - يُبيِّن - يُبرهن
difficulty(n)	موقف صعب - صعوبة
equality(n)	المساواة
extract (ed) (v)	يستخلص - يجتزئ
female(n/adj)	أنثى - نسائى
field(n)	مجال - حقل
fight - fought (v)	يحارب - يقاتل - قتال - شجار
first/firsts(n)	رائد - باكورة
fuel(n)	وقود
generate(d) (v)	يولد
honour(ed) (v/n)	يُكرِّم - شرف - مجد
impressive(adj)	مُبهر - رائع
inequality(n)	عدم المساواة
influence(d) (v/n)	يؤثر على - تأثير
innovate(d) (v)	يبتكر
power(n)	طاقة
previously(adv)	سابقاً
private(adj)	خاص - شخصى
professional(adj)	احترافى
profile(n)	هيئة - صورة - وضع
public(n/adj)	الجمهور - الشعب - محبوب
reaction(n)	رد فعل - مردود
recognise(d) (v)	يتعرف على
remarkable(adj)	بارز - ملحوظ
research(ed) (v/n)	يُجْرِي أبحاث على - بحث
retire(d) (v)	يتقاعد - يعتزل
scholarship(n)	منحة دراسية - زمالة
spark(ed) (v)	ينشأ - تنطلق شرارته
special(adj)	مُميَّز - خاص
specialise(d) (v)	يتخصص
sportswoman(n)	(سيدة) رياضية
straw(n)	قش
treat(ed) (v)	يعالج
treatment(n)	علاج - معالجة
win(n)	فوز
youth(n)	الشباب

3 Definitions تعريفات

award(n) جائزة - مِنحة	a prize or symbol رمز given to recognise an achievement انجاز
contribution(n) مُساهَمَة/ مُشارَكَة	something you do to help make something successful or someone advance
court(n) ملعب	an area made for playing games such as tennis
Karate(n) رياضة الكاراتيه	a Japanese sport in which you must defeat تهزم a person using hits, kicks or throws. الإسقاط أرضًا
lecturer(n) مُحَاضِر	a person who teaches at a university
pharmacist(n) صيدلى	a person who knows medicine you should take to make you better
podcast(n) إذاعة رقمية - منصة صوتية	a file of recorded sound and sometimes pictures that you can download from the Internet

physicist(n) فيزيائي/خبير في الفيزياء	a scientist who specialises in the field of physics.
prejudice(n) انحياز/ تحامُل/ ظُلم	an unfair غير عادل or unreasonable غير منطقي opinion because you do not have enough knowledge معرفة
qualify (ied) (v) يتأهل - يتخرج	to successfully finish a training course, so you can do a job
rank (v) يحتل مرتبة أو تصنيف	to have a particular position in a list of people or things that have been put in order of quality or importance
role model(n) قدوة - مَثَل أعلى	a person young people can look up to يُقدِّرونه and try to be like them
round(n) جولة	one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part
stereotype(n) فكرة نمطية ثابتة - نموذج نمطي - قالب	a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like, which is often not true in reality في الواقع
tournament(n) بطولة رياضية (مجمعة)	a competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner

Exercise **On Vocabulary** • Understand

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The .... of the woman as a homemaker no longer exists; she now holds key positions around the world. (LM

   a. stereo b. stereotype c. location d. site

2. I paid close attention to the .... and jotted down يدون key points to get ready for the final exam. (LM

   a. maker b. lecturer c. listener d. worker

3. The problem is difficult, but I am doing my best to .... it. (LM

   a. think b. gain c. win d. overcome

4. The famous novelist has won a lot of international .... (LM

   a. awards b. rewards c. words d. wards

5. Try to avoid .... when writing a news story. (LM

   a. pride b. prejudice c. justice d. conscience

6. The secret formula for success is hard work and .... *(LM)*
   a. situation b. ammunition c. deterioration d. determination
7. Naguib Mahfouz was .... as one of the most distinguished novelists in the Arab world. *(LM)*
   a. considered b. excluded c. appeared d. ranked
8. After going through many obstacles, the young man .... as a doctor. *(LM)*
   a. taught b. qualified c. defied d. rewarded
9. A .... model is a person who people can look up to and try to be like them. *(LM)*
   a. role b. rail c. reel d. real
10. We should reward those who have made significant .... to our society. *(LM)*
    a. ammunition b. constitutions c. distributions d. contributions
11. A/An .... is an expert in the interactions of matter and energy in the physical universe. *(LM)*
    a. psychologist b. physicist c. archaeologist d. socialist
12. Egypt enters teams into many different international .... (Practice Ex. 1)
    a. rounds b. courts c. Grand Slams d. tournaments
13. I took many notes because the lecturer gave a lot of interesting information. A synonym for 'lecturer' here is .... (Practice Ex. 1)
    a. role model b. assistant c. teacher d. physicist
14. My favourite tennis star was injured and carried out of the ....
    a. court b. round c. tournament d. attention
15. Strangely, my team was beaten in the first .... I wish they had gone further.
    a. court b. round c. tournament d. attention

2 Important vocabulary

16. I never .... that women are less efficient than men; in fact, they often outperform a large number of males. *(LM)*
    a. refuse b. deny c. assume d. resume
17. My brother is going to .... in social engineering; it is the branch he likes most. *(LM)*
    a. realise b. specialise c. emphasise d. economise

18. Yasmeen's winning invention was .... by the need for cleaner water in her village. (LM)

a. contained b. stained c. parked d. sparked

19. Teachers use different ways to assess students'............ . (LM)

a. treatment b. movement c. achievement d. agreement

20. Naguib Mahfouz is still a/an .... to young novelists.

a. inspiration b. respiration c. animation d. regulation

21. The major .... to achieving that project is money; there aren't enough funds. (LM)

a. cause b. merit c. circle d. obstacle

22. The global distribution of wealth reflects high levels of ....; there are rich and extremely impoverished countries. (LM)

a. minority b. majority c. inequality d. equality

23. You can .... the information you need from the EKB.

a. assume b. influence c. beat d. obtain

24. Feryal Ashraf's gold medal in the Olympics has had a great effect on the .... of karate in Egypt.

a. attitude b. obstacle c. podcast d. profile

25. Feryal Ashraf's gold medal in the Olympics has had a great effect on the .... towards karate in Egypt.

a. attitude b. obstacle c. podcast d. profile

26. Too much stress has a bad effect on your .... health.

a. nuclear b. mental c. major d. impressive

27. Salah's success as a footballer received a big .... from the Arab public.

a. condition b. equality c. reaction d. confidence

28. Don't give up to difficulties. Always .... them.

a. compete b. innovate c. attend d. defy

29. My son Ahmed .... El-Redisseya Egyptian-Japanese School.

a. researches b. innovates c. attends d. defies

30. I moved to Aswan in 2002 and, at first, I found it difficult to get used to the .... there.

a. conditions b. equality c. reactions d. confidence

31. .... power stations have serious effects on the environment.
a. Nuclear b. Mental c. Major d. Impressive

32. Mr Mohammed always .... me at our table tennis matches.
a. assumes b. innovates c. beats d. obtains

33. It's your self-............ that makes us trust you.
a. condition b. equality c. reaction d. confidence

34. Solar power can be used to .... electricity.
a. honour b. generate c. spark d. demonstrate

35. Sama's exam results are .... She has come first with full marks.
a. nuclear b. mental c. minor d. impressive

36. Role models like Mohammed Salah .... their fans.
a. assume b. influence c. beat d. obtain

37. The listening texts are available as .... on El-Moasser's Website.
a. attitudes b. obstacles c. podcasts d. prejudice

38. My parents and teachers give me confidence to .... new ideas.
a. compete b. innovate c. attend d. defy

39. She received a big reaction after her win. The word 'win' here is a/an ....
a. verb b. pronoun c. adjective d. noun

40. The young people who work for charities should be ....
a. honoured b. generated c. skidded d. plunged

41. My uncle has had a .... heart surgery recently.
a. nuclear b. mental c. major d. stressed

42. The research .... the link between poverty and crime.
a. honours b. generates c. sparks d. demonstrates

43. Women are still looking forward to complete .... with men.
a. condition b. equality c. reaction d. confidence

44. Some investigators are still .... the causes of the fire.
a. researching b. innovating c. attending d. defying

45. "Mr Munir's influence on his students is clear". In this sentence, the word 'influence' is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. adjective

3 Definitions

46. A/An .... is an unfair or unreasonable opinion because you do not have enough knowledge.

a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

47. A .... is a fixed idea about what a person or thing is like which is often not true in reality.

a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

48. To .... is to successfully finish a training course, so you can do a job

a. honour b. generate c. extract d. qualify

49. A/An .... is a competition in which players compete against each other in a series of games until there is one winner.

a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

50. A .... is a person young people can look up to and try to be like them

a. lecturer b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model

51. A .... is something you do to help make something successful.

a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

52. A/An .... is a prize or symbol given to recognise an achievement.

a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

53. A .... is an area made for playing games such as tennis.

a. stereotype b. contribution c. court d. competition

54. A/An .... is one of the parts of a competition that you have to finish or win before you can go on to the next part.

a. tournament b. award c. round d. prejudice

55. A .... is an expert in physics.

a. physician b. physicist c. sportswoman d. role model

56. A .... is someone whose job is to prepare medicines in a shop or hospital.

a. role model b. pharmacist c. lecturer d. physics

57. To .... is to have a particular position in a list of people or things that have been put in order of quality or importance.

a. rank b. qualify c. stereotype d. lecture

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الإرتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	firsts يحقق الريادة / يكون الأول في تحقيق إنجاز	give	the confidence يمنح الثقة
attend	a school يدرس في مدرسة	make	a contribution to يُساهم في
break down	stereotypes and prejudices يقضى على الأفكار النمطية والتحامل		a decision يقرر
bring	attention to يلفت الانتباه لـ		a speech يُلقي خطبة
defy	prejudice يتحدي التحيُّز		history يحقق مجد/ يصنع تاريخ
	stereotypes يتمرد على الصورة النمطية		medical treatment يقوم بالعلاج الطبي
do	a job يؤدي عمل	obtain	a PhD يحصل على الدكتوراه
	an activity يمارس نشاط	receive	a big reaction يحصل على مردود قوي
	some research يقوم بالبحث		a scholarship يحصل علي منحة دراسية
	sports يمارس رياضة	recognise	..... contribution to يعترف بإسهامات .... في
generate	electricity يولِّد كهرباء	require	strength يتطلب قوة
have	a difficulty يواجه موقف صعب	win	a scholarship يفوز بمنحة دراسية
	an impact له أثر / تأثير		an award يفوز بجائزة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My cousin .... a STEM school in Al-Obour City. *(LM)*
   a. goes b. attends c. studies d. learns
2. Giana Farouk has .... medals in four different countries. *(LM)*
   a. won b. gained c. beaten d. overcome

3. Confidence helps pioneers .... firsts.
a. give b. achieve c. do d. make

4. Many women .... prejudices against woman nowadays.
a. have b. defy c. break down d. b & c

5. Fans are supposed to .... their stars confidence, not attack them.
a. give b. achieve c. do d. make

6. Salah's visit to the charity .... attention to the importance of donations to help poor people.
a. had b. defied c. brought d. did

7. I was the first in my town to .... the AUC scholarship.
a. win b. give c. recognise d. make

8. Feryal Ashraf .... history in 2021 Tokyo Olympics.
a. gave b. required c. did d. made

9. The impact role models .... on young people is great.
a. have b. defy c. break down d. generate

10. Dr Zewail .... several contributions to science and technology.
a. won b. made c. recognised d. did

11. The activities students .... at school help them improve their skill
a. give b. achieve c. do d. make

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
confidence(n)	الثقة	trust / belief / reliance
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدي - يخالف/يعصي	challenge / resist / disobey
prejudice(n)	انحياز/ تحامُل/ ظلم	bias / partiality/ discrimination
win(n)	فوز	triumph / victory

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
beat (v)	يهزم	lose to	يخسر من
confidence(n)	الثقة	distrust/doubt/ uncertainty	انعدام الثقة/الشك
defy(ied) (v)	يتحدي	surrender/ give up	يستسلم
defy(ied) (v)	يخالف/يعصي	obey/follow	يطيع
equality(n)	المساواة	inequality/prejudice	عدم المساواة/ التحيُّز
male (n /adj)	ذكر - ذكوري	female	أنثي - نسائي
mental(adj)	عقلي/ذهني	physical	بدني
win(n)	فوز	loss	خسارة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Equality between men and women at work is important". The antonym of 'equality' in this utterance is ....
   a. unequality b. inequality c. prejudice d. b & c
2. "You can't defy two armed men on your own". The word 'defy' in this sentence can be replaced by ....
   a. resist b. obey c. give up d. surrender
3. "Sama beat me in chess. This means I .... Sama in chess.
   a. won b. triumphed c. lost to d. gained
4. "I have absolute confidence in what he says". The antonym of "confidence' here is ....
   a. trust b. doubt c. belief d. reliance
5. "Your win has made my day". The word 'win' in this context gives an antonymous meaning to ....
   a. victory b. triumph c. lose d. loss

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
award يمنح جائزة	award جائزة – منحة awardee الشخص الفائز بالجائزة	award-winning فائز بجائزة
contribute (to) يساهم/يشارك (في)	contribution مُساهَمَة/ مُشارَكَة contributor مُساهِم/ مُشارِك	contributory مُساهِم – مُشارِك
inspire يُلهِم – يوحي	inspiration إلهام – وحي	inspiring مُلهِم inspired مُلهَم inspirational تشجيعي – تحفيزي
lecture يُحاضِر / يُعطي محاضرة	lecture محاضرة lecturer مُحاضِر / أستاذ جامعي	
	physics الفيزياء / علم الطبيعة physicist عالم فيزياء	physical بدني / جسدي physical مادي/ملموس/طبيعي/فيزيائي

2

prejudice يؤلب/يُحرّض علي/يؤثر سلبياً علي	prejudice انحياز/ تحامُل/ ظُلم	prejudiced عُنصري prejudicial ـاز/ مُؤذ
qualify يتأهل - يتخرّج	qualification مُؤهّل دراسي - تأهُل - تخرُج - شهادة دراسية	qualified ـاصل على مؤهّل

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

● ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Professor A. Karim is expert at ....
   a. physics b. physical c. physicist d. physically
2. Professor A. Karim is an expert ....
   a. physics b. physical c. physicist d. physically
3. Professor A. Karim studies the .... world around us.
   a. physics b. physical c. physicist d. physically
4. His criminal history has .... his chance to get a job.
   a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced
5. In the USA, there's still some cultural .... against coloured peopl
   a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced
6. We all appreciate تُقدّر scientists' .... which have made our lives better.
   a. contribute b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
7. Scientists are the major .... that make our lives better.
   a. contribute b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
8. Scientists .... to the better lives we have.
   a. contribute b. contributions c. contributors d. contributory
9. I think the Egyptian team will .... to the quarter final.
   a. qualify b. qualified c. qualification d. qualifies
10. I expect the .... of the Egyptian team to the quarter final.
    a. qualify b. qualified c. qualification d. qualifies
11. Do you think Omar is a highly .... candidate?
    a. qualify b. qualified c. qualification d. qualifies
12. I was .... a prize for my last novel.
    a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced
13. He got the second best actor ....
    a. awarded b. award c. prejudice d. prejudiced

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

Australian Open	بطولة استراليا المفتوحة	proud of	فخور بـ
a major tournament	بطولة كبرى	qualify as + وظيفة	يتأهل كـ
an equal amount of	قدر / كمية متساوية من	the Egyptian public	الجمهور المصري
be honoured with an award	يتم تكريمه بمنحه جائزة	the first round	الجولة الأولى
fight through the obstacles	يتحدى العقبات	the First-Class Order of Science and Arts	وسام العلوم والفنون من الدرجة الأولى
get used to	يعتاد على	the mental side of competing	الجانب الذهني في المنافسة
Grand Slam tournament	بطولة جراند سلام	to be honest	صدقاً - الحق يُقال
nuclear power	الطاقة النووية	up until then	حتى ذلك الحين
opening game/match	المباراة الإفتتاحية		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

believe in	يؤمن بـ	move to	ينقل إلي
break ... down	يُحطم - يتحطم	name ... after	يُسمّي ... على إسم
contribute to	يساهم في	point out	يوضح / يشير إلى
look up to ...	يقتدي بـ - ينظر بإجلال إلى ...		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My brother was honoured .... an award in a science competition.
   a. of b. with c. from d. at
2. I named my elder son .... his uncle. They both are called Ahmed.
   a. in b. to c. before d. after
3. Many young people look .... Salah as their role model.
   a. after b. for c. up to d. out of
4. She is a remarkable Egyptian woman who has broken .... stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important.
   a. down b. into c. in d. out
5. They have contributed .... completing the task.
   a. for b. by c. to d. from

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

be proud of / to = take pride in

- **be proud of (something / someone)** فخور بـ
  - Her parents are very proud of her.
- **be proud to do something** فخور أن
  - I am proud to receive this award.
- **take / have pride in** يفتخر بـ
  - She takes / has pride in her respectable family.

reward - award – a ward

- **reward** مكافأة – يكافئ شخص
  - I got a reward for coming first.
  - = I was rewarded for coming first.
- **award** منحة – يمنح (جائزة أو شهادة)
  - Dr Zewail got an award for his great discovery.
  - = Dr Zewail was awarded for his great discovery.
- **a ward** عنبر (حجرة كبيرة)
  - There is a ward on the first floor for patients with heart problems.

medicine - medical

- **medicine (n)** الطب (اسم غير معدود)
  - Dr Abdullah studied medicine at Assuit University.
- **medicine(n)** دواء (اسم معدود)
  - The medicines I take have dangerous side effects. آثار جانبية
- **medical(adj)** طبي
  - Doctors and nurses belong to the medical profession.

competition - tournament

- **competition (n)** مسابقة

A competition is an event or situation where people, groups or teams attempt to win or establish superiority over others. A competition can exist in sports, business or any other field.

المنافسة (competition) هي حَدَث أو موقف يحاول فيه الأشخاص أو المجموعات أو الفرق الفوز أو إثبات التفوق على الآخرين، ويمكن أن توجد المنافسة في الرياضة أو العمل أو أي مجال آخر.

- I won a prize in a short story competition.
- There was fierce competition between Al Ahly and Zamalek last year.

- **tournament (n)** بطولة (مُجمعة)

A tournament is limited to sports. It is a formal series of sports competitions that steadily eliminates people or teams until there is only one winning team or person, who is awarded a prize.

البطولة (tournament) تقتصر على الرياضة، وهي سلسلة رسمية من المسابقات الرياضية التي يتم فيها إقصاء الأشخاص أو الفرق حتى يكون هناك فريق واحد أو شخص فائز واحد يحصل على جائزة.

- Grand Slam is one of the major tennis tournaments.

physicist - physician

- **physicist** فيزيائي (خبير في الفيزياء)
  - Einstein was a great physicist.
- **physician = doctor** طَبيب / مُعالج
  - Sama was ill and we had to call the physician.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I took part in the inter-school literature ....
   a. champion b. tournament c. competition d. b & c
2. I took part in the inter-school sports ....
   a. champion b. tournament c. competition d. b & c
3. My father is .... my brother.
   a. takes pride of b. takes pride in c. proud d. proud of
4. My father .... my brother.
   a. takes pride of b. takes pride in c. proud d. proud of
5. I'm proud .... be a member of the national team.
   a. to b. in c. of d. a & b
6. A teacher's real .... is when his/her students reach their goals.
   a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward
7. A teacher is really .... when his/her students reach their goals.
   a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward
8. Mahfouz was .... the Nobel Prize in 1988.
   a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward
9. I won a/an .... for coming first in a sports competition.
   a. award b. awarded c. rewarded d. reward

3 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

contribution

• **contribute (to/towards) (v)** يُساهِم/يُشارِك (في)

- A lot of my Facebook friends contributed money, clothes or effort for the new charity.
- No one can deny how much you have contributed to the success of our company.

يأتي بعد (contribute to) اسم (noun) أو (inf. + ing) وليس (inf.):

- ... contribute to + noun / (inf. + ing)
- Omar contributed to making the application better. (Not: to make)

• **contribution (to/towards) (n)** مشاركة/مساهمة (في)

- Zewail got the Nobel Prize for his contributions to the field of chemistry.

• **contribution (of) (n)** تبرُّع/ مساهمة مالية

- Each member of the group paid a contribution of 1000 pounds for the charity.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- make a contribution يُساهم/ يشارك
- recognise/value a contribution يعترف بـ/ يُثمِّن مساهمة
- an invaluable contribution مساهمة مفيدة جداً

• **contributor (to) (n)** مُشارِك/مُساهِم (في)

- Mr Ahmed is a basic contributor to the charity.

• **contributory (adj)** مُشارِك/مُساهِم/ مُساعِد (صفة تُستخدم قبل الإسم فقط بهذا المعنى)

- Chemical pesticides مبيدات are contributory factors عوامل to cancer.

prejudice

• **prejudice(against) (n)** انحياز/ تَحَامُل/ تَعَصُّب

- Do you think the poor face prejudice in our society ?
- In South Africa, there was some prejudice against people of different colour.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- racial prejudice التعصُّب العرقي (حسب السلالة أو اللون مثلاً)
- class prejudice التعصُّب الطبقي (حسب الوضع المادي أو الإجتماعي)
- blind prejudice التعصُّب الأعمى (لا يقوم على مبررات منطقية)
- face/encounter prejudice يعاني من / يواجه التعصُّب

• **prejudice(against) (v)** يُؤلِّب/يُحرِّض على/يؤثِّر سلبياً (ضد)
- Your loud voice prejudiced the manager against you.
- Don't do anything to prejudice our chances of winning.

• **prejudiced(against) (adj)** مُتحيِّز/لديه تَعَصُّب (ضد)
- The Israeli government is prejudiced against the Palestinians.

• **prejudicial(to) (adj)** ضار/مُؤذٍ (بـ / لـ)
- This decision is prejudicial to your son's future.

qualified

• **qualify (ied) (v)** يتخرج - يتأهل
- My wife qualified in 2006.

لاحظ أن:

• **qualify as +** تخصص/ موضوع يتأهل كـ (+ وظيفة)
-My wife qualified as an engineer in 2006.

• **qualify in +** تخصص/ موضوع يحصل علي مؤهل في (تخصص معين)
- My wife qualified in engineering in 2006.

• **be qualified to + inf.** يكون مؤهل لكي.
- Omar is qualified to do surgeries. يُجري جراحات

• **qualify (to) (v)** يُؤهِّل / يجعل ... مؤهل لـ
- Education qualifies you to life and work.

• **qualify (v)** يتأهل لدور أعلي في المسابقات
- The Egyptian team last qualified to the final match in 2017.

• **qualified (adj)** مُؤهَّل - لديه مؤهِّلات - مُتأهِّل ≠ **unqualified (adj)** غير مُؤهَّل
- The job market has chances to qualified youth, not the unqualified.

• **qualification (n)** مؤهِّل (مفرد مؤهِّلات)
- Try to improve both your qualifications and your skills.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have qualifications لديه المؤهلات - lack qualifications تنقصه المؤهِّلات

• **qualification (n)** تأهُّل (لدور أعلي في بطولة رياضية)
- The qualification of Al Ahly team to the final match of the Club World Cup is a dream.

stereotype

- **stereotype(of/about) (n)** فكرة نمطية غير عادلة – تصور نَمَطي مخالف للواقع (لـ / عن)
  - Successful women have changed the stereotype of women as passive victims. ضحايا سلبية
- **stereotype(as) (v)** يتجني علي/ يُصنِّف بشكل غير عادل
  - Women used to be stereotyped as passive victims.
- **stereotyped (adj)** نمطي/ تقليدي
  - My uncle is a stereotyped farmer who spends his whole day working on his farm and looking after his animals.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I asked my friends and followers to .... their opinions on my new book.
   a. contribute b. inspire c. innovate d. spark
2. Stop shouting at referees, Ahmed! You are always .... them against our team.
   a. demonstrating b. defying c. stereotyping d. prejudicing
3. We tried to .... our old flat to be Ahmed's private clinic.
   a. react b. qualify c. impress d. assume
4. I don't like the .... image of the homeless as criminals.
   a. biased b. prejudiced c. stereotyped d. a, b & c
5. Which of the following is correct?
   a. Using mobiles is contributory in 30% of road accidents.
   b. Using mobiles is a factor which is contributory in 30% of road accidents.
   c. Using mobiles is a contributory factor in 30% of road accidents.
   d. b & c

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	التعبير (contribute ... opinion) يعني (يشارك برأيه/ يعطي رأيه)
2.	d	التعبير (prejudice ... against) يعني (يؤلِّب/يستفز ضد) وهو المقصود في هذا السياق
3.	b	الفعل (qualify) هنا يعني (يُؤهِّل لـ) أي (يجعل الشقة القديمة تصلح كعيادة)
4.	d	الصفات الثلاثة تؤدي نفس المعنى (نمطي/متحيز/مُتجنِّي) وهو المقصود في هذا السياق.
5.	c	الصفة (contributory) بهذا المعنى (مُشارِك/مُساعِد) تُستخدم قبل الإسم فقط.

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

People who inspire
Firsts for Egyptian women

(SB page 17)

This week, we are celebrating two remarkable Egyptian women who broke down stereotypes and prejudices, demonstrating that women's place in society is important and continues to grow.

Hilana Sedarous

Born : 1904-1998

Education: London Medical School

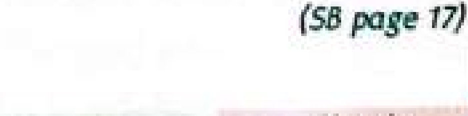


Hilana Sedarous was the first Egyptian woman to become a doctor in modern Egypt and scholars believe that she was the first Arab woman to be a doctor, too. She was born in Tanta and was sent to London in 1922 to study mathematics with five other Egyptian students. However, while she was there, she decided to study medicine instead. She was considered[1] one of the first medical students to study in England. In 1930, after going through many obstacles[2], she qualified[3] as a doctor and returned to Egypt where she opened a private[4] clinic[5] for women. She was treating[6] patients until she was 70 years old. After retiring[7], she started writing and translating stories for children.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعتبر
(2) عوائق / عقبات
(3) يتأهل
(4) خاص
(5) عيادة
(6) يعالج
(7) يتقاعد

Yasmeen Yehya Moustafa



(SB page 17)

Born : 1998

Awards : 1st place[1] in the Intel Science and Engineering[2] competition[3], NASA named a minor planet after her family (Moustafa 31910) recognising[4] her contribution to science.



Education: Maadi STEM School for Girls, Middle East Technical University

Check Vocabulary

(1) مركز/ترتيب
(2) الهندسة
(3) مسابقة
(4) يتعرف علي

Yasmeen is a role model[5] for other young Egyptians. Born in Damietta, she defied[6] stereotypes[7], by moving to Cairo alone to attend [8] the Maadi STEM school.

The CEO of Intel Egypt said that Yasmeen has received a "unique"[9] honour[10], adding that her success in the field of scientific research is considered an achievement for all of the Egyptian society; and for Intel which encourages youth to be creative.

Yasmeen's winning invention was sparked[11] by the need for cleaner water in her village. She found that burning rice straw[12] gave clean water and also produced a natural fuel[13] which can be used to generate[14] electricity.

She says her school gave her the confidence[15] to innovate[16] and to defy prejudice[17]: 'I believe I can change the world', she proudly states[18].

قدوة (5)
يتحدي (6)
الأنماط التقليدية (7)
يَدْرس في (8)
فريد / متميز (9)
تكريم / شرف (10)
أُثير - انطلقت شرارته (11)
قش (12)
وقود (13)
يولّد (14)
الثقة (15)
يبتكر (16)
التحيّز (17)
يفصح / يصرح (18)

2021 : A great year for Egyptian women athletes !

(SB page 16)

2021 was an amazing year for Egyptian female[1] athletes[2]. At the Tokyo Olympic Games, Ferial Abdelaziz became the first female Egyptian to win the karate gold medal. Ferial studied to become a pharmacist[3], and had played karate since she was seven. Before she won the Olympic gold medal, she had already won a bronze[4] medal at the World Championships[5] in Spain and a silver[6] medal at the 2019 Africa Games in Morocco[7].



Check Vocabulary
أنثى (1)
لاعب ألعاب قوى (2)
صيدلانية (3)
برونز (4)
بطولات (5)
فضة (6)
دولة المغرب (7)
دولة ألمانيا (8)
دولة النمسا (9)

However, Ferial was not the only Egyptian to win a medal at the Tokyo Olympics. Giana Farouk won a bronze medal at the same event. Giana had also won a gold medal at the Africa Games in Congo in 2015 and three gold medals at the World Championships (two in Germany[8] in 2014 and one in Austria[9] in 2016).



Also in 2021, Egyptian tennis player Mayar Sherif represented Egypt in the Olympics became the first Egyptian woman to be ranked[10] in the top 100 players of the Women's Tennis Association[11] (WTA), reaching number 74 in September. This was after she reached the WTA finals in Romania. She was the first Egyptian woman to achieve[12] the only singles title on the WTA challenger tour. Earlier in the year, she beat Chloe Paquet from France in the first round of the 2021 Australian Open[13]. Up until then[14], no Egyptian woman had won a match in a Grand Slam tournament[15].

These great women athletes and many others faced many obstacles and challenges. However, they were able to overcome[16] them and proudly[17] put Egypt on the world map of sports. The secret formula[18] for their success was hard work, determination[19] and a lot of patience[20].



- (10) يحتل تصنيف
- (11) اتحاد
- (12) يحقق - ينجز
- (13) استراليا المفتوحة
- (14) حتى ذلك الحين
- (15) بطولة
- (16) يتغلب على
- (17) بفخر
- (18) وصفة - معادلة
- (19) عزم - تصميم
- (20) صبر

(WB page 8)

Dr Tahani Amer grew up in a suburb[1] of Cairo. Her love of engineering[2] started while she was watching her father repair a car engine when she was young, although she thought she would study medicine at university. She then married when she was 17 and moved to the USA in 1983.

Although she did not speak any English at that time, this did not stop her from doing well in maths and she got top grades[3] in her exams. She took a two-year degree in science while she was bringing up[4] two young children, and then took a higher degree in engineering. In 1992, she got a master's degree[5] in aerospace engineering[6] and another qualification[7] in engineering after that.

It is easy to understand why she believes that education is the key to opportunity ![8]



Check Vocabulary

- (1) حي / ضاحية
- (2) الهندسة
- (3) أعلى الدرجات
- (4) يربي
- (5) درجة الماجستير
- (6) الهندسة الفضائية
- (7) مؤهل
- (8) فرصة

2

After she moved to the USA, she was determined[9] to work for the National Aeronautics and Space Administration[10] (NASA) and she did some work for them while she was at college[11]. This gave her the experience she needed to get a full-time job there. She became a manager at NASA in 2012. Since 2016, she has worked for NASA's technology department[12]. During her time there, she was helping to program computers and test wind tunnels[13]. She invented a new device[14] and helped solve real-life problems[15]. She now reviews[16] NASA's space missions[17].

While living in the USA, Dr Tahani Amer has also done a lot of volunteering[18] for the community. She helps at after-school science clubs, teaches Arabic and Islamic studies to young children and also works hard to help other women become successful in their careers. Dr Tahani Amer's work has contributed to the increase in the number of women who work at NASA. Today, around 30% of people who work for NASA are female.

(9) مصمم / عازم
(10) وكالة الفضاء والملاحة الجوية
(11) معهد / كلية
(12) قسم التكنولوجيا
(13) أنفاق الرياح
(14) جهاز
(15) يحل المشاكل الحياتية
(16) يفحص - يراجع
(17) مهمات / بعثات الفضاء
(18) التطوع

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 19)

Interviewer: How long had you been playing tennis when you played your first professional[1] match?

Player: Let's think … I started when I was five, so I'd been playing for 15 years.

Interviewer: Had you ever competed[2] on clay courts[3] before you played at the French Open?

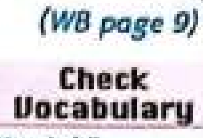
Player: No, it was the first time I'd played on a clay court in a professional match.

Interviewer: Did you think you were going to win the match against Chloe?

Player: No, to be honest[4], before the match I hadn't been hitting the ball very well. The courts were fast and it was difficult. But little by little I had been playing better and by the time I played her I felt confident[5].

Check Vocabulary

(1) احترافي
(2) ينافس
(3) ملعب تُرابي
(4) أصْدُقك القول
(5) واثق



(WB page 9)

In 2021 Fatma was 21. Before this time, Fatma had been playing top handball for many years. Before she went to university, Fatma had already played for the Egyptian youth(1) team (the under 18s) and before she graduated(2), she had played for the junior(3) team (the under 20s). She became one of the best women handball players in the country.

In 2021, Egypt did not have a handball team for players over 21. When we spoke to Fatma, she said that in the past, the country had spent a lot of money on the men's handball team which helped it to become very successful. She hoped that the sports organisers(4) would spend money on a women's team in the future.

She also pointed out(5) that in the past, women had been very successful in other sports, such as Hedaya Malak and Sara Ahmed who won medals at the 2016 Olympics. She said there was no reason women handball players could not do extremely(6) well, too.

Let's hope that soon her dream will come true(7) and that there will be an international(8) Egyptian handball team for women over 21. We're sure that they will be very successful !

Check Vocabulary

(1) الشباب
(2) يتخرج
(3) ناشئ / حديث السن
(4) مُنظِّم / قائم على
(5) يُوضِّح / يشير إلى
(6) للغاية
(7) يتحقق
(8) دولي / عالمي

Part IV Language

تنويه تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Past perfect simple & Past perfect continuous

Past Perfect Simple : active and passive

الماضي التام البسيط : المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Active المبنى للمعلوم

⇨ Subj. الفاعل + had ('d) + p.p. ....

- I had bought some fruit before going home.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

⇨ Object المفعول + had + been + p.p. ....

- Some fruit had been bought (by me) before going home.

Uses of the Past Perfect

استخدامات الماضي التام

1. التعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي ، و في هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

تعبير زمني دال على الماضي + في مثل هذا الوقت this time / قبل before / بحلول by -

- By eleven o'clock yesterday, the secretary had sent three emails.

2. التعبير عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي (الحدث الثاني يكون في زمن ماضي بسيط):

- She had done the housework before she went to bed.

3. يمكن استخدام (since / for / just / already) مع الماضي التام :

- I was sorry when the company closed. I had worked there since my graduation.
- I had already studied English before I travelled to Scotland.

Mini Test 1 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. By 1999, Mr Mohammed .... his post-graduate studies.
   a. did b. was done c. had done d. had been done
2. By 1999, Mr Mohammed's post-graduate studies ....
   a. did b. was done c. had done d. had been done
3. When I saw Mr Ayman in London last year, he .... there for three years already.
   a. had lived b. had been lived c. lived d. was lived
4. Ahmed was angry because Sama .... his tablet.
   a. has broken b. had broken c. was broken d. had been broken

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1. لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع الروابط الزمنية :

Time connector الرابطة الزمنية	Time clause العبارة الزمنية	Main clause الجملة الرئيسية
before قبل/by the time في الوقت الذي/when عندما	past simple ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)	past perfect ماضي تام (حدث أول)
after بعد/as soon as بمجرد أن /once بمجرد أن/the moment في اللحظة التي/when عندما	past perfect ماضي تام (حدث أول)	past simple ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)
- It was only when فقط عندما - It wasn't until بعد	past perfect ماضي تام (حدث أول)	(that) + past simple ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- Before / By the time / When I went to bed, I had checked my email.
= I had checked my email before / by the time / when I went to bed.
- After / As soon as / Once / The moment / When I had checked my email, I went to bed.
= I went to bed after / as soon as / once / the moment / when I had checked my email.
- It was only when / It wasn't until I had checked my email that I went to bed.

② لاحظ استخدام (until – till):

Past simple ماضى بسيط (منفى غالبا) + until / till حتى / لغاية + past perfect ماضى تام

- I didn't go to bed until / till I had checked my email.

تذكر :

- يمكن استخدام الماضى التام أو البسيط بعد (until / till) :

- We didn't leave until he arrived / had arrived home.

- عند استخدام (until / till) كحروف جر يأتى بعدهما تعبير زمنى :

- The match didn't start until nine.
- I waited for you till midday.

③ يُستخدم (inf.+ing) بعد كل من (after / before) فى حال عدم وجود فاعل:

- After checking my email, I went to bed.
= Before going to bed, I had checked my email.

④ لاحظ استخدام (Having):

Having + p.p. .... , past simple ماضى بسيط (معلوم)

- Having checked my email, I went to bed.

Having + been + p.p. .... , past simple ماضى بسيط (مجهول)

- Having been checked, the email was sent to all customers.

⑤ لاحظ هذه التركيبة ..... :

By / Before / this time + ظرف زمان ماضى + زمن ماضى تام ....

- By 2013 , he had written 5 short stories.

❶ لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكد .....حتى):

Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p. ... than + past simple ماضى بسيط
Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + p.p. + when / before + past simple ماضى بسيط

- I had no sooner checked my email than I went to bed.
- I had hardly checked my email when / before I went to bed.

❷ لاحظ : عندما تبدأ بالظروف السابقة تقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل كالآتى :

No sooner. + had + subj. + p.p. ... + than + past simple ماضى بسيط
Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + p.p. ... + when / before + past simple ماضى بسيط

- I had no sooner checked my email than I went to bed.
- I had hardly checked my email when / before I went to bed.

Mini Test 2 Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I had eaten a sandwich .... I went out.
   a. after b. before c. as soon as d. a & c
2. .... I had eaten a sandwich, I went out.
   a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. a & c
3. .... going out, I had eaten a sandwich.
   a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. a & c
4. .... eating a sandwich at home, I went out.
   a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. a & c
5. I .... out until I had eaten a sandwich.
   a. had gone b. hadn't gone c. went d. didn't go
6. I had no sooner eaten a sandwich .... I went out.
   a. when b. that c. than d. then
7. Hardly .... a sandwich when I went out.
   a. I had eaten b. had I eaten c. I ate d. was I eating
8. .... midnight, I'd retuned home.
   a. By b. After c. On d. At

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

1. لاحظ ان الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (not until / not since/ only after / only when / only by) يتقدم الفعل المساعد أو الناقص على الفاعل في الجملة الرئيسية:

- Not until I had checked my email did I go to bed.

2. لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبني للمعلوم:

- رابطة زمنية + past perfect ماضي تام مبني للمعلوم + past simple ماضي بسيط
- Having + p.p. … + past simple ماضي بسيط
- (inf. + ing) … + past simple ماضي بسيط

- After I had done the shopping, I stopped a taxi to take me home.
= Having done the shopping, I stopped a taxi to take me home.
= Doing the shopping, I stopped a taxi to take me home.

3. لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبني للمجهول:

- رابطة زمنية + past perfect ماضي تام مبني للمجهول + past simple ماضي بسيط
- Having been + p.p. … + past simple ماضي بسيط
- P.P. … + past simple ماضي بسيط

- As soon as my car had been repaired in the garage, it stopped using too much petrol.
= Having been repaired in the garage, my car stopped using too much petrol.
= Repaired in the garage, my car stopped using too much petrol.

4. عند ذكر توقيت محدد لوقوع الحدث فان الماضي البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضي التام (كلاهما صحيح) خاصة مع (after / before) :

- She had visited her uncle in hospital last Friday before she visited him again yesterday. (✓)
- She visited her uncle in hospital last Friday before she visited him again yesterday. (✓)

Past Perfect continuous الماضي التام المستمر

Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي

⇨ Subj. + had / hadn't + been + (inf. + ing) .... .

- She had been watching TV for two hours when she fell asleep.
- We hadn't been playing chess when Omar arrived

Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)

⇨ Had + subj. + been + (inf. + ing) ......?

- Had she been watching TV for two hours when she fell asleep ?

'Wh__' Q. السؤال بأداة استفهام

⇨ Q.W. + had + subj. + (inf. + ing) ......?

How long had she been watching TV when she fell asleep?

Uses الاستخدامات

١ يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقت معين في الماضي

- I had been waiting at the airport for an hour before your arrival.
- By midnight, I had been studying unit 2 for two hours.

---

٢ يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة قبل وقوع حدث آخر في الماضي

- She had been studying physics for five hours when she took a rest.

---

٣ يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن حدث استمر لفترة وكان له أثر علي حدث آخر في الماضي

(الأثر ناتج عن استمرارية الحدث الأول)

Mum looked tired because she had been working hard all day.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

❶ غالبا لا يُستخدم الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال اللحظية (التى لا تستغرق مدى زمنى) ونستخدم الماضى التام البسيط:

- break down / stop / close / open/ end / receive / arrive / .... etc.

- My car had broken down before I reached work.

(Not: had been breaking down)

❷ لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر عند ذِكر عدد مرات حدوث الفعل، بل نستخدم الماضي التام البسيط:

- Before I went to bed, I had sent five emails. (Not: had been sending)

❸ في الغالب، يُستخدم الماضي التام البسيط وليس الماضي التام المستمر مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والتملك والإدراك ......):

feeling المشاعر	- like, dislike, love, hate, prefer, enjoy, want, wish .... etc.
senses الحواس	- hear, see, smell, feel, taste, ... etc.
Perception الإدراك	- appear يبدو - seem يبدو - look يبدو - sound يبدو - realize يدرك - understand يفهم - know - mean يعني / يقصد - think يعتقد - imagine يتخيل - recognize يتعرف علي - remember يتذكر - forget ينسي - ...
other verbs أفعال أخري	be يكون / يوجد - belong ينتمي إلي / يخص - concern يهم / يتعلق بـ - depend يعتمد - involve يتورط / يشتمل - matter يهم - need يحتاج - owe يدين بمال - own يملك - possess يملك - have يملك ...

- He had looked ready before the match started. (Not: had been looking)
- I had needed to have a drink before I went out. (Not: had been needing)

❹ لاحظ استخدام أزمنة الماضي مع روابط السبب والنتيجة:

ماضى بسيط + because / since / as + ماضى بسيط / ماضى تام / ماضى تام مستمر / ماضى مستمر

- I didn't play tennis because I was busy.
- He didn't go swimming since لأن he was waiting for some guests at home.
- He was sick because he had eaten too much food.
- She looked exhausted as she had been working hard all week.

ماضى بسيط + ... / so/ that's why + ماضى مستمر / ماضى تام مستمر / ماضى تام / ماضى بسيط

- I was busy. That's why I didn't play tennis.
- He was waiting for some guests at home, so he didn't go swimming.
- He had eaten too much food, so he was sick.
- She had been working hard all week, so she looked exhausted.

General Exercise **On Language** 

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. As soon as I heard of my friend's success, I .... him. (LM)
   a. had congratulated b .will congratulate
   c. have congratulated d. congratulated
2. I saw my friend Omar last week. I .... him since 2019. (LM)
   a. hadn't seen b. hasn't seen c. didn't see d. won't see
3. I didn't send the report until I .... it. (LM)
   a. was revising b. revise c. have revised d. had revised
4. They had been playing football for an hour before it .... to rain. (LM)
   a. had started b. have started c. started d. was starting
5. .... ready for the party before the guests arrived? (LM)
   a. Had you got b. Have you got
   c. Will you get d. Are you getting
6. She .... the city before her school trip. (دور أول ٢٠١٩)
   a. visits b. visiting
   c. has already visited d. had already visited
7. I had .... for three hours before I went to bed.
   a. been studying b. been studied c. studying d. study
8. .... they got home, she had already left. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩ - علمي)
   a. By then b. As soon as c. By the time d. Having
9. She went to bed early because she .... for a long time. (الأزهر ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)
   a. had played b. has played c. was playing d. would play

10. By 2012, I .... three novels. It was a great achievement for me. (السودان ٢٠١٧)

a. had written
b. will have
c. had been writing
d. was writing

11. We arrived half an hour late. The film .... half an hour earlier. (النموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١١)

a. began
b. was beginning
c. had begun
d. has begun

12. After the house .... painted, we furnished it. (دور ثان ٢٠١٤)

a. had　b. had been　c. has been　d. is

13. They .... to spend the feast العيد with us every year until we moved.

a. use　b. are used　c. have used　d. used

14. She .... a teacher before she became a journalist.

a. had been　b. has been　c. was being　d. is

15. Moataz .... for only three weeks, so he failed his driving test.

a. trains
b. had trained
c. has been trained
d. was trained

16. This book .... by a famous writer.

a. was written
b. had been written
c. wrote
d. has written

17. I .... stories very quickly, but I no longer do that.

a. have written　b. used to write　c. am writing　d. write

18. I .... short stories for five years. Now, I only write novels.

a. had written　b. wrote　c. have written　d. was writing

19. The river was very full because it .... for a week.

a. rain
b. rains
c. been raining
d. had been raining

20. The windows at school .... this morning.

a. clean
b. were cleaning
c. were cleaned
d. have cleaned

21. Five trees in the park .... down.

a. has been cut
b. had been cutting
c. had cut
d. were cut

22. My last novel .... changed several times before I was happy with it.

a. had been　b. had　c. has been　d. has

23. When it began to rain, the players .... for only ten minutes.

a. are playing
b. played
c. have been playing
d. had been playing

24. My father .... me to a football match at the weekend.
a. has taken b. was taken c. had taken d. took

25. I .... revising all my lessons by last night. (L
a. am finishing b. have finished
c. had finished d. will be finishing

26. Had you been waiting for Hala for a long time before she ....? (L
a. was arriving b. have arrived c. had arrived d. arrived

27. He was overjoyed because he .... his final exam. (L
a. will be passed b. had passed
c. has passed d. had been passing

28. She was exhausted because she .... all day. (L
a. will be working b. had worked
c. has worked d. had been working

29. My uncle .... for the company for ten years when he got the promotion. (L
a. had been working b. has been working
c. had worked d. will be working

30. The TV programme .... well for five years before it was terminated. (L
a. had been worked b. has been working
c. had been working d. had worked

31. My brother .... short stories for three years before he published them. (L
a. will write b. had written
c. had been writing d. has written

32. The match .... when I reached the stadium; I missed the exciting start. (L
a. will begin b. had begun
c. was beginning d. have begun

33. After .... her daily housework, she had some rest. (L
a. has done b. had done
c. doing d. had been doing

34. After Yasser .... two chapters of Great Expectations, he went to bed. (L
a. has been reading b. had been reading
c. had read d. had been read

35. I .... till my brother returns home to make sure he's well. *(LM)*
a. left b. didn't leave c. won't leave d. am leaving

36. I .... that manager for years before I worked with him in that company. *(LM)*
a. had been knowing b. had known
c. have been knowing d. was knowing

37. After I .... to quiet music for two hours, I felt relaxed. *(LM)*
a. had been listening b. listening
c. had listened d. was listening

38. Having .... my friend's telephone number, I contacted him. *(LM)*
a. finding b. found c. to find d. been found

2 Special Cases

39. Before the manager arrived, the lazy employee .... any work for hours! *(LM)*
a. hasn't been doing b. hadn't been doing
c. hadn't done d. hasn't done

40. No sooner .... the medicine than he left. (دور أول علمي ٢٠٢١)
a. has he taken b. he took c. had he taken d. he had taken

41. .... his own company, he took on many workers. (دور أول علمي ٢٠٢١)
a. Founds b. Founded c. Found d. Founding

42. As soon as I'd finished my story, I .... the next one. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
a. started b. would start c. was starting d. will start

43. When I was sixteen, I .... going for a swim every day.
a. usually b. used to c. used d. got used to

44. Luckily, when I .... the station, the train left. (دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
a. reach b. had been reaching
c. reached d. have been reaching

45. He .... by a mosquito during the night. (أزهر ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)
a. has bitten b. had bitten c. bit d. was bitten

46. .... had I saved a lot of money when I bought a car.
a. No sooner b. After c. Before d. Scarcely

47. Before you told me about him, I .... of that novelist. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٩)
a. hadn't ever heard b. wasn't hearing
c. haven't ever heard d. don't ever hear

48. My friend .... for more than an hour when he finally put the phone down.
  a. has been talking
  b. has talked
  c. are talking
  d. had been talking

49. I'd rather you .... this car. It's a bargain. (ور الوزارة الثاني ٢٠١٤)
  a. buy
  b. to buy
  c. bought
  d. will buy

50. When she suggested the idea, I .... using a computer. It wasn't new to me.
  a. have been trying
  b. am trying
  c. had tried
  d. tried

51. When she suggested the idea, I .... using a computer. I took her advice.
  a. have been trying
  b. am trying
  c. had tried
  d. tried

52. We .... that we had to give in our homework on Thursday.
  a. were told
  b. told
  c. have told
  d. tell

53. How many sandwiches .... when you felt you were full?
  a. have you eaten
  b. had you eaten
  c. had you been eaten
  d. had you been eating

54. Those old stories are still .... by many children today.
  a. loved
  b. loving
  c. being loved
  d. love

55. Before I reached my office, my car .... down.
  a. breaks
  b. has broken
  c. had been breaking
  d. had broken

56. What .... all evening by the time Tamer returned home?
  a. had you done
  b. are you doing
  c. had you been doing
  d. you had been doing

57. She refused to lend me her camera until I ....to take care of it.
  a. had promised
  b. have promised
  c. had been promising
  d. have been promising

3 Check your understanding

58. Which of the following is structurally correct?
  a. Once I have heard the good news, I contacted Adel.
  b. Once I heard the good news, I had contacted Adel.
  c. Once I had been hearing the good news, I contacted Adel.
  d. Once I had heard the good news, I contacted Adel.

59. Which of the following is structurally correct? *(LM)*
   a. I haven't handed in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all the questions again.
   b. I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I'd gone over all of the questions again.
   c. I won't hand in my answer sheet until I went over all the questions again.
   d. I didn't hand in my answer sheet until I've gone all the questions again.

60. "I had the habit of sleeping with the lights on, but now I don't." This means ....
   a. I got used to sleeping with the lights on.
   b. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.
   c. I used to sleep with the lights on.
   d. I used to sleep with the lights off.

61. "I used to sleep with the lights on." This means ....
   a. I am used to sleeping with the lights on.
   b. I was used to sleeping with the lights off.
   c. I used to sleep with no lights on.
   d. I no longer sleep with the lights on.

62. "She had lunch at two". This means ....
   a. lunch was had at two.
   b. lunch was eaten at two.
   c. lunch had eaten at two.
   d. lunch had been eating at two.

63. "I wish I were a doctor." This means ....
   a. I am not a doctor.
   b. I wasn't a doctor.
   c. it is possible for me to be a doctor.
   d. I am not a doctor any longer.

64. "I'd rather you didn't ask me for money." This means ....
   a. I didn't have money.
   b. I didn't want to lend you money.
   c. I don't want to lend you money.
   d. I regret lending you money.

65. "I had my lunch after taking a shower." This means ....
   a. I had had my lunch after I took a shower.
   b. I had had my lunch before I took a shower.
   c. Having taken a shower; I had my lunch.
   d. Taken a shower, I had my lunch

Feedback Exercise :

5. My uncle works as a surgeon in .... European country. (LM)
a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article

7. Mr Nasser is a very kind manager; he forgives .... mistakes I make! (LM)
a. however   b. wherever   c. whatever   d. whoever

68. Don't worry, everyone has .... own problems; no one is immune to them. (LM)
a. its   b. her   c. his   d. their

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This time yesterday, I .... three coffees.
a. had been drinking   b. had drunk   c. was drunk   d. have drunk

2. .... a small screw, I fastened the switch.
a. Using   b. Used   c. Being used   d. Be used

3. ...., my laptop worked well.
a. Fixing   b. Having fixed
c. Having been fixed   d. To be fixed

4. Cooked for an hour, the meat .... ready to eat.
a. had been   b. was being   c. was   d. has been

5. .... in the sun, the shirt was ready to be ironed.
a. Drying   b. Dried   c. Was dried   d. Be dried

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	لا يُستخدم الماضى التام المستمر عند ذكر عدد المفعول (تكرار حدوث الفعل).
2.	a	صيغة اسم الفعل هنا هى اختصار لعبارة (By using) أو (With the use of)
3.	c	الصيغة (Having been fixed) هى اختصار للعبارة المبنية للمجهول : - **After** it had been fixed.
4.	c	السياق ماضى فلا يمكن استخدام المضارع التام (has been) الحدث الأول هو الطهى، لذلك لا يمكن استخدام الماضى التام (had been) مع الحدث الثانى لا يمكن استخدام الفعل (be) كفعل أساسى بهذا المعنى فى الماضى المستمر (was being)
5.	b	صيغة اسم المفعول (dried) هى اختصار للعبارة المبنية للمجهول : - **After** it had been dried.

LESSONS **3 & 4**



SB pages 20 & 21 WB pages 10 & 11

Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

bar graph = bar chart (n)	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	minority(n)	أقلية
cheerful(adj)	مبتهج/بشوش	miserable(adj)	بائس/تعيس
conclude (d) (v)	يختتم - يستنتج	naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب
conclusion(n)	الخلاصة/الخاتمة-استنتاج	patient (adj - n)	صبور - مريض
cross(ed) (adj/v)	غاضب /مُتقاطِع - يَعبُر	impatient(adj)	متعجل/نافذ الصبر
cruel(adj)	قاسي	percentage(n)	نسبة مئوية
eye contact(n)	التواصل البصري	reflect(ed) (v)	يعكس/يُبيِّن - يتفكر في
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع /مُتأفف	significant(adj)	هام/ ذو مغزى
majority(n)	أغلبية		

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

activist(n)	ناشط	Netherlands(n)	هولندا
adventure(n)	مغامرة	norms(n)	تقاليد/أعراف
affect(ed) (v)	يُؤثِر علي	noticeable(adj)	ملحوظ/واضح
aim(n)	هدف	obvious(adj)	واضح
alzheimer's(n)	الزهايمر	opportunity(n)	فرصة
around(adv/prep)	حوالي - حول	parliament(n)	البرلمان
attention(n)	الإنتباه	pattern(n)	نمط/صيغة
bright(adj)	مُشرق/مُبشِّر - ساطع/لامع	pause(d) (v/n)	يتوقف - وقفة
colonial(adj)	استعمارى	poor(adj)	ردي،/سئ - فقير
critical thinkers(n)	المفكرين الناقدين	present(ed) (v)	يقدم عرض توضيحي
cure(n)	علاج	protest(ed) (v/n)	احتجاج - يحتج
development(n)	التنمية	purify(iedd) (v)	يُنقّي
disabled(adj)	مُعاق	push(ed) (v)	يدفع
economic(adj)	اقتصادي	raise(d) (v)	يطرح - يرفع - يُربّي
especially(adv)	بصفة خاصة	region(n)	منطقة/إقليم
fair(n/adj)	منتدي/معرض - عادل	right(n)	حق
figure(n)	رقم - احصائية - شخصية	rule(n)	حُكم - قاعدة
gender(n)	الجنس (ذكر/أنثي)	scientific(adj)	علمي

Word	Meaning
generation(n)	جيل
grade(n)	درجة/تقدير
graduate(d) (v)	يتخرَّج
graph(n)	رسم بياني
increasingly(adv)	بشكل متزايد
inequality(n)	عدم المساواة
judge(n)	قاضي/قاضية
like(conj./prep)	مِثْل
march(ed) (v)	يزحف - يمشي في مسيرة
motivate(d) (v)	يُحفِّز/يُشجِّع
naughty(n)	مُشاغب

Word	Meaning
similar(adj)	شابه
speculate(d) (v)	تأمل/يتفكر/ يتسائل بفضول
speech(n)	خطبة/كلمة - الحديث
statement(n)	صريح - بيان
swing(n)	رجوحة
though(conj./adv)	ع ذلك
trouble(n)	شكلة/مأزق
vision(n)	ؤية
vote(d) (v)	صوِّت/ينتخب
women's day(n)	يد المرأة
worldwide(adj)	الى

3 Definitions تعريفات

Word	Definition
bar graph(n) رسم بياني بالأعمدة	a diagram رسم توضيحي that uses lines or narrow rectangles (= bars) مستطيلات/أعمدة of different heights ارتفاع (but equal widths عرض) to show different amounts, so that they can be compared
cheerful(adj) مبتهج/بشوش	happy, or behaving in a way that shows you are happy
conclusion(n) الخلاصة/الخاتمة	the end of something such as a speech or a piece of writing
cross(adj) غاضب/ساخط/مُقاطِع	annoyed مضايق or quite angry
cruel(adj) قاسي	deliberately عمدًا hurting people or animals
eye contact(n) التواصل البصري	when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you
grumpy(adj) حاد الطبع /مُتأفِّف	bad-tempered معكر المزاج and easily annoyed
majority(n) أغلبية	most of the people or things in a group
minority(n) أقلية	a small group of people or things within a much larger group
miserable(adj) بائس/تعيس	extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated

naughty(adj) شقي/مُشاغب	doing something that is not right صواب or good, but is not very serious خطير
patient(adj) صبور	able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept يتقبل difficulties, people's annoying behaviour etc. without becoming angry
percentage(n) نسبة مئوية	an amount expressed يُعبَّر عنه as if it is part of a total مجموع which is 100
reflect(ed) (v) يعكس/يُبيِّن	to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling
significant(adj) هام/ ذو مغزى	having an important effect or influence, especially on what will happen in the future

Exercise **On Vocabulary** • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. There is a .... increase in online sales especially during Coronavirus pandemic; people prefer online shopping to avoid infection. *(LM)*
   a. hesitant b. significant c. trivial d. minor
2. In underdeveloped countries, illiteracy .... lack of national awareness there. *(LM)*
   a. suspects b. respects c. reflects d. infects
3. My neighbour's children cause a lot of noise which makes me unhappy and .... *(LM)*
   a. pleased b. cross c. disobedient d. dishonest
4. My sister Marwa is never .... and always spends a lot of time explaining my homework to me. *(Practice Ex.1)*
   a. inaccurate b. kind c. patient d. impatient
5. Sama is a/an............ little girl. Her smile is always illuminating تنير her face.
   a. cheerful b. disabled c. economic d. noticeable

5. It is a good quality if a person is ....
a. grumpy b. cross c. patient d. impatient

7. Those who don't like the plan are only a .... They won't be influential.
a. bar graph b. percentage c. majority d. minority

8. My little son is always being .... when we have guests. He makes me really embarrassed. مُحرَج
a. naughty b. patient c. cheerful d. significant

9. Dr Hamid is examining an old .... right now.
a. award b. inspiration c. patient d. conclusion

10. My son is a bit .... when I wake him up in the early morning; he doesn't like it.
a. grumpy b. inspiring c. patient d. impatient

11. A high .... of teachers have registered سجلوا to take the coronavirus vaccine. لقاح
a. bar graph b. percentage c. percent d. minority

12. Homeless people lead a/an .... life.
a. naughty b. miserable c. impressive d. significant

13. For a student, being .... is a quality he/she can't do without.
a. economic b. cross c. patient d. grumpy

14. The .... are against the new plan. Only three people voted for it.
a. bar graph b. percentage c. majority d. minority

15. Dreams and imagination can be an ideal source of .... for artists.
a. award b. inspiration c. patient d. tomboy

16. You restate the topic and thesis of an essay in its ....
a. introduction b. conclusion c. background d. title

2 Important vocabulary

17. I want you just to .... and think carefully before deciding.
a. reflect b. raise c. speculate d. pause

18. I can't hear you; please, ... your voice. *(Practice Ex...)*
a. arise b. arouse c. raise d. rise

19. I receive .... fifteen business calls a day.
a. across b. around c. especially d. prejudicially

20. I am over the moon that there's a/an .... improvement in your health, grandpa.

a. miserable b. disabled c. economic d. noticeable

21. The .... of life in the countryside has changed due to social media and education.

a. pattern b. region c. figure d. graph

22. The answer to this question is quite .... I don't know what you are thinking about!

a. grumpy b. miserable c. obvious d. patient

23. The Delta of Egypt is one of the most densely populated كثيفة السكان .... in Africa.

a. patterns b. regions c. figures d. graphs

24. All my friends have been .... about the reasons for my decision to leave my job. However, I prefer to keep it secret.

a. rising b. raising c. speculating d. pausing

25. The new investment law has reinforced عزز the .... growth in Egypt.

a. cheerful b. disabled c. economic d. noticeable

26. The .... shows how house prices have risen since the 1980s.

a. trouble b. region c. figure d. graph

27. The charity wants a donor متبرع to buy a wheelchair for a/an .... old lady.

a. cheerful b. disabled c. economic d. active

28. Sadly, official .... show that the number of smokers is rising.

a. adventures b. regions c. figures d. troubles

3 Definitions

29. A/An .... is the end of something such as a speech or a piece of writing.

a. conclusion b. regions c. inspiration d. event

30. To .... is to show or be a sign of a particular situation or feeling.

a. raise b. speculate c. reflect d. pause

31. .... means extremely unhappy, for example because you feel lonely, cold, or badly treated.

a. Naughty　b. Grumpy　c. Miserable　d. Inspiring

32. The adjective "............" means having an important effect or influence especially on what will happen in the future.

a. cruel　b. cross　c. patient　d. significant

33. A/An .... is an amount expressed as if it is part of a total which is 100

a. prejudice　b. eye contact　c. percentage　d. bar graph

34. .... means deliberately hurting people or animals.

a. Cruel　b. Cross　c. Patient　d. Significant

35. .... means a small group of people or things within a much larger group.

a. Minority　b. Majority　c. Podcast　d. Stereotype

36. .... means annoyed or quite angry.

a. Cruel　b. Cross　c. Patient　d. Significant

37. .... is when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you.

a. Prejudice　b. Eye contact　c. Percentage　d. Bar graph

38. To be .... is to be able to wait calmly for a long time or to accept difficulties, people's annoying behaviour etc. without becoming angry

a. cruel　b. cross　c. patient　d. significant

39. The adjective "............" means doing something that is not right or good, but is not very serious.

a. naughty　b. grumpy　c. miserable　d. inspiring

40. .... means most of the people or things in a group.

a. Minority　b. Majority　c. Podcast　d. Stereotype

41. A/An .... is a diagram that uses lines or narrow rectangles of different heights to show different amounts, so that they can be compared.

a. prejudice　b. eye contact　c. percentage　d. bar graph

42. A/An .... person is bad-tempered and easily annoyed.

a. naughty　b. grumpy　c. miserable　d. inspiring

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: ساعد نفسك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	a big inspiration to يكون مصدر كبير للإلهام لـ	have	an accident يتعرض لحادث
explain	why يوضح السبب	make	a speech يلقي كلمة/خطبة
get	better grades يحصل على درجات أفضل	make	eye contact يقوم بالتواصل البصري
get	dirty يتسخ	make	the best of يُحسن استغلال
get	cross with يخاصم / يقاطع	present	ideas يطرح أفكار
get	very impatient ينفذ صبره	raise	a question يطرح سؤال/موضوع
give	reasons يُبرر support يقدم دعم	reflect	the stereotype يعكس الصورة النمطية
		take	place يَحدث
		take	third place يحصل على المركز الثالث

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You are always late for work! Can you .... why ?
   a. get b. make c. raise d. explain
2. I don't believe the reasons you have ....
   a. made b. given c. taken d. reflected
3. It is important how to .... new ideas to students. That makes the difference.
   a. be b. have c. get d. present
4. When they go to the park, my children always .... their clothes dirty.
   a. get b. let c. raise d. explain
5. This film .... the stereotype of the Egyptian farmer.
   a. makes b. gives c. takes d. reflects
6. Dr Zewail .... a big inspiration to a lot of young people.
   a. is b. lectures c. gets d. speculates

7. It is necessary to .... eye contact when you are talking to someone.
   a. get b. make c. raise d. explain
8. Rodayna always .... cross quickly with her cousin Zeinab.
   a. is b. has c. gets d. presents
9. The question you have .... is very important.
   a. awarded b. rose c. raised d. been

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
bar graph(n)	رسم بياني بالأعمدة	bar chart/ diagram
cross(adj)	غاضب/ساخط/مُقاطِع	angry/ annoyed
cruel(adj)	قاسي	savage/inhuman/barbaric
grumpy(adj)	مُعكر المزاج مُتأَفِّف	bad-tempered
naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب	badly behaved/disobedient
patient(adj)	صبور	forbearing /even-tempered

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
cross(adj)	غاضب/ساخط/مُقاطِع	cheerful/pleased/ good-humoured	بشوش/سعيد/مَرِح
cruel(adj)	قاسي	kind /compassionate/ merciful	طيب/حنون/رحيم
grumpy(adj)	حاد الطبع /مُتأَفِّف	good-natured	لَيِّن الطبع
majority(n)	أغلبية	minority(n)	أقلية
naughty(adj)	شقي/مُشاغب	good/well-behaved/ obedient	صالح/حَسَنُ السلوك/ مُطيع
patient(adj)	صبور	impatient	قليل الصَّبْر/ متعجل/ نافِدُ الصَّبْر
significant(adj)	هام/ ذو مغزى	insignificant	غير هام

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The new secretary is grumpy; she is ....
   a. good-natured b. well-known c. bad-tempered d. badly used

2. "Salma is cross with Hany." The word 'cross' in this sentence is a synonym of ....

a. angry　b. miserable　c. impatient　d. pleased

3. 'Patient' is to 'impatient' as '............' is to 'merciful'.

a. forbearing　b. even-tempered
c. cruel　d. kind

4. He is good-natured. This means he is not ....

a. obedient　b. grumpy　c. significant　d. patient

5. 'Bar graph' is also known as a/an ....

a. paragraph　b. bar chart　c. diagram　d. b & c

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
conclude يختتم - يستنتج	conclusion الخلاصة/الخاتمة - استنتاج	concluding ختامي conclusive باتّ / جازم/ قاطع	conclusively بشكل قاطع
cross يعبر / يجتاز / يتقاطع cross يضع علامة (+) أو (×)	cross هجين/ مزيج cross علامة (+) أو (×)	cross غاضب/ متضايق	crossly بغضب
grump يتذمَّر - يُكثِر من الشكوى	grump شخص مُتذمِّر (كثير الشكوى) grumpiness التذمُّر - كثرة الشكوى	grumpy حاد الطبع /مُتأفِّف مُتذمِّر	grumpily بتأفُّف - بتذمُّر
	naughtiness البذاءة - الشيطنة (الشقاوة)	naughty شقي/مُشاغب	naughtily ببذاءة (بشقاوة)
	patient شخص مريض patience الصبر	patient صبور	patiently بصبر
reflect يعكس - يوضِّح/يُبيِّن - يتفكَّر في - يُعلِّق على	reflection انعكاس - التفكير العميق reflector سطح عاكس	reflective عاكس - مُستغرِق في تفكير عميق	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She refused my offer .... without giving a reason.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
2. I have .... all the wrong statements.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
3. I have put .... in the cell next to the wrong statement.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
4. Amir is .... about breaking his camera.
   a. crossed b. a cross c. cross d. crossly
5. .... is a very good quality.
   a. Patience b. Patients c. Patiently d. Impatient
6. .... in this hospital receive ideal health care.
   a. Patience b. Patients c. Patiently d. Impatient
7. I tried to explain why, but you were ....
   a. patience b. patient c. patiently d. impatient
8. My mother is the only person that listens .... to my complaints.
   a. patience b. patient c. patiently d. impatient
9. Try to concentrate ركز on the positive sides instead of ....
   a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
10. What a .... ! He is always complaining about his life.
    a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
11. Don't ...., man. That doesn't solve problems.
    a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
12. What a .... woman! I can't hear talking to her.
    a. grump b. grumpily c. grumpy d. grumpiness
13. The report .... that the new plan is not easy to apply. يُطبَّق
    a. concluding b. conclusive c. conclusions d. concluded
14. The .... part of the report summarised the findings. النتائج
    a. concluding b. conclusive c. conclusion d. conclude
15. He was arrested because there's a .... evidence against him.
    a. concluding b. conclusive c. conclusion d. conclude

16. I saw the .... of clouds on the surface of water in the calm lake.
a. reflect b. reflection c. reflective d. reflectively

17. Mirrors .... light.
a. reflect b. reflection c. reflective d. reflectively

18. A mirror has a .... surface.
a. reflect b. reflections c. reflective d. reflectively

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a little bit naughty	مُشاغب قليلاً	in other words,	بعبارة أخرى / بشكل آخر
all-girls' schools	مدارس للفتيات فقط	key information	معلومات رئيسية
a small minority	أقلية صغيرة	later on	فيما بعد
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	less likely	أقل احتمالاً للتعرض
confident about their abilities	واثقين من قدراتهم	obvious pattern	نمط واضح
		read .... aloud	يقرأ ... بصوت عال
cross with	غاضب من	related to	مُتعلِّق بـ
equality at work	المساواة في العمل	significant/big difference	فرق واضح
female/woman doctor	طبيبة	special about	مميز في
for a while	لبعض الوقت	the reasons behind the results	الأسباب التي أدت إلي النتائج
get into trouble	يقع في المشاكل		
go one step further	ذهبت لأبعد من ذلك	three-quarters	ثلاثة أرباع
in certain given countries	في بلدان معينة	typically used	من المعتاد استخدامها
in conclusion	الخلاصة		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

argue with	يتجادل مع	look after	يرعي - يعتني بـ
carry on	يستمر في / يواصل	motivate ... to	يُشجِّع ... أن
come out	يخرج - يصدر	seem to	يبدو أن
complain about	يشكو من	specialise in	يتخصص في
conform to	يتوافق مع	speculate about	يتفكر/يتأمل في
care about	يهتم بـ	stand up against	يقاوم/يُعارِض
hold back	يُعيق - يعرقل	tend to	يميل إلى

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm still trying to find out the reasons .... these unexpected results.
   a. with b. behind c. from d. out of
2. She cares .... everything related to her children.
   a. at b. in c. on d. about
3. To start the final paragraph of an essay, we can use '............'.
   a. In conclusion b. On conclusion
   c. To conclude d. a & c
4. It is our role to look .... our parents when they become old.
   a. after b. for c. up d. like
5. Keep safe. Try not to get .... trouble.
   a. to b. on c. into d. up
6. When my phone rang, I asked Rodayna to watch the baby .... a while.
   a. from b. for c. on d. during

7 Clear the Confusion لاحظ الفرق

patient - patience

- **patient (adj)** صبور (صفة)
  - Be patient when you face problems.
- **patience (n)** الصبر (اسم غير معدود)
  - Patience is needed when you face problems.
- **patient (n)** شخص مريض (اسم معدود)
  - There are still three patients waiting for their turn.

cross + with/at/about

- **cross with (adj)** غاضب من / على خصام مع (شخص)
  - Adel was cross with Ramy who broke his camera.
- **cross at/about (adj)** غاضب بسبب (شيء أو تصرُّف)
  - Adel was cross at/about his broken camera.

little

- يمكن استخدام (little) قبل اسم لا يُعد بمعنى (قليل من):

• little + اسم لا يُعدّ
قليل من

- She had very little petrol in the tank of her car.

- يمكن استخدام (little) قبل اسم جمع بمعنى (صغير الحجم - قليل الأهمية):

- There are two or three little things that we need to do.
- Little children ask a lot of questions.

Percentages & Phrases

Percentage	Synonymous phrase	Meaning
0%	none of	لا أحد/ لا شيء من
5%	only a few/little of	فقط القليل من
31%	less than a third of	أقل من الثُلث
48%	nearly half the number/amount of	حوالي نصف عدد/كمية
79%	over three-quarters	أكثر من ثلاثة أرباع
96%	the majority of	غالبية

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. **A:** I've achieved only 47% of the job. **B:** That's .... of it.
   a. only a little b. nearly half c. the majority d. none
2. It is not safe to leave .... children alone at home.
   a. a little b. a few c. little d. few
3. Don't ask your father for anything right now. He is cross .... the high electricity bill.
   a. about b. with c. at d. a & c
4. .... helps you overcome difficulties.
   a. Patience b. A patience c. Patient d. A patient

Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

grumpy

- **grumpy (adj) حاد الطبع /مُتأفِّف** = irritable
  - My brother Ahmed is a bit grumpy when lunch is late.
- **grumpily (adv) بتأفُّف – بتذمُّر**
  - Hossam grumpily said that was not going to argue with me any more.
- **grumpiness (n) التذمُّر – كثرة الشكوي**
  - Despite her grumpiness, she agreed to do the job.
- **grump (n) شخص مُتذمِّر (كثير الشكوي)**
  - Our neighbours' son is such a grump. He never stops complaining and crying.
- **grump (ed) (about) (v) يتذمَّر – يُكثِر من الشكوى (من / بسبب)**
  - He is always grumping about his low salary.

majority

- **major (adj) كبير / رئيسي / خطير ≠ minor**
  - My friend Ali had a major heart surgery last month. (خطير)
  - Egypt played a major role in stopping the attack on Gaza. (كبير)
- **major (n) رائد (رتبة عسكرية)**
  - Major Essam was on top of a team of ten soldiers.
- **majority (n) الأغلبية – الأكثرية ≠ minority**
  - In the last match, Al Ahly fans were in the majority.

لاحظ أن:

- نستخدم فعل جمع بعد (The majority of) إذا كان بعدها اسم جمع:
  - The majority of + اسم جمع + فعل جمع
  - The majority of football fans are young people.
- نستخدم فعل جمع بعد (The majority) إذا كانت تشير لأفراد مجموعة كل على حدة:
  - The majority of + فعل جمع
  - I meet several old people every day. The majority have health problems.
- عادة نستخدم فعل مفرد بعد (The majority) إذا كانت تشير للمجموعة كوحدة واحدة (لاحظ أنه في الإنجليزية البريطانية يمكن استخدام فعل جمع في هذا المعني):
  - The majority of + جمع / فعل مفرد
  - The majority is/are against the war decision.

reflect

- **reflect (ed) (v)** يعكس (الضوء أو صورة مثلاً)
  - I saw my face reflected on the surface of water.
- **reflect (v)** يوضّح - يعكس
  - The President's visit reflects the importance of the new project.
- **reflect (on) (v)** يُمعِن التفكير في
  - He reflected on the reasons for his son's low marks.
- **reflect (that) (v)** يقول بعد تفكير عميق
  - He reflected that his son got low marks because he had wasted his time.
- **reflection (n)** انعكاس (الضوء أو صورة مثلاً)
  - I saw the reflection of the plane on the Nile water.
- **reflection (n)** التفكير العميق
  - After a five-minute reflection, I realized I was wrong.
- **reflection (on/of) (n)** انعكاس (لـ) - دلالة (على)
  - Leen's comment was a reflection of the mood of all the students in class.
- **reflector (n)** سطح عاكس - Mirrors are reflectors.
- **reflective (adj)** عاكس - Mirrors have reflective surfaces.
- **reflective (adj)** دال على/عاكس لـ
  - Some films are reflective of reality.
- **reflective (adj)** مُستغرق في تفكير عميق
  - Don't disturb يزعج your father when he is in a reflective mood.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary ▶ تنويه : التدريبات التالية يليها الإجابة والتوضيح

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I have several friends here in Aswan. The majority .... ready to help me.
   a. is b. are c. have d. has
2. The majority of my customers .... objected to the new price policy.
   a. is b. are c. have d. has
3. At the meeting, the majority .... against the decision.
   a. was b. were c. have d. a & b
4. .... is a destructive quality.
   a. Grumpiness b. Inspiration c. Happiness d. Majority
5. We have nearly agreed on everything at the .... of the meeting.
   a. contribution b. podcast c. conclusion d. minority

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	تشير (The majority) هنا إلى (several friends) كل على حده، لذلك لابد من استخدام فعل جمع، ولا يمكن استخدام (have) لأنها لا تتفق مع تركيب الجملة أو المعنى
2.	c	إذا جاء بعد (The majority of) اسم جمع فلابد من استخدام فعل جمع بعدهم، (ولا يمكن استخدام (are) لأنها لا تتفق مع تركيب الجملة أو المعنى
3.	d	تشير (The majority) هنا إلى الأغلبية كوحدة واحدة، فيفضل استخدام فعل مفرد، لكن الفعل الجمع أيضاً صحيح في الإنجليزية البريطانية. ولا يمكن استخدام (have) لأنها لا تتفق مع تركيب الجملة أو المعنى
4.	a	من بين الإختيارات، فإن الإسم (Grumpiness) فقط هي السمة المدمرة، ولا يمكن استخدام الصفة (miserable) لأن الجملة ينقصها اسم.
5.	c	كلمة (conclusion) هنا تعني (ختام/نهاية)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Book of the week *(SB page 20)*



What Katy Did, written by the American Susan Coolidge in 1835, is still an inspiration(1) to many of today's female authors(2). The story follows the adventures(3) of 12-year-old Katy and her younger brothers and sisters.

Katy had no mother and her father was a busy doctor, so the children were looked after by their kind aunt.

Katy wanted to be like a mother to her brothers and sisters, but was often impatient(4), naughty(5) and liked to have dangerous adventures. One day, she decided to use a new swing(6), although her aunt had told her not to use it because it was broken. Katy fell from the swing and badly hurt her back. She could not walk and had to stay in bed. This made her very unhappy and cross(7), until she was visited by her cousin Helen. Helen was disabled(8) and she taught Katy to be patient. She also showed

Check Vocabulary

(1) إلهام
(2) مؤلفين
(3) مغامرات
(4) غير صبور
(5) شقي / مشاغب
(6) أرجوحة
(7) غاضب
(8) معاق

her how to be have in a more caring way to her younger brothers and sisters. After her aunt became ill and died, Katy became the head of the family. At the end of the book, she had become a wiser[9], better person, and she learnt to walk again.

اكثر حكمة (9)

Female doctors by country

(SB page 21)

The bar graph[1] shows the percentage[2] of female doctors in certain given countries around[3] the world. It can be seen that there is a very significant[4] difference across[5] countries, from a majority[6] of women doctors in some countries to a small minority[7] in others.

Share of female doctors in selected countries as of 2015

Country	Share
Latvia	%74.3
Estonia	%73.3
Netherlands	%51.7
Spain	%51.6
United Kingdom	%45.8
Italy	%40.3
Australia	%39.4
United States	%34.1
Japan	%20.3

Source: OECD Health Statistics 2016

The country with the highest number of women doctors is Latvia, which has nearly three-quarters[8] of female doctors, while the country with the smallest number is Japan, where less than a quarter of doctors are women.

Netherlands[9] and Spain have very similar[10] numbers of women doctors; around half the doctors in those countries are women. However, another European country, Italy, has around 10% fewer women doctors.

In conclusion[11], the most surprising thing about the figures[12] is the big differences across different countries, which do not seem to be related to[13] region[14], or size[15] or economic[16] development[17] of the country. In other words[18], there does not seem[19] to be any obvious[20] pattern[21] to the results. It is especially[22] interesting to note[23] the very low number of women doctors in Japan. That may reflect[24] the stereotype that Japanese women are usually expected to look after[25] the home, rather than work in medical or other fields.

Check Vocabulary
أعمدة بيانية (1)
نسبة مئوية (2)
حول (3)
ملحوظ/ذو مغزى (4)
عَبْر (5)
أغلبية (6)
أقلية (7)
ثلاثة أرباع (8)
هولندا (9)
مشابه (10)
الخلاصة (11)
أرقام (12)
مُتعلّق بـ (13)
منطقة/إقليم (14)
حجم (15)
اقتصادي (16)
التنمية (17)
بعبارة أخري (18)
يبدو (19)
واضح (20)
نمط/صيغة (21)
بصفة خاصة (22)
يلاحظ (23)
يعكس/يُبيّن (24)
يعتني بـ (25)

2

(WB page 11)

From the graph, it can be seen that there is a significant difference[1] between people's opinions when asked the question in the graph. The highest number of people who agreed were in India, where the majority[2] of people (80%) thought things would be better if women had more important jobs in government and business. Perhaps the most surprising thing about the figures is that over 70% of people in the less developed countries[3], such as South Africa and Turkey, agreed with the question. However, in some of the more developed countries such as Sweden and the USA, fewer than 60% of the people agreed nearly, in South Korea, while half the number of people disagreed. It is especially interesting to note that in Japan, only 43% agreed. That may reflect the fact that Japan is a very traditional society.

Percentage
India
South Africa
Turkey
Brazil
Australia
Spain
The UK
South Korea
Japan
Sweden
The USA

Check Vocabulary

(1)	اختلاف ملحوظ
(2)	الأغلبية
(3)	دول متقدمة

In conclusion, we can see that in most countries, people believe that things would be better if women had more important jobs in business or government.

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 20)

Why don't more girls study STEM subjects ? Despite the fact that in most countries there are more girls at university than boys, fewer girls than boys complete STEM University degrees[1]. More girls are in schools today than ever before, but they don't always have the same opportunities[2] as boys to choose the education[3] or subjects they want. Too many girls are held back[4] by gender[5] biases, stereotypes and social norms[6] and expectations,[7] which influence[8] the subject they study. Research[9] has shown that even though girls often get better grades[10] than boys in STEM subjects in lower school, they choose not to carry on[11] studying them later on[12] because they worry they won't be able to follow classes and they will get poor[13] grades.

Check Vocabulary

(1)	شهادة جامعية
(2)	فُرص
(3)	التعليم
(4)	يُعيق - يعرقل
(5)	الجنس (ذكر / أنثى)
(6)	تقاليد / أعراف
(7)	تطلعات
(8)	يؤثر على
(9)	البحث
(10)	درجات/تقديرات
(11)	يستمر في / يواصل
(12)	فيما بعد
(13)	رديء / سيء

Well, one answer to this is all-girls' schools[14] where it seems that girls are less likely[15] to conform to[16] stereotypes and tend to [17] be more confident about their abilities[18]. One school in Cairo has gone one step further[19] than this, the Maadi STEM School for Girls, is a school which specialises in[20] STEM. It is one of two new secondary schools which have opened in Egypt that focus on STEM. One of its students is Hoda Mamdouh, a 17-year-old girl from the Nile Delta. Like[21] most teenagers[22], she loves playing sport and listening to music, but what makes her different is the scientific[23] research [24] she is doing at school. Last May, she and two other students took third place[25] in an International Science and Engineering Fair[26], where 1600 of the best and brightest[27] students in the world had presented[28] their ideas. Together, these girls have found a way to purify[29] drinking water using 24% less energy than typically used[30]. Hoda says what they study there is far more interesting than in her old school. She says, "We do real research. Here, everyone's a teacher and everyone's a student."

The aim[31] of the school is to raise[32] a generation[33] of critical thinkers[34] and leaders[35]. Certainly[36], the girls at Maadi seem inspired [37] and motivated[38] to become the next leaders. Hoda's ambition[39] after she graduates[40] is to find a cure[41] for alzheimer's[42] disease; a disease which affects[43] the brains of older people.

مدارس للفتيات فقط (14)
أقل احتمالاً للتعرُّض (15)
يتوافق مع (16)
يميل إلي (17)
قُدرات (18)
ذهبت لأبعد من ذلك (19)
يتخصص في (20)
مِثل (21)
مُراهقين (22)
علمي (23)
البحث (24)
يحصل علي المركز الثالث (25)
مَعرَض (26)
الأذكي (27)
يَعرِض (28)
يُنقِّي (29)
من المعتاد استخدامها (30)
الهدف (31)
يُربِّي (32)
جيل (33)
المفكرين الناقدين (34)
القادة (35)
من المؤكد (36)
مُلهم (37)
مُحفز/مُشجع (38)
طُموح (39)
يتخرج (40)
علاج (41)
مرض الزهايمر (42)
يُؤثر على (43)

(WB page 10)

Ayman : What did you think of the characters in what Katy did, Hany?

Hany : Well, Ayman, I didn't like her aunt. She was always getting cross with [1] Katy.

Ayman : She was right to be cross with her! Before her accident, Katy was very naughty. [2]

Hany : I don't think she was naughty. She just liked to have fun.

Ayman : Yes Hany, but she was unkind[3] to her brothers and sisters. They were always arguing with[4] her.

Hany : True. But I felt sorry for her after the accident. I would be grumpier if I was unable[5] to walk.

Ayman : I liked Helen though[6]. She was much better-natured than Katy, even though she was disabled[7].

Hany : I agree. She was the kindest person in the story. She teaches Katy how to be more patient[8].

Check Vocabulary

(1) غاضب من
(2) مُشاغب
(3) قاسي
(4) يتجادل مع
(5) عاجز
(6) مع ذلك
(7) مُعاق
(8) صبور

(WB page 11)

Today, I'm going to talk about Women's Day[1] in Egypt. Egypt's Women's Day is on 16 March, but in 2019, there was a special[2] 16 Days of Egyptian Women from the 1st to the 16th of March. The organisers had chosen these days to remember the events[3] in 1919, when women marched[4] on the street to complain about[5] colonial[6] rule[7].

This event was to remember women's contribution[8] to Egyptian society.

In my opinion, women are increasingly[9] important in Egyptian society. For example, there are now around 90 women who are members of parliament[10], more than ever before. In 2021, many women have become judges[11] for the first time. The future is bright[12] for Egyptian women.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عيد المرأة
(2) خاص
(3) أحداث
(4) يزحف/يمشي في مسيرة
(5) يشكو من
(6) استعماري
(7) حُكم
(8) مُساهمة
(9) بشكل متزايد
(10) البرلمان
(11) قضاة/قاضيات
(12) مُشرق/مُبشِّر

Part IV Language

Comparative and superlative forms صفات والتفضيل

WB page 10

1 Adjectives الصفات

• **What is an adjective ? ما هي الصفة؟**

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسم:

- a tall tree
- an expensive car
- young people

• **What is the position of an adjective? ما هو موقع الصفة؟**

توضع الصفة في الأماكن التالية:

١ قبل الموصوف:

- I bought a digital camera yesterday.
- Ahmed saw a long snake in the garden.

٢ بعد الأفعال التقريرية مثل:

- be | look/seem/appear/sound يبدو | taste يعطى مذاق | feel يعطى ملمس
- smell يعطى رائحة ... etc.

- Nada is cheerful.
- You look miserable.
- This shirt feels soft.

٣ هناك صفات لا تُستخدم قبل الإسم مطلقا مثل:

afraid خائف | awake مستيقظ | asleep نائم | alone وحيد | alight مُضاء | alive حيّ

- The baby that was asleep smiled nicely. (Not: The asleep baby)

٤ تُستخدم الصفات بعد الضمائر غير المحددة التالية:

someone	somebody	something	somewhere
anyone	anybody	anything	anywhere
everyone	everybody	everything	everywhere
no one	nobody	nothing	nowhere

- I met somebody important in the party. (Not: important somebody)
- Let's drink something cold. (Not: cold something)

Extreme adjectives الصفات القوية

❶ هي صفات ذات معنى قوي مثل:

ممتاز excellent | عتيق / قديم جداً ancient | ساخط furious | ضخم gigantic

❷ تُستخدم ظروف الدرجة التالية قبل الصفات القوية:

حقاً really | تماما completely | كُليًا utterly / entirely | بشكل مُطْلَق absolutely

- You are absolutely excellent at maths.
- He was utterly furious.

Absolute adjectives الصفات المُطلقة

❶ هي صفات ذات معنى مُطلق، بمعنى أنها إما موجودة أو غير موجودة مثل:

ممتاز excellent | نهائي final | أساسي main | ميت dead

❷ لا تُستخدم أي ظروف درجة قبل الصفات المُطْلَقَة:

- My grandparents are extremely dead. (✗)
- My grandparents are dead. (✓)

❸ لا يمكن أن تُستخدم الصفات المُطْلَقَة في المقارنة والتفضيل:

- My grandfather is deader than my grandmother. (✗)
- My grandfather and my grandmother are dead. (✓)

2 Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

• **What is a comparative adjective ?** ما هي صفة المقارنة؟

هي صفة تقارن بين طرفين (أحدهما أكثر أو أقل من الآخر في نفس الصفة):

- Ahmed is faster than Rodayna.

في المثال السابق:

- طرفي المقارنة هما (Ahmed) و (Rodayna)
- صفة المقارنة هي (faster)
- حالة المقارنة: أحمد أكثر من رودينا في السرعة

- The Mercedes is more expensive than the Toyota.

في المثال السابق:

- طرفي المقارنة هما (Mercedes) و (Toyota)
- صفة المقارنة هي (more expensive)
- حالة المقارنة: السيارة المرسيدس أكثر من السيارة التويوتا في الثمن.

The form of comparative adjectives تكوين صفات المقارنة

يتم تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد كالتالي:

1 يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:

- fast - faster - old - older

2 يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

- large - larger - close - closer

3 يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة:

- big - bigger - thin - thinner
- hot - hotter - fit - fitter

يتم تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) بتحويل حرف (y) إلى (ier):

- easy - easier - happy - happier
- lazy - lazier - healthy - healthier

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالي:

- more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة طويلة + (than)

- more beautiful (than) أكثر جمالاً (من)
- less beautiful(than) أقل جمالاً (من)

Notes on comparative adjectives ملاحظات على صفات المقارنة

1. المقطع (er) في نهاية صفة المقارنة يعني أكثر:

- Mariam is taller than Malak.

2. عندما نريد أن نقول (أقل) مع الصفات القصيرة فإننا نستخدم (less) قبل الصفة دون إضافة المقطع (er):

- Malak is less tall than Mariam. (Not: less taller)

3. ليس بالضرورة استخدام (than) بعد صفة المقارنة عندما يكون الطرف الثاني للمقارنة مفهوم من سياق الكلام:

- Malak is tall, but Mariam is taller. (Not: taller than)
- This car is expensive. I want a less expensive one. (Not: less expensive than)

4. يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية بمعني (كثيراً) قبل صفات المقارنة لتقوية معني الصفة:

- even - much - a lot - far - …
- A plan is much faster than a car.

5. يمكن استخدام الظروف التالية بمعني (قليلاً/بدرجة طفيفة) قبل صفات المقارنة لتخفيف معني الصفة:

- slightly بدرجة طفيفة - a bit قليلاً - a little قليلاً …
- Chicken is slightly cheaper than meat.

6. لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد (than) :

(يُفضل استخدام ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل وضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):

- My sister is thinner than I am.
= My sister is thinner than me.

7. لاحظ استخدام صيغة (كلما …… كلما ….) للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة:

The + صفة مقارنة + جملة السبب, + the + صفة مقارنة + جملة النتيجة

- Working hard helps you achieve more success.
= The harder you work, the more success you achieve.
= The harder you work, the more successful you become.

8. لاحظ عطف نفس صفة المقارنة على أخري للتوكيد ولتقوية معني الصفة:

- You are getting more and more nervous nowadays.
- It is getting hotter and hotter here in Aswan.

3 Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

What is a superlative adjective ? ما هي صفة التفضيل (التمييز) ؟

هي تقارن بين فرد ومجموعة (الفرد هو أكثر أو أقل أفراد المجموعة تميزاً في نفس الصفة):

- Ahmed is the fastest student in his class.

في المثال السابق:

- أطراف التفضيل هي: (Ahmed) وباقي الطلاب في (his class)
- صفة التفضيل أو التمييز (the fastest)
- حالة التفضيل: أحمد (الفرد) هو الأكثر في السرعة من بين طلاب الفصل (المجموعة)

- The Mercedes is the most expensive car in this market.

في المثال السابق:

- أطراف التفضيل هي: (Mercedes) وباقي السيارات في (this market)
- صفة التفضيل أو التمييز (the most expensive)
- حالة التفضيل: السيارة المرسيدس (الفرد) هي الأكثر في الثمن من بين السيارات في هذا السوق (المجموعة)

The form of superlative adjectives تكوين صفات التفضيل

يتم تكوين صفة التفضيل من الصفات القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد كالتالي:

1. يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة:

- fast - the fastest
- old - the oldest

2. يُضاف (the ...+st) فقط إلي الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

- large - the largest
- close - the closest

3. يُضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقاً بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the ...+ est) إلى الصفة القصيرة:

- big - the biggest
- thin - the thinnest
- hot - the hottest
- fit - the fittest

يتم تكوين صفة التفضيل من الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (y) بتحويل (y) إلى (the ...+ iest):

- easy - the easiest
- happy - the happiest
- lazy - the lazier
- healthy - the healthiest

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى:

- the most الأكثر /the least الأقل + adj. صفة طويلة

- the most beautiful الأكثر جمالاً
- the least beautiful الأقل جمالاً

Notes on Superlative adjectives ملاحظات على صفات التفضيل

1. المقطع (est) في نهاية صفة التفضيل يعني الأكثر:

- Mariam is the tallest student at school.

2. لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (the) مع الاعداد الترتيبية مثل:

- the (first / second / third/ fourth...last)

- Gold is the second most valuable metal.

3. لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل عندما يسبقها صفة ملكية أو ('s) الملكية:

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its .....'s
- Zewail is Egypt's most famous scientist.

4. تستخدم (most) بدون (the) بمعني (very):

- Zewail is most famous for discovering the femtosecond.

5. لاحظ أن:

- ... صفة تفضيل + in + اسم مفرد
  - I met the oldest woman in the city.
- ... صفة تفضيل + of + اسم جمع
- Ali is the laziest of his brothers.

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل غير المنتظمة

لاحظ أن صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل من الصفات التالية غير منتظمة ولا تتبع القواعد السابقة :

Adj. / adv.	comparative	Superlative
- bad سيء - badly بشكل سيء	worse أسوأ	the worst الأسوأ
far بعيد	- farther أبعد - further أبعد / أكثر	- the farthest الأبعد - the furthest الأبعد / الأكثر
fore سابق / مُسبق	former أسبق	the first الأول
- good جيد - well بصحة جيدة	better أفضل	the best الأفضل
late متأخر/ متأخراً	- later أكثر تأخراً - latter الآخر / الثاني	- the latest الأكثر تأخراً - the last الأخير

little قليل الكمية	less اقل	the least الأقل
- many كثير العدد - much كثير الكمية	more أكثر	the most الأكثر

- I have two friends. One of them is a doctor and the latter is an engineer.
- If you want any further information, call me.
- I have so many friends, but Rokaya has more friends.

4 Equalatives صيغ التساوي

❶ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن تساوي طرفين في صفة معينة:

- **as + adj. الصفة + as**
- Sama is as old as Judy.
- Watching football is as exciting as playing it.

❷ في حالة النفي تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن عدم التساوي:

- **not + as / so + adj. الصفة + as**
- I am not as fit as you. = I am not so fit as you.

❸ لاحظ أن:

- **as + adj. الصفة + as = the same + الإسم من الصفة + as**
- Yara is as old as Rodayna.
= Yara is the same age as Rodayna.

لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + noun + as) من الصفات الآتية:

adjective	noun	adjective	noun
big / small	size حجم	long	length طول مسافة أو مدة
deep	depth عُمْق	old / young	age عُمْر
expensive/ cheap	price سعر	strong	strength قوة
far / near	distance مسافة	wide	width عَرْض / اتساع
high / high	height إرتفاع / عُلوّ / طول		

- My flat is as big as yours. = My flat is the same size as yours.

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. The new wall is not .... the old one.
   a. as high as b. the high as c. high as d. as high
2. This is .... part of all seas and oceans.
   a. deep b. deeper c. the deepest d. as deep as
3. Burj Khalifa is .... Cairo Tower.
   a. the highest b. highest c. higher d. higher than
4. I know that European cars are expensive, but I haven't thought they are as expensive .... that.
   a. than b. so c. as d. the same
5. For me, her gold medal was .... important sporting event of 2020.
   a. the most b. the more c. most d. more
6. Parachuting is .... sport ever.
   a. most dangerous b. the most dangerous
   c. more dangerous d. dangerous
7. The Nile is .... river in the world.
   a. longer than b. longest c. the longest d. long
8. Perhaps you looked bad this morning, but I looked even ....
   a. badly b. more badly c. the worst d. worse
9. This is the .... test I've ever taken.
   a. hardest b. less hard c. harder d. hard
10. He is not .... reliable as his friend.
    a. so b. as c. more d. a & b
11. The quality of food is not nearly .... as it was in the past.
    a. the best b. worse c. as better d. so good
12. For the continuity of life, water is the .... valuable of all liquids.
    a. more b. less c. least d. most
13. A donkey is not .... as a cheetah.
    a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. fast
14. Jerry looks much............than Tom.
    a. the most intelligent b. least intelligent
    c. more intelligent d. intelligent

15. It was ....of her to save some of her money.
 a. least wise b. wise c. less wise d. more wise than

16. Tablets are getting ....popular.
 a. more and more b. much and more
 c. more and less d. less and more

17. Football is .... exciting sport ever.
 a. even b. most c. the most d. more

18. I have much .... cousins than him.
 a. more b. the least c. most d. many

19. Yesterday was .... than today.
 a. as hot b. more hot c. less hot d. a little hot

20. Salah is currently ....player in his team.
 a. best b. the best c. better d. good

21. Living in a large villa is ....
 a. comfortable b. much comfortable
 c. more comfortable than d. the most comfortable

22. Living in a large villa is .... living in a large flat.
 a. comfortable b. more comfortable
 c. more comfortable than d. most comfortable

23. Living in a large flat is comfortable, but living in a large villa is ....
 a. comfortable b. more comfortable
 c. more comfortable than d. most comfortable

24. Nobody in our office is............ Hani.
 a. as hard-working b. hard-working
 c. more hard-working d. as hard-working as

2 Special Cases

25. Nobody in our office is............, Hani.
 a. as hard-working b. hard-working
 c. more hard-working d. as hard-working as

26. Which do you think is .... city in the world?
 a. the most exciting b. most exciting
 c. a more exciting d. more exciting

27. Which do you think is .... city, Paris or Dubai?
   a. the most exciting b. most exciting
   c. a more exciting d. more exciting
28. Which do you think is ...., Paris or Dubai?
   a. the most exciting b. most exciting
   c. a more exciting d. more exciting
29. Helmi's new film is his .... one.
   a. popular b. most popular
   c. the most popular d. the least popular
30. A white rose is pretty. However, a red one looks even ....
   a. most pretty b. prettier c. prettiest d. pretty
31. Compared with Kilimanjaro, Everest is .... Everest is the highest summit in the world.
   a. the highest b. less high c. higher d. higher than
32. Compared with Everest, Kilimanjaro is .... Everest is the highest summit in the world.
   a. the highest b. less high c. higher d. higher than
33. This tree is the world's .... tree.
   a. as old as b. older than c. the oldest d. oldest
34. Part two is difficult, but part one was ....
   a. more difficult than b. more difficult
   c. most difficult d. the most difficult
35. It is known that women are ....surgeons than men.
   a. worst b. more worse c. worse d. bad
36. The quieter the place you live in is, the .... you feel.
   a. more good b. best c. better d. good
37. Amir didn't do as .... work as I did.
   a. much b. many c. few d. more
38. Mum has so much .... to do.
   a. professions b. jobs c. career d. housework
39. It is .... warmer here in Egypt than in Canada.
   a. a few b. more c. much d. very
40. Yasmeen doesn't have as .... friends as I do.
   a. many b. most c. more d. much

41. My house is .... than yours. Yours is more spacious.
    a. the biggest   b. bigger   c. less big   d. more big

42. Mustafa is .... engineer than Nagi.
    a. better   b. much better   c. a much better   d. good

43. A/An .... is a word that describes a noun.
    a. verb   b. pronoun   c. adjective   d. adverb

44. To make a comparison between two people or things, we use a/an .... adjective.
    a. extreme   b. comparative   c. superlative   d. absolute

45. To express the highest degree of a particular quality that someone or something has in comparison to others, we use a/an .... adjective.
    a. extreme   b. comparative   c. superlative   d. absolute

46. To show that a quality is definite and not likely to change, we use a/an .... adjective.
    a. extreme   b. comparative   c. superlative   d. absolute

47. A/An .... adjective expresses a quality that is very great in degree.
    a. extreme   b. comparative   c. superlative   d. absolute

48. Adjectives never come ....the indefinite article 'everybody'.
    a. after   b. before   c. to describe   d. a & b

49. The adjective 'awake' is never used .... a noun.
    a. after   b. before   c. to describe   d. a & b

3 Check your understanding

50. "Omar is really a fast runner." The word 'fast' here is a/an ....
    a. noun   b. verb   c. adverb   d. adjective

51. "Omar runs really fast." The word 'fast' here is a/an ....
    a. noun   b. verb   c. adverb   d. adjective

52. "He is patient with his children." In this sentence. 'patient' is a/an ....
    a. noun   b. verb   c. adverb   d. adjective

53. "He is a cancer patient." In this sentence. 'patient' is a/an ....
    a. noun   b. verb   c. adverb   d. adjective

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "My grandfather died in 2000. Twenty years later, my grandmother followed him." What does this mean?
   a. My grandfather is deader than my grandmother.
   b. My grandmother is less dead than my grandfather.
   c. My grandmother is as dead as my grandfather.
   d. My grandfather died twenty years earlier than my grandmother.
2. My friend Wahid helped me a lot. On the contrary, Adel was not ....
   a. less cooperative b. more cooperative
   c. as cooperative d. most cooperative
3. Yasmeen doesn't have as many friends as ....
   a. I have b. I do c. a & b d. me have
4. Ahmed is the .... of the two brothers.
   a. more young b. younger
   c. younger than d. young

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	الصفة (dead) من الصفات المُطلقة التي لا تُستخدم في المقارنة والتفضيل والتساوى.
2.	c	التعبير (as cooperative) يعني ضمنياً في سياق الجملة: - ... as cooperative as Wahid.
3.	c	- الفعل (have) صحيح لأنه الفعل الأساسي للجملة الأولي وهو من الأفعال التي يمكن استخدامها كفعل أساسي لازم ومساعد. - الفعل المساعد (do) صحيح لأن زمن الجملة الأولي مضارع بسيط. - لا يمكن استخدام ضمير المفعول (me) كفاعل بعده فعل.
4.	b	- في هذه الجملة، أحمد هو أحد طرفي المقارنة (التي تتكون من طرفين)، فهو الأقصر من بين الأخرين، وطبيعة بناء هذه الجملة تتطلب استخدام (the) قبل صفة المقارنة

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 22 : 25 WB pages 12 & 13



Part I — Chapter 2

تنويه
- هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية ، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

ashamed(adj)	خجُول/ مَخزِيّ/ مُستَحٍ من	pretty(adj/adv)	جميل - إلى حد ما
bride(n)	العروسة	protagonist(n)	بطل - الشخصية الرئيسية
candle(n)	شمعة	rude(adj)	وقح
cover(ed) (v/n)	يغطي - غطاء	shake-shook-shaken (v)	يرُج
embarrassed(adj)	مُحرَج	stir(red) (v)	يُقلِّب (شئ فى سائل)
fine(adj)	أملس/ناعم - أنيق	unused(adj)	غير مُستخدَم - غير مُستَغَلّ
fortune(n)	ثروة - الحظ	veil(n)	نِقاب - بُرقُع - حِجَاب
grateful(adj)	شاكرٌ للجَميل/ ممتن	wander(ed) (v)	يتجول - يهيم
material(n)	قماش - مادة خام	wax(n)	الشمع
mist(n)	الشبورة		

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

ashamed(adj) خجُول/ مَخزِيّ/ مُستَحٍ من	feeling embarrassed مُحرَج or bad about something
bride(n) العروسة	a woman who is getting married
candle(n) شمعة	something made of wax الشمع you burn to produce light
fortune(n) ثروة	a lot of money
grateful(adj) شاكرٌ للجَميل/ ممتن	feeling thankful and lucky
shake(d) (v) يرُج	to move quickly from side to side or up and down
stir(red) (v) يُقلِّب	to mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it
veil(n) نِقاب - بُرقُع - حِجَاب	a piece of fine material قماش ناعم worn to protect or hide your face

3 Idioms التعبيرات

- have a change of heart = change attitude towards something	تغيير مشاعره نحو شيء ما
- have a heart of stone = be very cruel	قاسي القلب
- have a good heart = be very kind	ذو قلب طيب
- have a broken heart = be very sad	حزين جدًا
- tears came to my eyes	زرقت الدموع في عيناي
- the mist is so thick	الشبورة كثيفة جدًا

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sir, a lady in a black gown ، رداء with a .... is waiting for you outside. (LM)
   a. vale b. vein c. veil d. veal
2. You must .... the bottle before taking this medicine. (LM)
   a. chock b. shock c. leak d. shake
3. I'm .... to my friends for their encouragement. (LM)
   a. grateful b. harmful c. careful d. needful
4. I'll never forget the day my daughter put on her wedding dress and became a .... (LM)
   a. groom b. bridegroom c. pride d. bride
5. The noun '............' means a lot of money.
   a. fortune b. veil c. candle d. bride
6. .... means feeling embarrassed or bad about something.
   a. Miserable b. Ashamed c. Grateful d. Grumpy
7. Abdulrahman had not wanted to get married, but later he had ....
   a. a broken heart b. a heart of stone
   c. a change of heart d. a good heart

8. After the death of his mother, he lived with ....
   a. a broken heart
   b. a heart of stone
   c. a change of heart
   d. a good heart
9. A .... is something made of wax you burn to produce light.
   a. fortune
   b. veil
   c. candle
   d. bride
10. He is a cruel person who's ....
   a. a broken heart
   b. a heart of stone
   c. a change of heart
   d. a good heart

Part II Skills

تنويه: المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات فى ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة على حدة.

Translation

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Women stand side by side with men in making progress everywhere. Yet, do you think that women can occupy jobs that have a risk factor as efficiently as men? *(LM)*

أ. تشارك المرأة في مساعدة الرجل في إحراز التقدم في كل مكان، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن المرأة قادرة على شغل الوظائف التي تنطوي على مخاطرة بكفاءة مثل الرجل؟

ب. تقف المرأة جنباً إلى جنب مع الرجل في إحراز التقدم في كل مكان، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن المرأة قادرة على شغل الوظائف التي تنطوي على مخاطرة بكفاءة مثل الرجل؟

ج. تقف المرأة جنباً إلى جنب مع الرجل في تحقيق الرفاهية في كل مكان، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن المرأة قادرة على شغل الوظائف التي تنطوي على مخاطرة بكفاءة مثل الرجل؟

د. تشارك المرأة جنباً إلى جنب مع الرجل في إحراز التقدم في كل مكان، ومع ذلك هل تعتقد أن المرأة قادرة على الاستمرار في الوظائف التي تنطوي على مخاطرة بكفاءة مثل الرجل؟

---

2. Modernizing the educational system is the cornerstone on which development and social stability are based.

أ. يُعدّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي يقوم بتشييد التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.

ب. يُعدّ تحديد النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.

ج. يُعدّ تحديث النظام التعليمي حجر الزاوية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.

د. يُعدّ تحديث النظام العلمي حجر الضربة الركنية الذي تقوم عليه التنمية والاستقرار الاجتماعي.

3. Most of the working women shoulder many responsibilities, dividing their time between their work and their families.

يتحمل معظم النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، حيث قسمن وقتهن بين عملهن وأسرهن.

يتحمل بعض النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، حيث يقسمن وقتهن بين عملهن وأسرهن.

يحتمل معظم النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، حيث يقسمن وقتهن بين عائلاتهن وأسرهن.

يتحمل معظم النساء العاملات مسؤوليات كثيرة، بحيث يقسمن وقتهن بين عملهن وأسرهن.

---

4. Good citizens sacrifice themselves, their time and money for the welfare of both their country and families.

يضحي المواطنين الطيبون بأنفسهم وبوقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.

كان يضحي المواطنون الطيبين بأنفسهم وبوقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.

ضحي المواطنون الطيبون بأنفسهم وبوقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.

قد يضحي المواطنون الطيبون بكل أنفسهم وبوقتهم من أجل رفاهية بلدهم وعائلاتهم.

② Choose the best English translation :

بالمقارنة مع الجولات السابقة، حققت الرياضة المصرية نجاحاً كبيراً في اليابان في دورة الألعاب الأوليمبية الصيفية لعام ٢٠٢١ ، وأصبحت فريال أشرف أول لاعبة مصرية تفوز بميدالية ذهبية في حدث السيدات + ٦١ كجم.

(LM)

a. Like previous rounds, Egyptian sports have achieved a great deal of success in Japan. At the 2020 Summer Olympics, Feryal Ashraf became the first Egyptian player to win a gold medal in the women's +61kg event.

b. In comparison to previous rounds, Egyptian sports have achieved a great deal of success in Japan. At the 2020 Winter Olympics, Feryal Ashraf became the first Egyptian player to win a gold model in the women's +61kg event.

c. In comparison to previous rounds, Egyptian sports have achieved a great deal of success in Japan. At the 2020 Summer Olympics, Feryal Ashraf became the second Egyptian player to win a silver medal in the women's +61kg event.

d. In comparison to previous rounds, Egyptian sports have achieved a great dead of success in Japan. At the 2021 summer olympics, feryal Ashraf became the first Egyptian player to win a gold medal in the wommen's + 61 kg. event.

٢. تولي الحكومة اهتمامًا كبيرًا بقضايا المرأة وذلك بتوفير التعليم والرعاية الصحية والاجتماعية من خلال بعض المشروعات القومية.

a. The government pays great attention to women's issues by providing education, health and social car through some national projects.

b. The government pays great attention to womens' issues; it provides them with education, health and social care.

c. The government pays great attention to women's issues by providing education, health and social care through some national projects.

d. The government pays great attention to women's issues by providing education, health and social care through some international projects.

٣. يجب علينا جميعًا احترام الكبار واتّباع نصائحهم، فخبراتهم بالحياة كنز ثمين لا يُقدَّر بثمن.

a. We all must respect the elderly and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are a priceless treasure.

b. We all must respect adults and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are a valueless treasure.

c. We all must respect adults and follow their advice. Their experiences in life are an unavailable treasure.

d. We all must respect adults and follow there advise. Their experiences in life are an invaluable treasure.

٤. من الضروري أن يهدف التعليم إلى بناء جيل قوي على دراية بمشكلات بلاده وقادر علي حلها.

a. It is important that education aim to build a strong generation aware of the problems of their country and able to solve them.

b. It is important that education aim to build a strong generation aware of the problems of its country and able to solve it.

c. It is important that education aim to build a strong generation unaware of the problems of their country and able to solve them.

d. It is important that education aim to build a strange generation aware of the problems of their country and able to solve them.

Test on Unit 2



• Understand • Apply • Create

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Faten is over the moon; she has won a/an .... for her collection of short stories for children. *(LM)*
   a. fine b. penalty c. present d. award
2. China has made a significant .... in developing a vaccine to combat the Coronavirus. *(LM)*
   a. contribution b. ammunition c. contamination d. radiation
3. A role .... is a person looked up to by others as an example to be imitated. *(LM)*
   a. module b. middle c. model d. medal
4. There shouldn't be .... against people of different cultures. *(LM)*
   a. clarity b. equality c. prejudice d. justice
5. Some private universities .... students in terms of their GPAs. *(LM)*
   a. risk b. rank c. arouse d. rise
6. You must work harder; this training is necessary to .... as a nurse. *(LM)*
   a. amplify b. specify c. qualify d. defy
7. I am sure your spirit of .... is the most important factor of success. *(LM)*
   a. cause b. merit c. determination d. deterioration
8. The .... looked fascinating in her wedding dress. *(LM)*
   a. groom b. bridegroom c. bride d. pride
9. There were floods because it .... for three days.
   a. had been rained b. had been raining
   c. was rained d. has been raining
10. Ahmed was exhausted when he arrived home yesterday. He .... hard all afternoon.
    a. had worked b. has been working
    c. had been working d. was being worked
11. You look .... than yesterday.
    a. the happiest b. more happy
    c. happiest d. much happier
12. Football is the .... popular game in Egypt. No other sport is as popular.
    a. most b. less c. least d. a & c

13. Football is .... popular in Egypt. No one can say it isn't.
a. most b. less c. the most d. a & c

14. This is .... view that I've ever seen.
a. the nicest b. nicest c. nicer d. nice

15. This computer is not .... expensive as that I bought yesterday.
a. most b. as c. less d. more

16. Zeinab is as .... as Rodayna. They are the same height.
a. long b. heavy c. high d. tall

○ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

William Shakespeare was born in the market town of Stratford-upon-Avon. It is said that he attended the local grammar school, where the principal subject taught was Latin. Nothing certain is known of what he did between the time he left school and his departure for London. Whatever caused him to leave the town of his birth, the world can be grateful that he did so. What is certain is that he set his foot on the road to fame when he arrived in London. It is said that at first he was without money or friends there, but after that he earned a little by taking care of the horses of the gentlemen who attended the plays at the theatre. In time, as he became a familiar figure to the actors in the theatre, they stopped and spoke to him.

They found his conversation so **brilliant** that finally he was invited to join their company. By 1592, he became one of the three leading members of a company of actors called the Lord Chamberlain's Men. This company was under the protection of the Queen's Court. From what we know of his later life, it is clear that Shakespeare's connection with the theatre made him a wealthy man, since his plays attracted large audiences and he shared in the profits.

Towards the beginning of the seventeenth century, not less than eleven of his plays were produced. These included the great tragedies; "Othello", "Macbeth" and "King Lear". His last work was "The Tempest".

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The main idea of the passage is ....
    a. Shakespeare had a difficult early life but later achieved great success.
    b. Shakespeare was born into a wealthy family.
    c. Shakespeare admired the theatre at his early life.
    d. Shakespeare won many awards for his plays.

18. The last paragraph means that shakespeare ....
    a. produced more than eleven plays.
    b. produced only Othello, Macbeth and King Lear.
    c. wrote less than eleven plays.
    d. wrote the tempest only to begin with.

19. According to the passage, we can understand that the word "**brilliant**" means ....
    a. boring b. wonderful c. annoying d. illuminated

20. The passage gives us a good lesson that it is better to ....
    a. look after horses b. talk to actors
    c. endure hardships or obstacles d. be a wealthy man

21. Why do you think the actors at the theatre invited Shakespeare to join their company?
    a. Because his plays were wonderful.
    b. Because he spoke magnificently.
    c. He looked after their horses.
    d. To watch their plays for money.

22. According to the passage, the reason that made Shakespeare left his town was ....
    a. unknown b. studying Latin
    c. watching plays d. being homeless

23. Why did Shakespeare look after the gentlemen's horses when he first arrived in London?
    a. To help them. b. To earn money.
    c. To let him act with them. d. To have conversation with them.

24. According the passage, Shakespeare's plays were ....
    a. more attractive to the audience
    b. less interesting than his poems
    c. more interesting than his novels
    d. less attractive than other writers' works

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Man's life has been subject to a lot of changes during the last hundred years, particularly in what is connected with his consuming habits. Sixty years ago, before the start of the consumer societies of today's world, people did not throw away so many of the things they used. They used and re-used bottles, jars, cardboard boxes, paper bags, etc much more carefully than we do today. Now, more than fifty years later, we are returning to the same good idea which we now call "recycling".

We can again think about what we throw out. Why do we throw away so much food packaging, so many plastic supermarket bags, old newspapers, old books, bottles and cans? What is all this rubbish doing to our environment, to the world we live in? Can't we use some of it again? The answer is: yes, we can.

New industries, recycling industries, are starting to re-use some of our rubbish. For example, the island of Taiwan now buys waste paper from the USA. and recycles it to make newspapers, and for use in offices and homes. Japan takes scrap metal from the USA and makes some new parts with it. Most European and American cities now have "recycling centers" for people's old bottles and newspapers.

All this recycling is not only good for the environment, but it is good business, too. For instance, a recycled aluminium container is 20% cheaper to make than a new one. For both the environment and the economy, recycling makes very good sense.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The best title for this passage is ....
    a. The pros and cons of recycling
    b. An old habit people need nowadays
    c. Recycling harms the environment
    d. A bad habit to get rid of

26. The second paragraph represents ....
    a. the idea of recycling
    b. the supermarket bags
    c. our environment
    d. food packaging

27. What "change" does the writer refer to in the first paragraph?
   a. People throw many things all the time.
   b. People became wasteful than before.
   c. People began to recycle old things again.
   d. People refuse consuming habits.

28. The main idea of the last paragraph is ....
   a. The benefits of recycling are for people only.
   b. The benefits of recycling are for the environment only.
   c. Recycling has benefits for neither people nor the environment.
   d. Recycling has benefits for both people and the environment.

29. Without recycling, people will ....
   a. suffer from more environmental problems
   b. solve all the environmental issues
   c. decrease industrial products
   d. increase their good habits

30. What is the writer's evaluation about consuming habits ?
   a. He likes to decrease them.
   b. He hates to decrease them.
   c. He likes to throw away what we don't need.
   d. He hates to collect rubbish.

31. Our grandparents were .... than we are today.
   a. less careful b. more careless
   c. more economical d. less wise

32. Recycling our rubbish means ....
   a. throwing it away b. keeping it
   c. encircling it d. using it again

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Many great inventions are initially received with ridicule and disbelief but finally became great.

تم استقبال العديد من الاختراعات العظيمة في البداية بالسخرية والانكار لكنها في النهاية أصبحت عظيمة.

تم مواجهة العديد من الاختراعات التافهة في البداية بالسخرية والانكار لكنها في النهاية أصبحت كبيرة.

تم استقبال الاختراعات الكثيرة و العظيمة في النهاية بالسخرية والاعتقاد رغم انها في البداية كانت عظيمة.

تم الترحيب بالعديد من الدعوات العظيمة في البداية بالسخرية والرفض رغم انها في النهاية أصبحت عظيمة.

34. Sports reinforce important values in society, like honest competition and teamwork. "There is no I in TEAM" is a good sports saying.

أ. تساند الرياضة قيم مهمة فى المجتمع مثل المناقشة الأمينة والعمل الجماعى. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول "لا يوجد أنا فى فريق".

ب. تدعم الرياضة أشياء سمينة فى المجتمع مثل المنافسة الشريفة والعمل الجماعى. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول "لا يوجد أنا والفريق".

ج. ترسخ الرياضة قيم مهمة فى المجتمع مثل المنافسة الأمنة والعمل الجماعى. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول "لا يوجد أنا فى فريق".

د. تدعم الرياضة قيم مهمة فى المجتمع مثل المنافسة الشريفة والعمل الجماعى. فهناك مقولة رياضية جيدة تقول "لا يوجد أنا فى فريق".

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. يجب علينا أن ننشىء الأطفال على الثقة بالنفس والوطنية وإحترام الأخرين. ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين مفيدين لأوطانهم فى المستقبل.

a. We should bring our children up on self-tolerance, terrorism and respecting other people. To be good citizens useful to their countries in the future.

b. We should bring our children up on self-confidence, optimism and respecting other people. To be good citizens useful to their countries in the future.

c. We should bring up our children on self-confidence, patriotism and respecting other people. To be as good citizens useful to their countries in the future.

d. We should bring up our children on self-confidence, patriotism and suspecting other people. To be good citizens useful to their countries on the future.

٣٦. المعلم القدوة يمثل مصدر إلهام لطلابه ، فهو يغرس فيهم القيم والإيجابية بشكل غير مباشر، لذا من الضرورى الاعتناء به ماديًا وعلميًا.

a. The role-model teacher was a source of inspiration for his/her students. He planted the values and positiveness directly in them, so it is a must to look for him financially and scientifically.

b. The role-model teacher is a source of inspiration for his/her students. He implants the values and positiveness indirectly in them, so it is a must to look after him financially and scientifically.

c. The role-model teacher is a source of depression for his/her students. He implants the values and positively direct in them, so it is a must to look up him financially and scientifically.

d. The rule-model teacher is a source of inspiration for his/her students. He implants the values and positiveness directly in them, so it is a must to look after him financially and scientific.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. The main purpose of a/an .... essay is to describe your point of focus in a vivid and particular manner, so that readers can easily picture the described object, person, or state in their mind. *(LM)*
    a. narrative b. formal c. argumentative d. descriptive

38. A narrative essay ....
    a. recounts an يسرد incident or experience that either you or others have experienced.
    b. requires you to investigate an idea, evaluate evidence, and set forth an argument concerning that idea in a clear and concise manner
    c. is a form of academic writing in which you argue for a point or an opinion you support clearly.
    d. is a form of academic writing that is built around a detailed description of a person, building, place, situation, notion, etc.

39. The following is part of a/an .... essay. *(LM)*
    a. descriptive b. narrative c. persuasive d. argumentative

    The Rod El Farag Axis Bridge is one of Cairo's most modern architectural projects. It is a cable-stayed bridge that connects Cairo to Rod El Farag across the Nile River. It was built by a very large construction business. With a width of 67.3 metres, the bridge holds the Guinness World Record for the world's widest cable-stayed bridge. It's a practical bridge as well as a lovely sight to behold. *(LM)*

40. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*
    a. Amani said "What a wonderful surprise. It's nice to see you here, Adel."
    b. Amani said, "what a wonderful surprise! It's nice to see you here, Adel.
    c. Amani said, "What a wonderful surprise! It's nice to see you here, Adel."
    d. Amani said, "What a wonderful surprise It s nice to see you here, Adel.

Answers of Test on unit 2

اسم الطالب (رباعياً) : ....

•تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1.	a	b	c	d	21.	a	b	c	d
2.	a	b	c	d	22.	a	b	c	d
3.	a	b	c	d	23.	a	b	c	d
4.	a	b	c	d	24.	a	b	c	d
5.	a	b	c	d	25.	a	b	c	d
6.	a	b	c	d	26.	a	b	c	d
7.	a	b	c	d	27.	a	b	c	d
8.	a	b	c	d	28.	a	b	c	d
9.	a	b	c	d	29.	a	b	c	d
10.	a	b	c	d	30.	a	b	c	d
11.	a	b	c	d	31.	a	b	c	d
12.	a	b	c	d	32.	a	b	c	d
13.	a	b	c	d	33.	د	ج	ب	أ
14.	a	b	c	d	34.	د	ج	ب	أ
15.	a	b	c	d	35.	a	b	c	d
16.	a	b	c	d	36.	a	b	c	d
17.	a	b	c	d	37.	a	b	c	d
18.	a	b	c	d	38.	a	b	c	d
19.	a	b	c	d	39.	a	b	c	d
20.	a	b	c	d	40.	a	b	c	d

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 2



1. Finish the following dialogue :

Hussein and Ibrahim are talking about the weekend.

Hussein : I'm planning to spend the weekend outdoors,
(1) .... ?

Ibrahim : Hey, that's terrific.

Hussein : (2) .... ?

Ibrahim : I suggest visiting our uncle in the countryside.

Hussein : (3) .... ?

Ibrahim : (4) ....

Hussein : But this is not the harvest season. And don't forget the long drive to the countryside.

Ibrahim : You are right.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Doctors and their efforts during coronavirus pandemic"

....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- You will never feel truly satisfied by work until you are satisfied with your life.

....

4. Translate into English :

- المرأة الذكية المتعلمة أفضل كثيرًا من تلك التى لا تعرف قيمتها الحقيقية.

....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections)

- What saved Omar from polytheism ? (القاهرة - أدبي ٢٠٢١م)

....

12. Many young people have sadly been ………… to online games.
   a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial

13. I used my ruler to ………… the width of my bedroom door.
   a. involve b. measure c. last d. recycle

14. The price of an object ………… on its quality and the demand on it.
   a. handles b. swaps c. depends d. evolves

15. Facing terrorism is one of our key social ………… .
   a. issues b. drugs c. apps d. sensors

16. Don't be tricked by the ………… smile on her face.
   a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial

17. The success you have achieved is due to the great ………… .
   a. experiment b. robot c. organisation d. warning

18. Use your ………… in making the right decision. Don't depend on luck.
   a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity

19. It is the role of the police to enforce ………… in the society.
   a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery

20. Our small shop has gradually ………… into a big mall.
   a. handled b. swapped c. depended d. evolved

21. ………… does not cause any harm to the environment.
   a. Benefit b. Process
   c. Green technology d. Cyberbullying

22. Being a manager usually ………… working longer hours.
   a. involves b. measures c. lasts d. recycles

23. Is there a mobile ………… that can measure blood pressure accurately?
   a. issue b. drug c. app d. sensor

24. I always ………… paragraphs with my classmates to check each other's work.
   a. handle b. swap c. depend d. evolve

25. Fire alarms give ………… when there's a fire.
   a. dishwasher b. robot c. organisation d. warning

26. It is better for the environment if old plastic, glass, paper and metals are ………… .
   a. involved b. measured c. lasted d. recycled







New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

PART ONE

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات

للصف الثالث الثانوى
عـــام – أزهـــرى
الفصل الدراسى الأول



3rd Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM



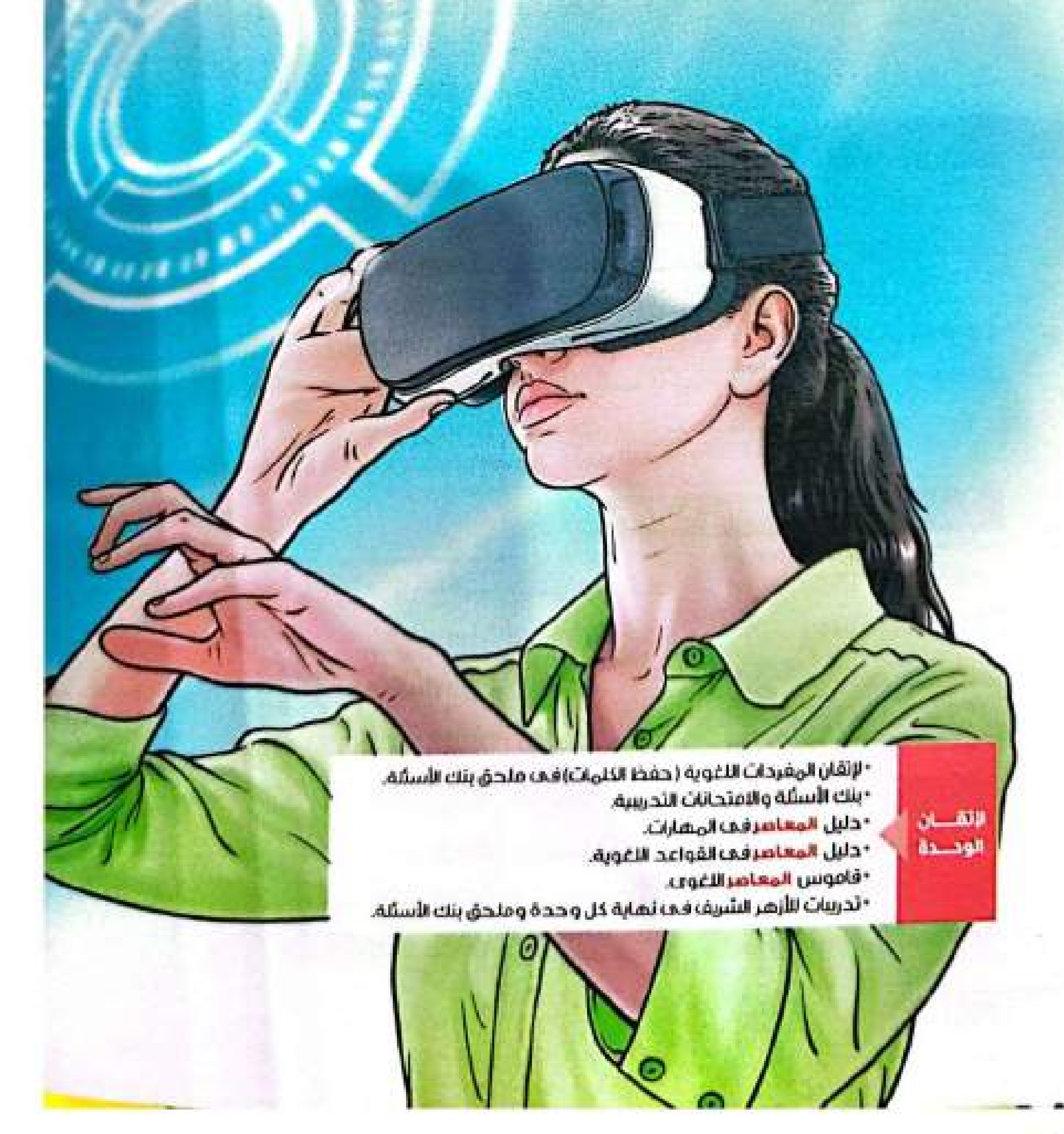
By: Sawsan Kamel

UNIT
3 Beyond imagination

SB pages 26 : 35 WB pages 14 : 19

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  A scientific text
- **Writing :**
  Online comments about the impact of technology; An argumentative essay about green technology
- **Listening :**
  A discussion about innovations in medicine
- **Speaking :**
  Making predictions about the future of technology
- **Language :**
  Future tenses; present perfect for future use
- **Life skills :**
  Problem solving; Critical thinking



لإتقان الوحدة

•لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) فى ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
•بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
•دليل المعاصر فى المهارات.
•دليل المعاصر فى القواعد اللغوية.
•قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.
•تدريبات للأزهر الشريف فى نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.

LESSONS 1 & 2

SB pages 26 : 29 WB pages 14 & 15



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
approach(ed) (n/v)	نَهْج/ تَوَجُّه - يدنو من	planet(n)	كوكب
astronaut(n)	رائد فضاء	process(n)	عملية/نظام
astronomer(n)	عالم فلك	solar system(n)	النظام الشمسي
experiment(ed) (v/n)	يُجري تجربة /يُجرِّب - تجربة	spacecraft(n)	سفينة فضاء
immerse(d) (v)	يُبهر - يَدمج - يَغمُر	speaker(n)	سماعة - مُتحدِّث
immersive(adj)	مُبهر- شديد الجاذبية	spectacular(adj)	رائع - مبهر
implement(ed) (v)	يُطبِّق/يُنفِّذ	spectacularly(adv)	بإبهار/بشكل مدهش
inconvenient(adj)	غير ملائم	surface(n)	سطح
innovation(n)	الابتكار/الإبداع / اختراع	surround sound (n/adj)	الصوت المُجسَّم - ذو صوت مُجسَّم
innovative(adj)	ابتكاريّ/ إبداعيّ	surround(ed) (v)	يحيط بـ/يكتنف
mass-produced(adj)	مُنتَج آليًا بكميات كبيرة	universe(n)	الكون

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
adapt(ed) (v)	يتغير - يتكيف	liquid(n/adj)	سائل
advance(d) (v)	تَقَدُّم/تَطَوُّر - يتقدَّم	Mars(n)	كوكب المريخ
advert(n)	اعلان	Martian(n/adj)	مّريخى (من المريخ)
application(n)	تطبيق حاسوبي	minus(prep)	ناقص/سالب
audience(n)	الجمهور	once(conj.)	بمجرد أن
average(n)	متوسط/مُعدَّل	packaging(n)	التغليف / التعبئة
basic(adj)	أساسي	paper-thin(adj)	في سماكة الورقة
beyond(adv/prep)	وراء/أبعد من	permanent(adj)	دائم

English	Arabic
competitive(adj)	تنافُسي
conquer(ed) (v)	يغزو - يتغلب على
constantly(adv)	باستمرار - بمعدل ثابت
cost - cost (n/v)	التكلفة - يتكلف
curious(adj)	فضولي/مُتطفِّل
essential(adj)	ضروري/جوهري
evidence(n)	دليل
exist(ed) (v)	يوجد
expand(ed) (v)	يتوسع/يتمدد
experience(d) (n/v)	تجربة حياتية/معايشة - يعايش - يواجه
explore(d) (v)	يستكشف
extreme(adj)	شديد/مُتطرِّف (في الارتفاع والانخفاض)
falcon(n)	الصقر
Fantasound(n)	نظام صوت مُجسَّم
favourites(n)	الأشياء المُفضَّلة
flat(adj)	مُسَطَّح/مستوٍ
forms(n)	أشكال/صور
hidden (adj)	مَخفي/ مُخبأ
high-tech(adj)	ذو تقنية عالية
hopefully(adv)	بشكل مُبشِّر/متوقع
illustrated(adj)	مُصَوَّر/موضَّح بالصور
invent(ed) (v)	يخترع
invention(n)	اختراع
Jupiter(n)	كوكب المشتري
land(ed) (v)	تهبط
lie(d) (v)	يقع/يوجد

English	Arabic
potentially(adv)	بشكل مُتوَقَّع/مُحتَمَل
powerful(adj)	قوي
practical(adj)	عملي
printing (n)	الطباعة
provide(d) (v)	يوفِّر
queue(n)	طابور
require(d) (v)	يتطلب/يستلزم
robo-bird(n)	الطائر الآلي
robot(n)	آلي
robotic(adj)	آلي/ روبوتي
roll(n)	لفافة/ بكرة
Saturn(n)	كوكب زُحَل
scare(d) (v)	يُخيف/يُفزع
search(ed) (v/n)	يبحث/يفتش - عملية بحث
sew - sewed - sewn (v)	يخيط
sheet(n)	صفحة - ورقة
support(ed) (v/n)	يدعم - الدعم
suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
survive(ed) (v)	ينجو/يبقى حياً
3D = three dimensional(adj)	ثلاثي الأبعاد
tin(n)	علبة صفيح
trainers(n)	حذاء رياضي
T-ring(n)	نظام صوتي ورقي دائري
tutor(n)	مُعلِّم
visuals(n)	مؤثرات بصرية - مرئيات
wings(n)	أجنحة



3 Definitions تعريفات

approach(n) نَهج/ تَوَجُّه	a way of viewing or doing something
astronaut(n) رائد فضاء	someone who travels and works in a spacecraft
astronomer(n) عالم فلك	a scientist who studies the stars and planets
experiment(ed)(v) يُجري تجربة /يُجرِّب	to use scientific methods طُرق to find something out or discover something
immerse(d)(v) يُبهر/ينغمس في	- to become or make somebody completely involved in something - involve يَنهمك/ يُورِّط yourself deeply in (SB)
implement(ed)(v) يُطبِّق/يُنفِّذ	to start using a system
inconvenient(adj) غير ملائم	causing difficulty or problems
innovation(n) الابتكار/الإبداع / اختراع	- the introduction of new ideas or methods - a new idea, method, or invention
mass-produced(adj) مُنتَج آليًا بكميات كبيرة	made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine
planet(n) كوكب	a very large round object in space that moves around the sun or another star
process(n) عملية/نظام	a method of producing something
solar system(n) النظام الشمسي	the sun and the planets that go around it
spacecraft(n) سفينة فضاء	a vehicle مَركَبَة that is able to travel in space
speaker(n) سماعة	a device جهاز through which sound is heard
spectacularly(adv) بإبهار/بشكل مدهش	- in an extremely good, exciting or surprising way - in a very impressive مُبهِر way
surface(n) سطح	the outside or top layer طبقة of something
surround(v) يحيط بـ	to be all around (someone or something)

surround sound(n) الصوت المُجسّم	a system of four or more speakers used so that sounds from a film or television programme come from all directions
universe(n) الكون	all space, including all the stars and planets

Exercise On Vocabulary



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. Our new villa is .... by a large garden. *(LM)*
   a. surrounded b. appeared c. separated d. disappeared
2. Some people believe that .... on animals is cruel behaviour. *(LM)*
   a. running b. feeding c. experimenting d. implementing
3. She usually works hard; she .... herself in her work. *(LM)*
   a. avoids b. immerses c. imagines d. frees
4. The manager wants to .... the new safety procedures inside the factory. *(LM)*
   a. carry b. appear c. avoid d. implement
5. Photosynthesis is the .... by which green plants and other certain organisms transform light energy into chemical energy. *(LM)*
   a. process b. operation c. industry d. mechanism
6. The Ministry of Education has been trying to support different .... to digital learning. *(LM)*
   a. operations b. approaches c. obstacles d. difficulties
7. It is impolite to telephone others at .... times. *(LM)*
   a. accurate b. proper
   c. inconvenient d. inconveniently
8. It had been a .... successful year; I had the opportunity to achieve all my dreams. *(LM)*
   a. terrible b. spectacular c. terribly d. spectacularly
9. There is now a large selection of portable Bluetooth .... available on Amazon in Egypt. *(LM)*
   a. thinkers b. speakers c. listeners d. writers

10. The .... system consists of the Sun and the planets that orbit it. (LM,

a. outer b. geothermal c. lunar d. solar

11. There are extinct volcanoes, impact craters, and lava flows on the moon's .... (LM,

a. surface b. top c. depth d. width

12. Galileo Galilei was the first .... to investigate the surface of Mars. (LM,

a. astrologer b. astronaut c. astronomer d. artist

13. In the past, a lot of people thought that the Sun was a/an .... (LM,

a. planet b. plant c. desert d. ocean

14. The .... is no longer mysterious thanks to scientists who have clarified the world to us. (LM,

a. plant b. island c. desert d. universe

15. A .... is a vehicle or machine that is intended to travel through space. (LM,

a. spaceward b. spacecraft c. train d. bus

16. Since the landing of Apollo 11 in 1969, twelve .... have walked on the Moon. (LM

a. astrologers b. astronauts c. astronomers d. artists

17. Japanese cars are .... to meet the big demand of the international market.

a. immersive b. mass-produced

c. innovative d. inconvenient

18. As a composer, مُلحن Baleigh Hamdy was one of the great .... of music.

a. astronomers b. astronauts c. innovators d. speakers

19. We will solve our economic problems only if we encourage .... in industry, especially in modern technology.

a. advice b. application c. innovation d. T-ring

20. El-Moasser always .... new educational methods.

a. surrounds b. innovates c. exists d. immerses

21. Some online games are so .... that you feel as if you are actually taking part in it.

a. immersive b. mass-produced

c. surrounded d. inconvenient

22. .... requires at least three speakers.
   a. Innovation
   b. 3-D
   c. Solar system
   d. Surround sound

23. Today, some manufacturers use robots to mass .... goods to increase sales and achieve higher profits. *(LM)*
   a. use
   b. reduce
   c. produce
   d. replace

2 Important vocabulary

24. This man earns an .... of 6,000 pounds a month.
   a. approach
   b. advert
   c. average
   d. evidence

25. Dinosaurs .... on earth millions of years ago.
   a. existed
   b. conquered
   c. experimented
   d. experienced

26. .... speakers are the latest trend in surround-sound technology.
   a. Advance
   b. Application
   c. Innovation
   d. T-ring

27. Like most children, I enjoyed .... stories.
   a. illustrated
   b. imageless
   c. paper-thin
   d. permanent

28. This shop sells high-quality clothes at .... prices.
   a. curious
   b. competitive
   c. essential
   d. flat

29. You are lucky to .... this violent accident.
   a. survive
   b. require
   c. expand
   d. surround

30. There's much .... that this man is the thief who has broken into your house.
   a. approach
   b. advert
   c. average
   d. evidence

31. You need to .... your fear of exams. It is something negative.
   a. exist
   b. conquer
   c. experiment
   d. experience

32. He ate just a/an .... slice of meat.
   a. illustrated
   b. visual
   c. paper-thin
   d. permanent

33. It is the dream of mankind to .... into space.
   a. survive
   b. require
   c. expand
   d. surround

34. Water is .... for life.
   a. curious
   b. competitive
   c. essential
   d. flat

35. T-rings have made audio .... possible.
   a. approaches
   b. adverts
   c. averages
   d. evidences

36. Let your children .... things to learn how to depend on themselves.
   a. exist   b. conquer   c. dig   d. experience

37. WhatsApp is a digital communication ....
   a. advance   b. application   c. innovation   d. T-ring

38. The accident left a/an .... scar أثر جرح in my skin.
   a. illustrated   b. audio   c. paper-thin   d. permanent

39. 3-D is short for three ....
   a. directions   b. DVDs   c. dimensional   d. Dolby

40. It is natural that children are .... They just want to know.
   a. curious   b. competitive   c. essential   d. flat

41. "Children take liquid medicine". In this sentence, 'liquid' is a/an ....
   a. conjunction   b. noun   c. adjective   d. adverb

42. This heavy box .... at least three strong young people to carry it upstairs.
   a. survives   b. requires   c. expands   d. surrounds

43. The introduction of computers was one of the best .... of the 20th century.
   a. advances   b. systems   c. events   d. T-rings

44. I hope 2024 will .... be a better year for the whole world.
   a. spectacularly   b. unfortunately   c. hopefully   d. a & c

45. The floor is supposed to be ...., not sloping.
   a. competitive   b. flat   c. essential   d. curious

46. "I'll call you once I've known anything". In this sentence, 'once' is a/an ....
   a. conjunction   b. noun   c. adjective   d. adverb

3 Definitions

47. To .... is to start using a system.
   a. experiment   b. surround   c. implement   d. immerse

48. .... means in an extremely good, exciting or surprising way.
   a. Extremely   b. Hopefully   c. Potentially   d. Spectacularly

49. A ………… is the outside or top layer of something.
a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system

50. A/An………… is a way of viewing or doing something.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation

51. ………… means causing difficulty or problems.
a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient
c. Mass-produced d. Essential

52. To ………… is to be all round someone or something.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse

53. The ………… is the Sun and the planets that go around it.
a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system

54. A/An ………… is a method of producing something.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation

55. A/An ………… is someone who travels and works in a spacecraft.
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. extremist

56. To ………… is to use scientific methods to find something out or discover something.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse

57. The ………… is all space, including all the stars and planets.
a. spacecraft b. planet c. universe d. solar system

58. A/An ………… is a vehicle that is able to travel in space.
a. spacecraft b. approach c. process d. innovation

59. A/An ………… is a device through which sound is heard.
a. astronomer b. astronaut c. speaker d. extremist

60. To ………… is to become or make somebody completely involved in something.
a. experiment b. surround c. implement d. immerse

61. A ………… is a very large round object in space that moves around the Sun or another star.
a. surface b. planet c. universe d. solar system

62. ………… means made cheaply and in large numbers with a machine.
a. Illustrated b. Inconvenient
c. Mass-produced d. Essential

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

be	immersed in ينديج في	invent	a technology يخترع وسيلة تكنولوجية
become	practical يصبح عمليًا	look	real يبدو حقيقيًا
develop	a new approach يُطوِّر نهجًا جديدًا	lose	attention يفقد الانتباه / يتشتت
	a printing process يُطور طريقة طباعة	make	a film يُنتج فيلم
do	an experiment يُجري تجربة		noise يُحدث ضجيجًا
get	a job يحصل علي وظيفة	pass	a driving test يجتاز اختبار القيادة
	bored يمل	play	music يعزف موسيقى
go	back يعود/يرجع للوراء	survive	extreme temperatures يبقى حيًا في ظل درجات الحرارة القاسية
	down ينخفض - يهبط	take	a different approach يتخذ نهجا مختلفا
introduce	a technology يُقدِّم تكنولوجيا	immerse	the audience يستحوذ على الجمهور

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Ashraf has .... a new approach in teaching his students how to be good listeners.
   a. immersed b. developed c. survived d. looked
2. The experiments Professor Albert .... aim to find a powerful vaccine against coronavirus.
   a. takes b. plays c. makes d. does
3. It is not that easy .... a good full-time job unless you are highly qualified and skilled.
   a. doing b. getting c. introducing d. playing
4. 3-D technology .... the audience more in the film experience.
   a. immerses b. develops c. survives d. looks

5. The film they are currently .... is an action one.
   a. taking b. playing c. making d. doing
6. A team of scientists have .... a new sound technology.
   a. done b. immersed c. introduced d. played
7. Surround sound makes films .... real.
   a. immerse b. develop c. survive d. look
8. He is .... a different approach to that of most scientists.
   a. taking b. playing c. making d. doing
9. Mr Ammar taught us how to .... music.
   a. do b. get c. introduce d. play

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
approach (n)	نَهج/ تَوَجُّه	attitude/ method
approach (v)	يدنو من	go nearer/come nearer
approach (n)	طلب	proposal
competitive(adj)	تنافسى	ambitious - competing - contentious
conquer (v)	يهزم	defeat/beat
conquer (v)	يغزو	occupy/seize
conquer (v)	يتغلب على	overcome
immerse (v)	يغمُر (فى سائل)	submerge/sink/soak
immerse (v)	ينغمس فى/ينشغل تمامًا بـ	involve
implement (v)	يُطبّق/يُنفّذ	execute/apply/ carry out
implement (n)	أداة	tool/gadget
innovative(adj)	ابتِكارىّ/ إبداعىّ	innovatory/advanced
support (v)	يدعم/يؤيد/يساند	back (up)

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
competitive(adj)	تنافُسي	uncompetitive	ليس على قدر المنافسة
approach (v)	يدنو من	leave	يغادر/يفارق
conquer (v)	يهزم	lose to	ينهزم من
conquer (v)	يغزو	liberate	يُحرّر
conquer (v)	يتغلب على	yield to/ give up to	يستسلم لـ

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We backed her up when she complained about working conditions. This means we .... her. (LM)
   a. ignored b. supported c. punished d. rewarded
2. "I'm currently following a new approach to solve my problems". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of ....
   a. leave b. go near c. attitude d. proposal
3. "She warned me not to approach that large dog". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of ....
   a. leave b. go near c. attitude d. proposal
4. "You need to conquer your hesitation التردد". In this sentence, the antonym of 'conquer' is ....
   a. overcome b. beat c. defeat d. yield to
5. .... is to 'leave' as 'conquer' is to 'give up'.
   a. Approach b. Immerse c. Implement d. Innovate

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
approach يدنو من/يقترب - يطلُب	approach نَهج/طريقة - طَلَب - مَدخَل - اقتراب	approachable ودود/ليِّن الجانب	
experiment يُجري تجربة/يُجرِّب	experiment تجربة experimentation التجريب/ إجراء التجارب experimenter مُجرِّب، مُختَبِر	experimental تجريبي	experimentally بشكل تجريبي
immerse يغمر (فى سائل) - يندمج/ينغمس في - يستحوذ على/يُبهر	immersion غَمْر فى سائل - انغماس في	immersed منغمس فى- مندمج/ مُنبهر immersive مُبهِر/شديد الجاذبية	

implement يُطبّق/يُنفّذ	implement أداة implementation التنفيذ/التطبيق		
mass-produce يُنتج آليًا بالجملة	mass-production إنتاج آلي بالجملة	mass-produced مُنتَج آليًا بالجملة	
surround يحيط بـ/يكتنف - يُحاصِر- يتعلق بـ	surroundings البيئة المحيطة - الجوار	surrounding = nearby قريب/مُجاور	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This medical laboratory .... coronavirus vaccines.
   a. mass-produce
   b. mass-produces
   c. mass-producing
   d. mass-production
2. Most .... goods are exported to Arab-Gulf Countries.
   a. mass-produce
   b. mass-produces
   c. mass-produced
   d. mass-production
3. .... is what makes China a giant economical power.
   a. Mass-produce
   b. Mass-produces
   c. Mass-produced
   d. Mass-production
4. Professor Jones .... on this virus to find a vaccine against it.
   a. experiment
   b. experiments
   c. experimentation
   d. experimental
5. Professor Jones has conducted an .... on this virus to find a vaccine against it.
   a. experiment
   b. experiments
   c. experimentation
   d. experimental
6. Professor Jones has discovered an .... vaccine against this virus.
   a. experiment
   b. experiments
   c. experimentation
   d. experimental

7. Further .... is needed to verify يتحقق من the effectiveness فاعلية of this vaccine.
   a. experiment b. experiments
   c. experimentation d. experimental

8. An important part of the success of any plan is the ability to .... it.
   a. implement b. implementation
   c. surround d. surroundings

9. The .... of any plan is an important part of its success.
   a. implement b. implementation
   c. surround d. surroundings

10. 3-D technology still .... film viewers.
   a. immerses b. immersed c. immersive d. immersion

11. 3-D technology is still .... to film viewers.
   a. immerses b. immersed c. immersive d. immersion

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

Expression	Meaning
360-degree paper speaker	سماعة ورقية دائرية
after all	برغم كل شيء
all life forms	كل أشكال الحياة
at a competitive price	بسعر تنافسي (أقل من المنتجات المماثلة)
audio advertising	الإعلانات الصوتية
below freezing	تحت درجة التجمُّد
burning questions	أسئلة مُلحّة
curious teens	مراهقون فضوليون (متطفلون)
cut ... into pieces	يُقطِّع ... إلى أجزاء
cycle lane	حارة مخصصة للدراجات
even more real	أكثر واقعية
for sure	من المؤكد
go as far back as the 1930s	يعود تاريخها لثلاثينيات القرن العشرين
go on sale	يتم عرضه للبيع
go through a process	يخضع لعملية/لمعالجة
in 3-D	...ثلاثي الأبعاد
in the shape of	...لى شكل
It wasn't until	...ليس قبل
it's likely that	...ن المحتمل أن
most likely to	...ن المرجح أن
on a big/large scale	...لى نطاق واسع
on average	...ي المتوسط
on display	...معروض
one sheet at a time	...رقة واحدة في المرة
paper-thin speakers	...ساعات في سُمك الورقة
public transport	...لمواصلات العامة
science fiction films	...فلام الخيال العلمي
shortly after	...عد فترة قصيرة من
so far under the surface	...سحيق جدًا تحت السطح
surrounded by	...محاط بـ
young people	...الشباب

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

allow ... to	يتيح لـ ... أن	get on	يركب
chase away	يطارد - يطرد	immerse ... into	يستحوذ على انتباه ... في
come up	يتصاعد	lend ... to	يُقرض ... لـ
dig into	يحفر / يُنقِّب في	look like	يشبه
email ... at	يبعث لـ ... بريد الكتروني على (عنوان)	search for	يبحث عن
expand into	يتمدد / يتوسع في	take off	تُقلع الطائرة - ينزع
experiment with/in/on	يجري تجربة على - يحاول القيام بـ	turn ... into	يُحوِّل ... إلي
get ... to	يُوصِّل ... إلي		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I invited 300 people to my sister's wedding. The party was on .... *(LM)*
   a. the whole b. balance c. the other hand d. a large scale
2. Last night, I watched a film .... 3-D.
   a. on b. for c. in d. of
3. Do you think it is right to let your son experiment .... different hair-cuts?
   a. with b. of c. from d. about
4. The beginning of television in Egypt goes as .... back as the 1960s.
   a. young b. old c. long d. far
5. The visuals have immersed the viewers .... the film.
   a. on b. into c. of d. up
6. .... temperatures are either very high or very low.
   a. Extreme b. Hot c. Cold d. Freezing
7. This type of mobiles is sold............ a competitive price on our website.
   a. off b. on c. at d. from
8. .... average, I drink three coffees a day.
   a. With b. At c. Of d. On
9. A T-ring is a 360-............ paper speaker.
   a. a degree b. degree c. degrees d. degrees'
10. "I have a .... question". This means I have a question I need very much to get an answer to.
    a. freezing b. frozen c. burning d. burnt

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

T-ring = T-paper

- **What is a T-ring (T-paper)?**
  - It is a type of speakers made from 90 percent conventional paper, which can be printed on either side in colour, and weighs just 150 g. In a T-Ring, an almost four-meter-long track with 56 loudspeakers is connected to form seven segments and shaped into a circle, making a 360-degree surround sound installation possible.

إنه نوع من السماعات مصنوع من ورق تقليدي بنسبة ٩٠ فى المائة، ويمكن طباعته على كلا الجانبين بالألوان ويزن ١٥٠ جرامًا فقط، وفيه يتم توصيل مسار يبلغ طوله أربعة أمتار تقريبًا مع ٥٦ مكبر صوت لتشكيل سبعة أجزاء و دمجها فى دائرة، مما يجعل تركيب الصوت المحيط بزاوية ٣٦٠ درجة ممكنًا.

process - operation

عملية (سلسلة من الخطوات التي تتم للوصول لنتيجة معينة)

- **process**
  - The teaching process needs experience and patience.
  - The Palestinian -Israeli peace process hasn't been achieved yet.

عملية (سلسلة من الأشياء التي تحدث طبيعيًا وتؤدي لتغير تدريجي)

- **process**
  - The digestive الهضم process helps the body get the nutrients الغذا it needs.

عملية (جراحية)

- **operation**
  - The operation was successful and my uncle got better.

تشغيل أو إدارة

- **operation**
  - The operation of the machines needs a lot of energy.

invention - innovation

Invention	Innovation
- Invention is the act of creating, designing or discovering a device, method, process, that has not existed before.	- It is the implementation of the idea for a product or process for the very first time.
- الاختراع هو عملية إنشاء، أو تصميم أو اكتشاف جهاز أو طريقة أو عملية لم تكن موجودة من قبل.	- الإبتكار هو تنفيذ فكرة منتج أو عملية لأول مرة.

- The invention is related to the creation of new product. - يتعلق الاختراع بإيجاد منتج جديد.	- Innovation means adding value or making a change in the existing product. - الابتكار يعني إضافة قيمة أو إجراء تغيير فى المنتج الحالى.
- The invention is coming up with a fresh idea and how it works in theory. - يأتى الاختراع بفكرة جديدة وكيف تعمل من الناحية النظرية.	- Innovation is all about practical implementation of the new idea. - الابتكار هو التنفيذ العملى للفكرة الجديدة.
- The invention requires scientific skills. - الاختراع يتطلب مهارات علمية.	- Innovation requires a broad set of marketing, technical and strategic skills. - يتطلب الابتكار مجموعة واسعة من المهارات التسويقية والتقنية والتخطيطية.
- The invention is concerned with a single product or process. - يتعلق الاختراع بمنتج أو عملية واحدة.	- Innovation focuses on the combination of various products and services. - يركز الابتكار على دمج المنتجات المختلفة والخدمات.

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

approach

- **approach (to) (n)** طَلَب (لـ)
  - I made an approach to the manager of the company.
- **approach (n)** اقتراب/دُنُوّ
  - The children's approach frightened the birds.
- **approach (to) (n)** مَدْخَل (لـ) = access
  - There are three main approaches to the city.
- **approach (to) (n)** نَهْج/ تَوَجُّه / اسلوب (لـ/نحو)
  - Try to find a new approach to studying grammar.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- have an approach لديه توجُّه - take/adopt an approach يتبني نَهْجًا جديداً
- a traditional/conservative approach اسلوب تقليدي

• **approach (v)** يدنو من / يقترب (لـ)
- The dog slowly approached the little girl.

• **approach (for/about) (v)** يطلب (من)
- Rokaya approached her father for advice.

• **approach (v)** يتعامل مع/يواجه
- Try to approach the task in a different way.

• **approachable (adj)** ودود/لَيِّن الجانب ≠ unapproachable يَصعُب الوصول إليه
- Mr Helmi is very approachable.

experiment

• **experiment (with/on/in) (v), (n)** يُجرِّب - يُجرى تجارب/يختبر (على/فى) / تجربة علمية (على/ فى)
- New medicines are not experimented on humans. (يجرب)
- Scientists are doing experiments on a new medicine for cancer.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- do/carry out/perform/conduct an experiment يُجرِي تجربة
- an experiment shows/proves/demonstrates تثبت/توضِّح التجربة أن
- a field experiment تجربة ميدانية
- a practical experiment تجربة عملية
- an experiment to test/measure/find out تجربة لاختبار/لقياس/لاكتشاف

• **experimentation (with /in) (n)** التجريب - إجراء التجارب (على/فى)
- Experimentation with the online-exam system has achieved partial success.

• **experimenter (n)** مُجَرِّب، مُختَبِر
- The Experimenter has made a great discovery.

• **experimental (adj)** تجريبى
- Rats and rabbits are popular experimental animals.

immerse

- **immerse (in) (v)** يغمُر / يُغطِّس (في سائل)
  - I immersed the seeds in water for six hours before cooking them.
- **immerse (yourself) in (v)** ينغمس/ينشغل تمامًا بـ
  - I immersed myself in the job I was doing.
- **immerse ... in (v)** يستحوذ على انتباه/يدمج في/ يَخْلُب لُب
  - The director succeeded in immersing viewers in the film.
- **immersion (in) (n)** غَمْر/تغطيس في سائل
  - The immersion of my feet in warm water makes me feel better.
- **immersion (in) (n)** انغماس في/انشغال تام بـ
  - His strange behaviour is a result of his immersion in bad company. الصُحبَة
- **immersed (in) (adj)** منغمس في/مُنبهِر بـ
  - My son was immersed in the game he was playing.
- **immersive (adj)** مُبهِر/شديد الجاذبية
  - The new medicine has an immersive effect.

implement

- **implement (n)** أداة/آلة
  - Keep sharp implements away from children.
- **implement (v)** يُنفِّذ / يُطبِّق
  - The new law will be implemented on 1st July.
- **implementation (n)** تنفيذ / تطبيق
  - The implementation of the new law will be on 1st July.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- implement changes يُنفِّذ التغييرات
- implement policies يُنفِّذ السياسات
- implement decisions يُنفِّذ القرارات
- implement reforms يُنفِّذ إصلاحات

innovation

- **innovate (v)** يُبدِع/يبتكر
  - I'm sure you'll innovate in this job.

- **innovation (in) (n)** الإبداع (اسم غير معدود)
  - We live in the age of technological innovation.
- **innovation (in) (n)** اختراع/ابتكار/فكرة مُبتكرة (اسم معدود)
  - The smartphone and the internet are technological innovations.
- **innovator (of/in) (n)** مُبدِع/مُبتكِر
  - Mahfouz was an innovator in novel writing.
- **innovative/innovatory (adj)** إبداعي/ مُبتكَر
  - This is the most innovative design.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The thief found a/an .... to the villa through the terrace.
   a. evidence b. average c. process d. approach
2. .... is the introduction of new ideas or methods.
   a. Innovation b. An innovation c. Innovatory d. An innovator
3. .... is a new idea, method, or invention.
   a. Innovation b. An innovation c. An innovatory d. An innovator
4. Winners are always .... in their work. Losers, on the other hand, are always involved in fruitless arguments.
   a. immersed b. implemented c. innovated d. processed
5. Put the children in different situations and leave them to ....
   a. surround b. experiment c. require d. survive

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- الاسم (approach) هنا يعني (مَدخَل)
2.	a	- كلمة (innovation) بمعنى (الابتكار) اسم غير معدود لا يأخذ (an)
3.	b	- كلمة (innovation) بمعنى (اختراع/فكرة مبتكرة) اسم معدود يأخذ (an)
4.	a	- الصفة (immersed) هنا تعني (مُنشغِل تمامًا بـ)
5.	b	- كلمة (experiment) هنا تعني (يُجرِّب/يخوض التجربة)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 27)

'Surround sound'[1] is a system that uses 3 or more speakers[2] to make you feel like you are 'surrounded'[3] by sound. Surround sound experiments go as far back as the 1930s. In fact, the technology was first introduced in 1940 in the Walt Disney Film Fantasia, which used Fantasound[4]. This was a system designed to totally immerse[5] the audience[6] in the film like the visuals[7] did. Unfortunately, it was too expensive to implement[8] on a big scale[9], as Fantasound needed 54 speakers. It wasn't until 1975, with the invention[10] of Dolby Stereo, requiring[11] just four basic[12] speakers that 'surround sound' became practical[13].

It was used spectacularly[14] in the film Star Wars. True surround sound in the home, however, didn't arrive until 1982, with the introduction of Dolby Surround technology. But this still required four speakers, making it expensive and inconvenient[15].

Now, a whole new approach[16] has been developed by scientists at the Chemnitz University of Technology in Germany, which uses paper instead of speakers.

The team had experimented[17] before; in 2015, they created[18] an illustrated[19] book which had speakers hidden[20] inside the pages that made noises as readers turned them over. Now they have developed a printing process[21] which can print whole rolls[22] of the paper-thin[23]

Check Vocabulary

(1) الصوت المُجسّم
(2) سماعة
(3) مُحاط
(4) نظام صوت مُجسّم
(5) يُبهر
(6) الجمهور
(7) المؤثرات البصرية
(8) يُطبّق/يُنفّذ
(9) على نطاق واسع
(10) اختراع
(11) يتطلب/يستلزم
(12) أساسي
(13) عملى
(14) بشكل مدهش
(15) غير ملائم
(16) نَهج/ تَوجّه
(17) يُجري تجربة/يُجرّب
(18) يبتكر - يخلق
(19) مُصَوّر
(20) مَخفى/ مُخبأ
(21) طريقة طباعة
(22) لفافة/ بكرة
(23) في سماكة الورقة

speakers, rather than[24] one sheet[25] at a time. They have used this to make the T-ring[26], a 360-degree paper speaker, a sound experience[27] more immersive[28] than even a cinema, and can be potentially[29] mass-produced[30] at a competitive[31] price. Professor Hubler, from the University predicts that one major use of this new idea will be for audio advertising and packaging[32].

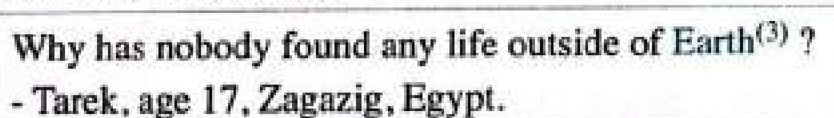
Imagine[33] the packaging on bottles and tins[34] playing music or adverts[35] for you.

(24) بدلاً من
(25) صفحة - ورقة
(26) مجسم صوتي ورقي دائري
(27) تجربة
(28) مُبهر
(29) مُتوقع/مُحتمَل
(30) مُنتج بكميات كبيرة
(31) تنافسي
(32) التغليف / التعبئة
(33) يتخيل
(34) علب صفيح
(35) إعلانات

(SB page 28)



Teens[1] Astronomers is a website for young people who are interested in finding out about the world they live in. If you have any burning questions[2], please email us at teenastronomers@theconversation.edu.au



Why has nobody found any life outside of Earth[3] ?
- Tarek, age 17, Zagazig, Egypt.

Thank you for your question, Tarek. Astronomers[4] like us are constantly[5] searching for[6] planets[7] which may support[8] human life, but they're not easy to find. To start with, it's likely that if such a planet exists[9], it will be outside our solar system[10]. Until we have invented[11] the technology to get us to these planets, we won't be able to study the conditions[12] there.

But we'll keep using the technology we have to find out what we can, until we have found some evidence[13].

One of the most important things is to find a planet with water, because it is essential[14] for all life forms[15].

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُراهقين
(2) سؤال مُلِحّ
(3) الأرض
(4) علماء فلك
(5) باستمرار
(6) يبحث/يفتش
(7) كواكب
(8) يدعم
(9) يوجد
(10) النظام الشمسي
(11) يخترع
(12) ظروف/أحوال
(13) دليل
(14) ضروري/جوهري
(15) أشكال/صور

Scientists recently discovered that there is permanent[16] liquid[17] water on Mars[18], which made a lot of people excited. After all[19], it is the closest planet to Earth. However, on average[20], the temperature[21] on Mars is about minus[22] 60 degrees[23] Celsius [24]. In winter, it can go down as low as 125 degrees below[25] freezing. When we've found a way for astronauts[26] to survive[27] these extreme[28] temperatures, they'll be able to spend enough time on the surface[29] of Mars to collect[30] useful data[31].

Mars is hopefully[32] just one step[33] into the universe[34]. Once[35] we've conquered[36] Mars, it will be easier to expand[37] into the universe beyond[38], with future advances[39] in space technology.

(16) دائم
(17) سائل
(18) كوكب المريخ
(19) برغم كل شيء
(20) متوسط/مُعدل
(21) درجة الحرارة
(22) ناقص/سالب
(23) درجة
(24) سلزيوس
(25) تحت/أقل من
(26) رائد فضاء
(27) ينجو/يبقى حيًا
(28) شديد/مُتطرِّف
(29) سطح
(30) يجمع
(31) بيانات
(32) بشكل مُبشِّر
(33) خطوة
(34) الكون
(35) بمجرد أن
(36) يغزو
(37) يتوسع/يتمدد
(38) وراء/أبعد من
(39) تقدُّم/تطوُّر

Technology in the cinema

(WB page 14)

When you watch a good film, it is easy to forget where you are. Technology, however, is making the film experience[1] even more real[2].



In the 1970s, a company called IMAX took a different approach[3]. Their films were shown on very large, tall screens[4]. Special speakers were put behind[5] the screen, which helped to make the sound better and louder. In addition, the films were made using a special process[6] which made the pictures look much more 'real'.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تجربة حياتية/ معايشة
(2) واقعي/حقيقي
(3) نَهج
(4) شاشة
(5) خلف/وراء
(6) عملية/نظام

The problem with these types of films was the cost[7]. They had to build special square[8] cinemas, because people needed to watch the film in seats[9] which all faced[10] the screen. You also needed special cameras and couldn't make films of more than an hour long. So these films were nearly all educational[11], often about nature. One of the most popular was about climbing Mount Everest and when you watched it, you really felt you were surrounded by snowy[12] mountains.

(7) التكلفة
(8) مُربع
(9) مقعد
(10) في مواجهة-يواجه
(11) تعليمي
(12) مغطى بالجليد/جليدي
(13) ثلاثي الأبعاد
(14) مُسطح/مستو
(15) يُبهر
(16) رائحة

Since 2000, however, similar technology has allowed traditional films to be made in the same way. These are mass-produced and shown in traditional cinemas.

As a result, many modern films sound great. Many are in 3D[13], so that the pictures look real and not flat[14].

Some cinemas even have seats that move while you watch the film to immerse[15] you even more into the experience. Other cinemas have even experimented with allowing you to 'feel' the film using smell[16], rain and wind. However, the cost of this will probably mean this technology won't be in most cinemas.

(WB page 15)

Earth is one of the eight planets of our solar system. Astronomers have been able to study most of these planets for many years. However, we will start to learn more about them when we can send astronauts further than the moon, where they have been already. Scientists have already sent spacecrafts onto the surface of planets such as Mars, and with each journey, we can learn more and more about the universe around us.



2 Listening Texts

(WB page 15)

Journalist: Today, I'm talking to a space scientist and astronomer[1], Professor El-Taweel, about where we are most likely to[2] find life in our solar system[3]. So, professor, I suppose[4] most people think we'll first find life on Mars[5], is that right?

Professor: Well, many countries are sending spacecraft to that planet[6] at the moment, so it's possible, yes. I think we'll certainly[7] find water. But once[8] we've finished exploring[9] Mars, I think that we'll find other places that are just[10] as likely to have life.

Journalist: Really? Can you give me an example?

Professor: Yes. Enceladus is one of the planet Saturn's[11] many moons, but it is very interesting. In 2005, a spacecraft[12] took photos of a huge amount of water coming up[13] from the surface[14] of the moon then flying out into space. Once we've sent a spacecraft back to Enceladus that can take some of this water, we'll know where it comes from and if there is life on the moon.

Journalist: That's amazing. Are there any other places like this?

Professor: Yes, Saturn's largest moon, called Titan, has lakes[15] on the surface. These are probably made from gases[16], not water, but we have already sent a small spacecraft to Titan. When we've sent another one that can study the lakes, we will know more.

Journalist: Anywhere else?

Professor: Yes, there is also one of the planet Jupiter's[17] moons, called Europa. Some scientists think there might be more water here than on earth. The problem is that the water on Europa lies[18] about 15 kilometres below[19] a frozen[20] surface. We won't be able to study this until we've got powerful[21] machines that can dig into[22] the moon.

Check Vocabulary

(1) عالم فلك
(2) من المُرجّح أن
(3) النظام الشمسي
(4) يفترض
(5) المريخ
(6) كوكب
(7) من المُؤكّد
(8) بمجرد أن
(9) يستكشف
(10) تماماً
(11) كوكب زُحَل
(12) سفينة فضاء
(13) يتصاعد
(14) سطح
(15) بُحيرة
(16) غاز
(17) كوكب المشتري
(18) يقع/يوجد
(19) تحت/أسفل
(20) مُتجمِّد
(21) قوي
(22) يحفر/ يُنقِّب في

3 Video Script

(SB page 27)

Presenter: We asked three students to research[1] the latest inventions[2] and come back and tell us about their favourites[3]. OK, first Omar ... what did you find?

Omar : The best invention I read about was these smart trainers[4]. They have 'smart' transport tickets sewn[5] into the insides of the shoes. This means if you're travelling on public transport[6] and you're wearing the trainers you can just get on[7] the bus, tram or underground without having to show your ticket. At the moment, they cost about £140, so I don't think a huge number of people will be wearing them yet. But there were big queues[8] outside shoe shops when they first went on sale[9].

Presenter: Eman ... how about you?

Eman : I found out about some amazing inventions, but my favourite invention is this robo-bird[10]. It's already been used at the Edmonton international airport in Canada. It's a robot[11] bird which chases away[12] real birds. It seems that in the past real birds have caused problems for planes taking off[13] and landing[14]. These robotic[15] birds look like[16] real falcons[17], which are hunting birds, and scare[18] other types of birds away. They call even move their wings[19] up and down like real birds. They'll make airports much safer.

Presenter: Samir ... what did you discover?

Samir : The best invention I found for sure[20] is a high-tech[21] robot tutor[22]. It's about 16 inches tall and has arms, legs and a face. It has a camera which can tell if the student is losing attention[23] and will adapt[24] its style, so you don't get bored[25]. The best thing is that it dances when you get a question right!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يُجري أبحاث على
(2) اختراعات
(3) الأشياء المُفضّلة
(4) حذاء رياضي
(5) مُخيّطة
(6) المواصلات العامة
(7) يركب
(8) طابور
(9) يعرض للبيع
(10) الطائر الآلي
(11) آلي
(12) يطارد - يطرد
(13) تُقلع
(14) تهبط
(15) آلي/ روبوتي
(16) يشبه
(17) الصقر
(18) يُخيف/يُفزع
(19) أجنحة
(20) من المُؤكّد
(21) ذو تقنية عالية
(22) مُعلّم
(23) يفقد الإنتباه/ يتشتت
(24) يتغير
(25) يمل

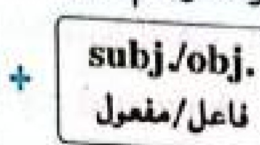
Part IV Language

تنويه تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Future time clauses العبارات الزمنية الدالة علي المستقبل

What is a time clause? ما هي العبارة الزمنية؟

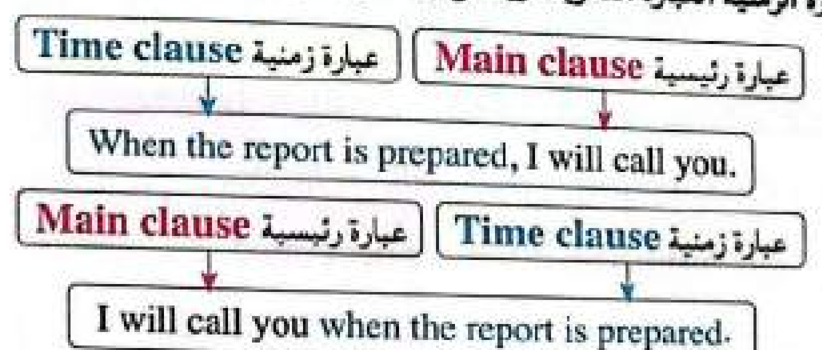
- هي عبارة تبدأ برابطة زمنية ثم فاعل أو مفعول ثم فعل :



⇨ Time conjunction رابطة زمنية + subj./obj. فاعل/مفعول + verb ....

- Before I go out, I will have breakfast.
= I will have breakfast before I go out.
- When the report is prepared, I will call you.
= I will call you when the report is prepared.

- تُسمَّى العبارة الزمنية العبارة الثانوية، ويمكن أن تأتى قبل أو بعد العبارة الرئيسية :



- عندما تأتى العبارة الزمنية فى بداية الجملة يتم الفصل بينها وبين الجملة الرئيسية باستخدام (,):
- By the time I have arrived home, mum will have prepared dinner.
= Mum will have prepared dinner by the time I have arrived home.

- تُستخدم العبارة الزمنية كظرف زمان يُحدد وقت وقوع الحدث، وهي تكون إجابة للأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ (when) أو (What time) مثلاً :

A: When will you leave the office?
B: I will leave the office after I have finished the report.

Time conjunctions & expressions الروابط والتعبيرات الزمنية

- تبدأ العبارة الزمنية بإحدى الروابط الزمنية مثل :

until/till حتى	after بعد	before قبل	while بينما	when عندما

- After I have studied unit 3, I will go to bed.
= I will go to bed after I have studied unit 3.

- يمكن أن تبدأ العبارة الزمنية بإحدى التعبيرات الظرفية مثل :

by the time قُبيل | as soon as بمجرد أن | immediately حالاً بعد | once بمجرد أن
the day فى اليوم الذى | the minute فى الدقيقة التى | the moment فى اللحظة التى

- Once I have had my breakfast, I will leave for school.
= I will leave for school once I have had my breakfast.
- The day I arrive in Egypt, I am going to visit the pyramids.
= I am going to visit the pyramids the day I arrive in Egypt

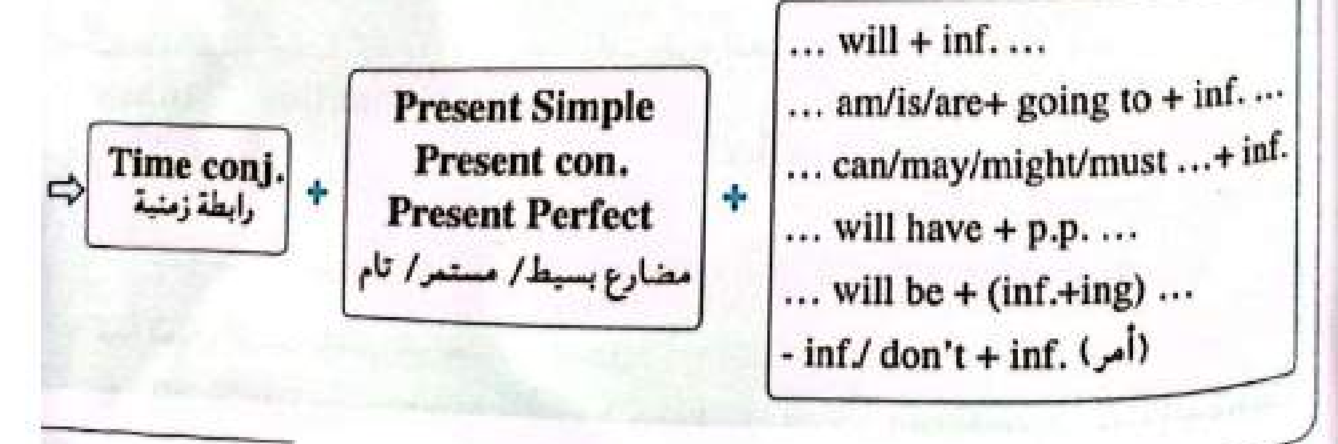
- إذا كانت العبارتين الرئيسية والثانوية تبدأ بنفس الفاعل أو المفعول فيُمكن استخدام اسم (noun) أو (inf. + ing) بعد الروابط الزمنية :

until/till حتى | before قبل | before قبل | while بينما | when عندما

- After Omar has done the shopping, he will go home.
= After doing the shopping, Omar will go home.
- Before my flat is furnished, it will be decorated.
= Before being furnished, my flat will be decorated.

Tenses after time conjunctions & expressions
الأزمنة بعد الروابط والتعبيرات الزمنية

- إذا كان السياق مُستقبل يكون ترتيب الأزمنة بعد الروابط الزمنية كالتالى :



When I wash the dishes, I am going to help you with your homework.
= I am going to help you with your homework when I wash the dishes.

- While I am waiting for the bus, I will be drinking my juice.
= I will be drinking my juice while I am waiting for the bus.

- Until I have done the research, I won't be able to write the report.
= I won't be able to write the report until I have done the research.

- When I visit Aswan next month, I will have been there for the fourth time.
= I will have been in Aswan for the fourth time when I visit it next month.

- Before you take a medicine, look for the expiry date.
= Look for the expiry date before you take a medicine.

- لا تُستَخدَم صيغ المستقبل (will/be going to) في العبارة الظرفية بعد الرابطة الزمنية:

- Fady will turn off the lights when he leaves the office.

(NOT: when he will leave)

= Mr Ayman will reply to the email once he is online.

(NOT: once he will be online)

General Exercise On Language 

Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. I don't know when the meeting .... *(LM)*
   a. starts b. will start c. start d. had started
2. I'll stay here till Lina .... back from school. *(LM)*
   a. will come b. comes c. have come d. had come
3. When she .... home, she will start preparing lunch. *(LM)*
   a. returns b. have returned c. will return d. had returned

Once I .... the meeting, I will go to the club. (LM)

a. will finish b. finished c. have finished d. had started

The moment I .... everything for the party, I will contact you. (LM)

a. had prepared b. will prepar c. have prepared d. was preparing

. I promise I'll call you as soon as I .... more information. (LM)

a. had had b. has had c. will have d. have

'. When I .... the news, I will tell you! (LM)

a. will get b. had got c. was getting d. have got

8. Once I .... sure the car is ready for the journey, I will contact you. (LM)

a. have made b. had made c. was making d. will make

9. When the movie ...., I will go to bed. (LM)

a. have finished b. ends c. will end d. had ended

10. I will go out when I .... my assignment. (LM)

a. have finished
b. will finish
c. will have finished
d. finished

11. Don't worry; I won't leave until you .... (Practice Ex. 2)

a. have been arrived
b. will arrive
c. had arrived
d. have arrived

12. After I .... the office, I will check my email.

a. reach b. have reached c. a & b d. had reached

13. After I .... the office, I checked my email.

a. reach b. have reached c. a & b d. had reached

14. As soon as I have had my lunch, I .... to do my homework.

a. will start b. would start c. started d. had started

15. While I am watching the match in the stadium, I .... some photos of my favourite stars.

a. would take b. will take c. was taking d. took

16. The plane to Brazil ………… off tomorrow at 6:00 am.

a. is taking b. takes c. will take d. is going to take

17. When she ………… a decision, inform me.

a. reach b. reaches c. have reached d. a & c

18. Try to solve the problems before the manager ………… .

a. has arrived b. arrive c. arrived d. had arrived

2 Special Cases

19. We will go for a trip as soon as our car………… . *(LM)*

a. has repaired
b. will be repaired
c. has been repaired
d. had repaired

20. As soon as you see the criminal, ………… the police at once. *(LM)*

a. have telephoned b. telephone c. will telephone d. telephoned

21. When you meet Mr Ashraf, ………… him to phone me.

a. will tell
b. is going to tell
c. tell
d. has told

22. When you ………… a decision, inform me.

a. reach b. reaches c. have reached d. a & c

23. While I ………… asleep, don't play loud music.

a. am b. was c. am being d. was being

24. ………… you begin to speak, they will give you their attention.

a. At once
b. Immediately on
c. As soon
d. Immediately

25. After …………, the car will be ready for the long drive.

a. it checking
b. it checks
c. you had checked it
d. you have checked it

26. Once you ………… my money back, I will give you the loan papers.

a. returns b. return c. will return d. returned

27. Don't leave until I ………… you permission.

a. had given b. gave c. give d. will give

3 Check your understanding

28. Which of the following is correct?
    a. While you are checking the report I will fix the printer.
    b. While you are checking the report, I fixed the printer.
    c. While you checked the report, I will fix the printer.
    d. While you are checking the report, I will fix the printer.

29. A: When are you going to move to your new villa? **B:** ....
    a. After it had been decorated.
    b. After it was decorated.
    c. After it has been decorated.
    d. After it is going to be decorated.

30. Which of the following is structurally correct ? (LM)
    a. When I had finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.
    b. When I have finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.
    c. When I have finished work, I travelled to Ismailia.
    d. When I finished work, I will travel to Ismailia.

31. "My father will call you as soon as his guests have left". This means that ....
    a. the guests have left
    b. the guests haven't left yet
    c. the guests had left
    d. the guests won't leave

32. "Omar will go back to work once he has got better". This means ....
    a. he has already got better.
    b. he isn't supposed to get better.
    c. he is still unwell.
    d. he has gone back to work.

4 Feedback Grammar

• راجع أفكارك مع معلمك.

33. You don't think she is ill, ... ? (LM)
    a. do you
    b. isn't she
    c. is she
    d. you do

34. You shouldn't mix with bad friends: better alone than in .... bad company. (LM)
    a. a
    b. an
    c. the
    d. no article

35. I don't believe .... he says; he usually tells lies. (LM)
    a. what
    b. that
    c. which
    d. who

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 30 & 31 WB pages 16 & 17



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

drug(n)	دواء - عقار	surgeon(n)	جَرّاح
operation(n)	عملية جراحية	surgery(n)	جِراحة
record(n)	سِجل	surgical(adj)	جراحي
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار - مِجَس	treatment(n)	علاج - معالجة

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

accuracy(n)	الدِقّة	consultant(n)	استشاري
addicted(adj)	مُدمِن	glucose(n)	جلوكوز
advanced(adj)	مُتقدِّم/مُتطور	green technology(n)	تكنولوجيا صديقة للبيئة
app = application(n)	تطبيق حاسوبي	hacker(n)	قرصان - مُخترِق
artificial (adj)	اصطناعي - مُصطنَع (غير حقيقي)	handle(d) (v)	يستعمل/يتناول - يتدبر
		identify(ied) (v)	يُحدِّد
assistant(n)	بائع - مُساعِد	individual(n/adj)	فرد - فردي
autonomously (adv)	بشكل مستقل	intelligence(n)	ذكاء
		involve(d) (v)	يستلزم/يتطلب
belief(n)	اعتقاد	issue(n)	قضية - مشكلة
benefit(ed) (n/v)	فائدة - يستفيد	last(ed) (v)	يستمر/يدوم
business(n)	شركة - عمل	latest(adj)	أحدث - آخر
complicated(adj)	مُعقَّد	measure(d) (v)	يقيس
connected(adj)	مُتَّصِل	monitor(ed) (v/n)	يراقب/يتابع - شاشة عرض

cure(d) (n/v)	علاج - يعالج	operation(n)	عملية جراحية
cyber(prefix)	الكتروني	opportunity(n)	فُرصة
decade(n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	option(n)	خيار/اختيار
depend(ed) (v)	يعتمد	organisation(n)	مؤسسة
development(n)	تَطَوُّر - تنمية	recycle(d) (v)	يُعيد تدوير
diabetes(n)	مرض السكر	replace(d) (v)	يحل محل
discover(ed) (v)	يكتشف	safety(n)	أمان
dishwasher(n)	غسالة الأطباق	save(d) (v)	يُنقذ - يدَّخر
distant(adj)	بعيد	security(n)	أمن
dramatically(adv)	بشكل كبير	self-driving(n/adj)	ذاتي القيادة - القيادة الذاتية
empathy(n)	الدعم النفسي - تعاطف	swap(ped) (v)	يتبادل
equipment(n)	مُعِدَّة - مُعدات	transform(ed) (v)	يُغيِّر/يُحوِّل
escape(d) (v)	يهرب	uniquely(adv)	بشكل فريد
everyday(adj)	يومي	warning(n)	تحذير
evolve(d) (v)	يتطور		

3 Definitions تعريفات

drugs(n) أدوية - عقاقير	medicines or things that make medicines
record(n) سِجل	information about something that is written مُدوَّنة on computer, film, etc. or stored مُخزَّنة down so that it can be looked at in the future
sensor(n) جهاز استشعار - مِجَس	a piece of equipment that can find or measure يقيس light, heat, sound etc.
surgeon(n) جَرَّاح	a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better
surgery /operation(n) جراحة	when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged
treatment(n) علاج - معالجة	something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. The policeman suspected that the man was on .... because he was acting strangely. *(LM)*
   a. purpose b. duty c. drugs d. crimes
2. Only use .... under medical supervision إشراف.
   a. issues b. drugs c. apps d. sensors
3. A famous doctor led the team who did the .... on my knee.
   a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity
4. My secretary keeps .... of everything done in the office.
   a. records b. cures c. securities d. surgeries
5. A/An .... is trained to operate on patients.
   a. hacker b. surgeon c. monitor d. astronomer
6. There's something wrong with the car temperature ....
   a. issue b. drug c. hacker d. sensor
7. Matters got worse because the .... of the disease was based on a wrong prescription تشخيص.
   a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity
8. The .... I had on my back was a great success.
   a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery

2 Important vocabulary

9. .... intelligence is the development of machines to perform tasks that normally require human intelligence. *(LM)*
   a. Natural b. Artificial c. High d. Mechanical
10. I want a good job that .... for life.
    a. involves b. measures c. lasts d. recycles
11. A professional .... has managed to steal business secrets from the laptop of a famous businessman.
    a. hacker b. surgeon c. monitor d. astronomer

12. Many young people have sadly been .... to online games.
 a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial

13. I used my ruler to .... the width of my bedroom door.
 a. involve b. measure c. last d. recycle

14. The price of an object .... on its quality and the demand on it.
 a. handles b. swaps c. depends d. evolves

15. Facing terrorism is one of our key social ....
 a. issues b. drugs c. apps d. sensors

16. Don't be tricked by the .... smile on her face.
 a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial

17. The success you have achieved is due to the great ....
 a. experiment b. robot c. organisation d. warning

18. Use your .... in making the right decision. Don't depend on luck.
 a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity

19. It is the role of the police to enforce .... in the society.
 a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery

20. Our small shop has gradually .... into a big mall.
 a. handled b. swapped c. depended d. evolved

21. .... does not cause any harm to the environment.
 a. Benefit b. Process
 c. Green technology d. Cyberbullying

22. Being a manager usually .... working longer hours.
 a. involves b. measures c. lasts d. recycles

23. Is there a mobile .... that can measure blood pressure accurately?
 a. issue b. drug c. app d. sensor

24. I always .... paragraphs with my classmates to check each other's work.
 a. handle b. swap c. depend d. evolve

25. Fire alarms give .... when there's a fire.
 a. dishwasher b. robot c. organisation d. warning

26. It is better for the environment if old plastic, glass, paper and metals are ....
 a. involved b. measured c. lasted d. recycled

27. When life gives you a/an ...., make the best use of it.
a. treatment b. intelligence c. operation d. opportunity

28. Online employment is one of the .... of modern technology.
a. benefits b. processes
c. green technology d. surround sounds

29. We will employ only the candidates who are intelligent and hard-working to carry out .... business missions.
a. addicted b. complicated c. surgical d. artificial

30. Famous people don't like the way their private life is .... on social media.
a. handled b. swapped c. depended d. evolved

31. It has always been said that "Prevention is better than ....".
a. record b. cure c. security d. surgery

3 Definitions

32. .... is something to try and make you feel better after an injury or when you are ill.
a. Treatment b. Surgery c. Operation d. b & c

33. A/An .... is information about something that is written down or stored on computer, film etc. so that it can be looked at in the future.
a. approach b. innovation c. record d. process

34. A .... is a piece of equipment that can find or measure light, heat, sound etc.
a. speaker b. sensor c. device d. podcast

35. A/An .... is when doctors cut open your body to help repair it or remove something that is damaged.
a. treatment b. surgery c. operation d. b & c

36. A/An .... is a special doctor who is trained to cut open people to make them better.
a. surgeon b. surgery c. astronaut d. operator

37. .... are medicines or things that make medicines.
a. Apps b. Applications c. Drugs d. a & b

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	addicted to يصبح مدمنًا لـ	have	negative effects له آثار سلبية
create	opportunities يخلق فُرَص	improve	health care يُحسّن الرعاية الصحية
cause	serious damage to يسبب ضرر جسيم لـ	monitor	your health/fitness تراقب صحتك/لياقتك
solve	complicated problems يحل المشكلات المُعقّدة	perform / do	an operation يُجري جراحة
			tasks يؤدي مَهام
do	an operation يُجري جراحة	use	green technology يستخدم تكنولوجيا صديقة للبيئة
	well يؤدي بشكل جيد	stay	healthy يبقى بصحة جيدة
	work يؤدي عمل	cut	open يفتح / يشق
save	lives ينقذ حياة	discover	new cures يكتشف علاجات جديدة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The operation Dr Alaa had .... saved the life of a 10-year-old child.
   a. done b. performed c. carried out d. a, b & c
2. Modern technology .... some negative effects.
   a. has b. uses c. cuts d. does
3. Serious damage was .... to the building by the earthquake.
   a. made b. performed c. a & b d. caused
4. New cures for diseases are .... by scientists every day.
   a. become b. solved c. discovered d. stayed
5. .... green technology helps nature.
   a. Making b. Using c. Cutting d. Doing

6. It was so complicated a problem that I couldn't .... it on my own.
a. become b. solve c. discover d. stay

7. The task has perfectly been ....
a. done b. performed c. a & b d. caused

8. A surgeon has to .... open patients' bodies to save their lives.
a. have b. use c. cut d. do

9. Building new factories .... job opportunities for citizens.
a. performs b. creates c. does d. monitors

10. Don't leave your children playing computer games for long or they will .... addicted to it.
a. become b. solve c. discover d. stay

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
artificial(adj)	اصطناعي - غير طبيعي	synthetic - unnatural - man - made
artificial(adj)	مُخْتَلَق - مُفْتَعَل -زائف	pretended- false
complicated(adj)	مُعقَّد - مُركَّب	complex
drug(n)	دواء - عقار	medicine
operation(n)	عملية جراحية	surgery

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
artificial(adj)	اصطناعي - غير طبيعي	natural	طبيعي
artificial(adj)	مُخْتَلَق - مُفْتَعَل -زائف	genuine	حقيقي
complicated(adj)	مُعقَّد - مُركَّب	easy/simple	سهل/بسيط
intelligence(n)	ذكاء	stupidity	غباء
safety(n)	أمان	danger/risk	خطر/مخاطرة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "The computer is a form of artificial intelligence". In this sentence, 'artificial' is a synonym of ....
a. natural b. unnatural c. pretended d. genuine

2. "He tricks customers with the artificial kindness he shows". In this sentence, 'artificial' is a synonym of ....
   a. natural b. supernatural c. pretended d. genuine
3. Something that is .... is neither simple nor easy.
   a. complex b. complicated c. clear d. a & b
4. Complicated' is to 'complex' as 'operation' is to ....
   a. surgery b. treatment c. medicine d. cure
5. "The children were saved to safety". In this utterance. 'safety' is antonymous with ....
   a. security b. risk c. dangerous d. difficult

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
drug يُخدِّر/يضع مُخدِّر	druggist صيدلاني drug مادة مخدرة/دواء	drugged مُخدَّر/تحت تأثير مادة مُخدِّرة
operate يُشغِّل (آلة) - يُجري جراحة	operation تشغيل (آلة) - عملية جراحية operator عامل التليفون - يشغل آلة	
record يُسجِّل	record سِجلّ - مُحتوي مُسجَّل recorder جهاز تسجيل recording التسجيل	recorded مُسجَّل
	surgeon جرّاح surgery الجراحة	surgical جراحي
treat يُعامِل - يعالج	treatment علاج - معالجة - معاملة	treatable قابل للعلاج

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. An evil servant helped the criminals. He .... his master's food.
   a. drug b. drugged c. drugging d. druggist
2. An evil servant helped the criminals by .... his master's food.
   a. drug b. drugged c. drugging d. druggist
3. An evil servant helped the criminals. He put a .... in his master's food.
   a. drug b. drugged c. drugging d. druggist

4. This injury will heal يلتئم soon if you .... it well.
   a. treat b. treated c. treatment d. treatable
5. This injury will heal soon with good ....
   a. treat b. treated c. treatment d. treatable
6. This injury is .... That means it is easy that it heals soon.
   a. treat b. treated c. treatment d. treatable
7. All our clients' data are ....
   a. record b. recorder c. recorded d. recording
8. We keep a .... of all our clients' data.
   a. record b. recorder c. recorded d. recording
9. The .... of this piece of equipment is impossible without reading its catalogue.
   a. operate b. operator c. operation d. a & c
10. I can't .... this piece of equipment without reading its catalogue.
   a. operate b. operator c. operation d. a & c

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

addicted to	مُدمن لـ	global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
AI = artificial intelligence	الذكاء الاصطناعي	health care	الرعاية الصحية
		in particular	بصفة خاصة
back then	في ذلك الوقت	in what ways	بأي الطُرق
bad for	ضار لـ	just for you	من أجلك أنت فقط
be connected to	متصل بـ	just like	تمامًا مثل
carry out an operation	يُجرى جراحة	keep in touch with	يبقي على اتصال بـ
communicate in any language	يتواصل بأى لغة	maths problems	مسائل الرياضيات
		on their own	دون مساعدة
cyber security	الأمن الإلكترونى	self-driving	القيادة الذاتية
electric cars	سيارات كهربائية	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
everyday life/lives	الحياة اليومية	thanks to	بفضل
evolving technology	التكنولوجيا المتطورة	warning systems	أنظمة إنذار

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

carry out	يُنفِّذ	prefer … to	يفضل … على
concentrate on	يركز على	relate to	يتعلق بـ
connect to	يتصل بـ	run out of	ينفد ما لديه من
depend on	يعتمد على	throw away	يرمي/يتخلص من
escape to	يهرب إلى	work out	يحل - يحسب
last for	يستمر لمدة		

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I hope I will keep .... touch with my secondary school friends after I join university.
   a. of b. with c. to d. in
2. This maths problem can only be worked .... by the intelligent.
   a. in b. out c. for d. with
3. A Polish surgeon carried .... an operation on my grandmother.
   a. out b. of c. from d. to
4. The finals last .... three weeks.
   a. in b. since c. for d. into
5. I can't make a cake as we've run .... eggs.
   a. out b. out of c. from d. for
6. Unfortunately, he became addicted .... drugs.
   a. to taking b. to take c. taking d. take
7. I prefer light meals .... heavy ones, especially at night.
   a. by b. from c. with d. to
8. The cost of these products depends .... the time of year.
   a. out b. off c. at d. on

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

Expressions with 'on'

depend on	يعتمد على	on a bigger scale	على نطاق أوسع
on the one hand	مِن ناحية	on the whole	في المُجمَل
on the other hand	من الناحية الأخرى	on balance	إجمالاً/ إذا أخذنا كلّ شيء في الاعتبار
on drugs	متعلق بالمخدرات/ تحت تأثير المخدرات		

- Try to depend on yourself, Rodayna.
- On the one hand they'd love to earn more money, but on the other hand, they don't want to work harder.
- Improve the quality of your goods if you want to sell them on a bigger scale.
- This candidate has good skills, but he lacks experience. On the whole, I think he should be employed.
- We have too many jobs to do today. On balance, it's better to cancel the meeting.

explore - invent - find out - discover

•**explore** يستكشف (شيء / مكان غريب)
- I want to explore that old desert area around my village.

•**invent** يخترع شيء جديد لم يكن موجود من قبل
- The Chinese invented paper.

•**find out** يكتشف (مصادفة أو بعد بحث) / يعرف
- I found out that she keeps a cat in her bedroom.

•**discover** يكتشف شيء كان موجود ولكنة غير معروف
- Isaac Newton discovered gravity.

- لاحظ أن :

•**discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)**
- I hope scientists will discover a medicine for cancer.

sensible – sensitive – sensor

•**sensor** جهاز استشعار - مجس (لاستشعار أو قياس الحرارة أو الضوء أو غير ذلك)
- The oil sensor in my car does not work.

•**sensitive** حساس لـ/لديه حساسية
- My skin is sensitive to woolen clothes.

•**sensible** عقلاني / حكيم
- We want to find a sensible solution to the problem.

throw + away / out / into

•**throw ... away / out** يتخلص من / يرمي (لا يُذكر بعدها المكان الذي يتم الإلقاء فيه)
- Sama threw away / out her broken toy.

•**throw ... into** يتخلص من / يرمي (يُذكر بعدها المكان الذي يتم الإلقاء فيه)
- Sama threw her broken toy into the bin.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Do you know who .... the internet?
   a. explored b. found out c. discovered d. invented
2. I'd like very much to .... the area behind the mountain.
   a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
3. I don't know how he could .... about our new design.
   a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
4. Dr Zewail's team were able to .... the femtosecond.
   a. explore b. find out c. discover d. invent
5. She threw the stone ....
   a. away b. out c. into d. a & b
6. She threw the stone .... the canal.
   a. away b. out c. into d. a & b
7. Printers have a paper ....
   a. sensitive b. sensible c. science d. sensor
8. My eyes are .... to strong sunlight.
   a. sensitive b. sensible c. science d. sensor
9. Being ...., he thinks carefully before making decisions.
   a. sensitive b. sensible c. science d. sensor

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

drug

- **drug (n)** مُخدِّر/مادة مُخدِّرة
  - You may become addicted to drugs if you have bad company. صحية
- **drug (for) (n)** دواء/عقار
  - I hope scientists will find effective drugs for cancer.
- **drug (n)** مادة مُنشطة (مفرد مُنشطات)
  - Some sports people take illegal drugs.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- take/use drugs يتعاطى المخدرات/المنشطات
- be addicted to drugs مُدمن علي المخدرات/المنشطات
- experiment with drugs يُجرب تعاطي المخدرات/المنشطات
- come off/get off drugs يُقلع عن تعاطي المخدرات/المنشطات
- drug addiction إدمان المخدرات/المنشطات

• **drug(ed) (v)** يُخدِّر/يُعطي مادة مُخدِّرة
  - This criminal drugged and killed an old lady.
  - She drugged the juice to kill the leader of the gang.

monitor

• **monitor(ed) (v)** يُراقب - يَرْصُد - يتجسس علي
  - The mall is monitored with cameras.

• **monitor (n)** جهاز عرض
  - The monitor of my PC fell and broke.

• **monitor (n)** مُراقب (شخص يراقب وضع معين ليتأكد أن الأمور تسير بشكل صحيح)
  - The international monitors keep open eyes on the situation between the two countries.

operation

• **operate(d) (v)** يُشغِّل/يُدير (آلة/جهاز...)
  - Only Ahmed can operate this machine.

• **operate(d) (on) (v)** يُجري عملية جراحية لـ
  - Dr Rabie operated on my cousin.

• **operation (on/for/to) (n)** عملية جراحية(لـ/بغرض/لكي)
  - Dr Rabie did an operation on my cousin.

• **operation (n)** إدارة/تشغيل/تطبيق (آلة/نظام)
  - The machine broke down in the first year of operation.

• **operation (n)** عملية/تشغيلة (مَهمّة)
  - The company is involved in a laptop manufacturing operation.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- do/carry out/perform an operation يُجري جراحة
- have/undergo an operation تُجرى له جراحة
- a transplant operation عملية زراعة أعضاء

record

• **record(ed) (v)** يُسجِل/يدوِّن

- The accountants المحاسبون record the money we spend.
- I will record the match. You can watch it later.

• **record(of) (n)** سِجل (ورقي أو الكتروني)

- The accountants keep a record of the money we spend.
- Don't waste your time listening to silly records.

• **record(of/in) (n)** رقم قياسي (في الرياضة مثلًا)

- This swimmer will set a new record in the next Olympics.

• **record(of) (n)** سِجل (تفاصيل شخصية/عملية)

- Salah has a good record in the Premier League.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- keep/maintain a record يحتفظ بسجل
- a written record سِجل مكتوب
- on record مُسجَّل / مُدوَّن
- access records يطلع علي السجلات
- official records السِجلات الرسمية

treat

• **treat(like/as/with) (v)** (يُعامِل (مثل / كـ / بـ) ≠ mistreat يُسيء معاملة

- I treat my father as a friend.
- My mother treats my friend Aya like one of the family.
- It is polite to treat your teachers with respect.

• **treat(as) (v)** يعتبر (كـ)

- Don't treat what I say as a joke!

• **treat (with) (v)** يُعالج (بـ)

- Can coronavirus patients be treated with drugs?

• **treat (to) (v)** يستضيف/يعزم (على)

- I treated my fiancée خطيبة to dinner in a five-star restaurant.

• **treatment (of) (n)** معاملة (لـ)

- The violent treatment of children will make them behave cowardly بجُبن.

• **treatment (of) (n)** مُعالجة/تناول/طرح (ن)

- The treatment of homeless children issue in the film is inconvenient.

• **treatment (of/for) (n)** علاج (ن)

- The common treatment of cold is to rest and have warm drinks.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- give/provide treatment يعالج
- undergo treatment يتلقى علاج
- respond to treatment يستجيب للعلاج

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية تتبعها الإجابة مع التوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have .... all my friends to an open buffet meal on the occasion of getting a good job.
   a. treated b. drugged c. handled d. benefited
2. I appreciate your .... decision to stop arguing although you were right.
   a. sensor b. sensitive c. nonsense d. sensible
3. Last summer was the hottest on ....
   a. advance b. treatment c. record d. operation
4. The new law will be in .... as soon as it is published in the official newspaper.
   a. sensor b. treatment c. surgery d. operation
5. Online computer games are like a/an .... They keep encouraging you for more.
   a. process b. drug c. operation d. sensor

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	الفعل الاصطلاحي (treat ...to) يعني (يعزم ...علي) وهو ما يتفق مع معني الجملة
2.	d	الصفة (sensible) تعني (عقلاني/حكيم) وهو ما يتفق مع معني الجملة
3.	c	التعبير (on record) يعني (مُسجَل/موجود في السجلات)
4.	d	التعبير (in operation) يعني (قيد التطبيق/التنفيذ)
5.	b	التعبير (be like a drug) يعني (يشبه المخدر لأنه يسبب الإدمان)

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Possible future uses[1] of AI

(WB page 16)

Experts all agree that we will see more artificial intelligence[2] (AI) in the future, but how will this affect[3] our lives?

Factories already use AI to build cars and machines. Work that used to be done by factory workers is now done by computers. In the next few decades[4], computers will also do some work that is now done by office workers and shop assistants[5]. That means many shops and businesses[6] won't need to close: they will be open for 24 hours.

When you use the internet, AI quickly knows what you are interested in and sends you advertisements to sell you things. In the future, AI will know enough about you to be able to tell factories to make things just for you: the things won't need to be mass-produced.

Many people think that self-driving[7] cars will have replaced[8] traditional[9] cars within the next few decades. We will all be calling self-driving cars to take us where we want to go, just like we call a taxi today.

Soon, AI will also be helping us to learn new skills. It will help people produce amazing[10] art or music. AI will also help us to communicate[11] in any language.

Mobile phones have changed the way we live in just a few years. In the near future, our lives will have changed again thanks to[12] AI.

Check Vocabulary

(1) استخدام
(2) الذكاء الاصطناعي
(3) يؤثر على
(4) عقود
(5) بائعين في محل
(6) شركات
(7) ذاتي القيادة
(8) يحل محل
(9) تقليدي
(10) مذهل
(11) يتواصل
(12) بفضل

Archive

A world without technology

(SB page 31)

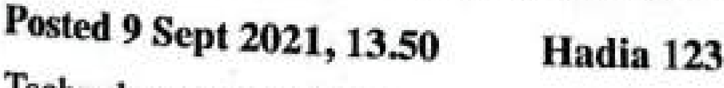
Posted 8 Sept 2021, 17.30 Eduardo

Technology is very important for us here in Mexico City. We depend[1] on smartphones, tablets, computers and especially the internet. I am lucky to have a computer in my house, because my father doesn't live with us, so it helps me keep in touch with[2] him. On a bigger scale[3], technology has helped save[4] lives in Mexico.

We have very advanced[5] warning[6] systems which give people more time to escape[7] to safety if an earthquake is coming. On the other hand[8], cyber[9] security[10] has become a big issue[11]. Computer hackers[12] can cause serious[13] harm to individuals[14] and organisations[15]. Important information can be stolen. There have been many cases where this has happened in Mexico, and I'm sure there will be more in the future.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعتمد
(2) يبقى على اتصال بـ
(3) على نطاق أوسع
(4) يُنقذ
(5) مُتقدِّم/مُتطور
(6) إنذار - تحذير
(7) يهرب
(8) من ناحية أخرى
(9) إلكتروني
(10) أمن
(11) قضية
(12) قراصنة
(13) خطير
(14) أفراد
(15) مؤسسات



Posted 9 Sept 2021, 13.50 **Hadia 123**



Technology surrounds us. It's everywhere. It's hard to imagine a life without[1] technology. But, of course, we could live without it. Only forty years ago, people survived without smart phones or the Internet. On the whole[2], I think technology can be dangerous because people can become addicted[3] to it. They forget about simple things like walking in nature and being with friends.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بدون
(2) في المُجمل
(3) مُدمِن

Posted 11 Sept 2021, 16.30 **Joat19**



I don't agree with the last comment[1]. The benefits[2] of technology in medicine are obvious. People's lives are saved every day because of new technology in hospitals! In the future, it'll be even more important. It will help us discover[3] new cures[4] for lots of diseases. Of course, technology has some negative effects, but on balance[5], we can't live without it now.

Log in or register to post comments

Check Vocabulary

(1) تعليق
(2) فوائد
(3) يكتشف
(4) علاجات
(5) بمراعاة جميع الاعتبارات

The advantages and disadvantages to evolving[1] technology

(WB page 17)



Technology is always changing. Every few years, you can buy televisions that have larger screens or better pictures. Mobile phones can do more and more things. On a bigger scale, computers in businesses, at airports and in almost every organisation become more and more powerful[2]. We now depend on everything becoming better, bigger and faster.

On the one hand, this makes things easier for all of us. It is not very expensive to buy televisions that are almost as good as cinema screens. Mobile phones mean that you can be connected[3] to the internet anywhere, so you can always find out[4] information or know where you are. Planes and cars are safer and businesses work better.

On the other hand, new technology is very bad for the environment. We all want to buy the latest[5] phone, television or computer game, but that often means throwing away[6] the old ones. You can recycle[7] some parts of old equipment[8], but a lot of it is never used again. Who wants an old phone that does not connect to the internet?

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُتطوّر
(2) قوي
(3) مُتصل
(4) يكتشف
(5) الأحدث
(6) يرمي/يُلقي
(7) يُعيد تدوير
(8) مُعدات

On the whole[9], it is good that technology changes. We all want to have things that can improve our everyday[10] lives. On balance[11], however, I think that we have to find a way to use new technology on old equipment. It is terrible that we have to throw away good equipment just because it does not use the latest technology. If we could build phones, TVs and computers that could last[12] for decades, we could have a cleaner, greener world.

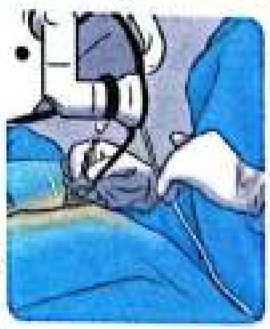
في المجمل (9)
يومي (10)
إجمالاً (11)
يستمر/يدوم (12)

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 30)

Presenter: In the last 70 years, Technology has changed dramatically[1] in the field [2] of medicine[3]. Back then[4] they didn't have computers, smart phones or even the internet. These days robots are used to carry out[5] operations[6]. They are still controlled by humans but using robots allows doctors to perform[7] the operations with more control and accuracy[8]. But will robots be performing operations[9] completely[10] on their own[11] one day? Let's ask our medical[12] expert, Reuben.





Reuben : One thing you may've heard about is Artificial intelligence[13] or AI. A number of companies think within the next year or two, robots will have started to perform some very simple operations autonomously[14] run by computers. Soon surgeons[15] won't even need to be in the room. It'll even be possible to perform an operation from another country.

Presenter: Wow! Incredible[16]! Another really exciting development[17] is how we can use our smartphones to monitor[18] our health. What have you got here?

Check Vocabulary
بشكل كبير (1)
مجال (2)
الطب (3)
في ذلك الوقت (4)
يقوم بـ (5)
عملية جراحية (6)
يقوم بـ (7)
الدقة (8)
إجراء جراحات (9)
بالكامل (10)
دون مساعدة (11)
طبي (12)
الذكاء الاصطناعي (13)
بشكل مستقل (14)
الجراحين (15)
غير معقول (16)
تطور (17)
يراقب (18)

Reuben : Well, this app[19] is connected to a little sensor[20] on my arm. It tells me my blood sugar level[21]. I click a button[22] on my phone and place it near the sensor. It makes a little sound, and there you can see my glucose[23] level is 7.3. It's especially helpful for people with diabetes[24], which is a disease which occurs[25] when your blood sugar is too high.

Presenter: Amazing! So, what next?

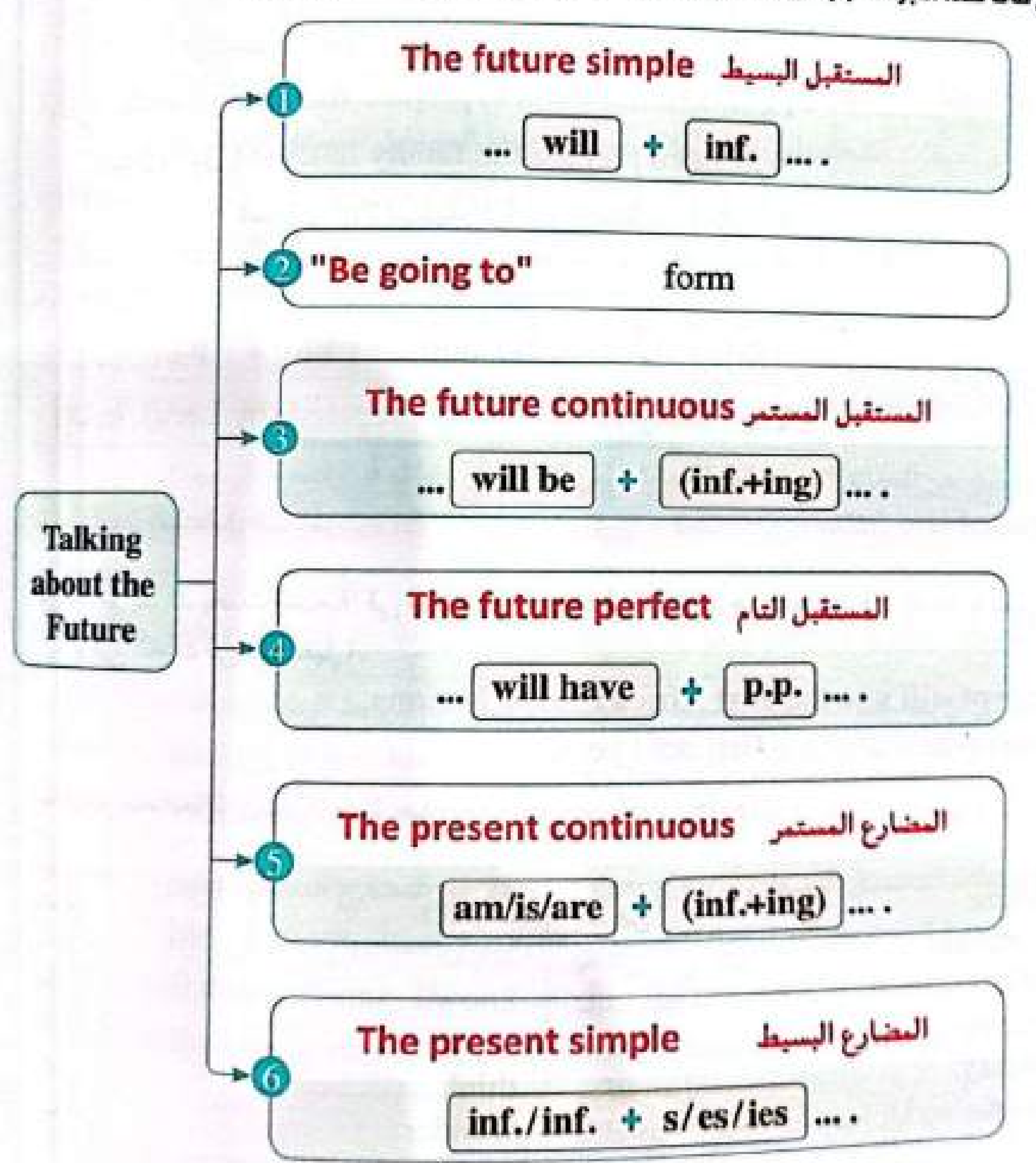
Reuben : Well, it's my belief[26] that by the next decade[27] AI in particular[28], will have transformed[29] health care[30] completely, and will be saving lives. Using data from patient's[31] medical records[32], AI will be able to identify[33] and name[34] illnesses, design treatment plans, and create[35] new drugs[36] way faster than any doctor or consultant[37]. Some people worry that AI systems will replace[38] doctors and nurses, but I don't think so. They'll be able to concentrate on[39] tasks[40] which depend uniquely[41] on human skills instead[42], such as empathy[43]. But what is certain is that we'll all be healthier and living longer due to[44] new technology.

(19) تطبيق
(20) جهاز استشعار
(21) مستوى
(22) زر
(23) جلوكوز
(24) مرض السكر
(25) يحدث
(26) اعتقاد
(27) عقد (١٠ سنوات)
(28) بصفة خاصة
(29) يُغيِّر/يُحوِّل
(30) رعاية
(31) مريض
(32) سجلات
(33) يُحدِّد
(34) يذكر اسم
(35) يبتكر
(36) أدوية
(37) استشاري
(38) يحل محل
(39) يركز على
(40) مهام
(41) بشكل فريد
(42) بدلاً من ذلك
(43) التعاطف
(44) بسبب/بفضل

Part IV Language

Talking about the future

سيتم فى هذا الجزء شرح صيغ الحديث عن المستقبل من خلال ست صيغ رئيسية



1 The future simple

المستقبل البسيط

Form

التكوين

المعلوم ➡

Subj. الفاعل + will / shall + inf. ....

- Leen will prepare the family lunch. (إثبات)
- Leen will not (won't) prepare the family lunch. (نفى)
- Will Leen prepare the family lunch ? (سؤال بـ "هل")
- What will Leen do? (سؤال بـ "أداة استفهام")

المجهول ➡

Obj. مفعول + will / shall + be + p.p. ....

- The family lunch will be prepared (by Leen). (إثبات)

Uses of the future simple

استخدامات المستقبل البسيط

1. التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلاً فى حالة عدم وجود دليل (أى لا يوجد معطيات فى المضارع تسمح بوقوع الحدث فى المستقبل).

- Egypt will win the next Africa Cup of Nations.
- Rodayna will come first next year.

يمكن فى هذه الحالة ان تبدأ الجملة بعبارات تحتوى على أفعال مثل :

assume	يفترض	expect	يتوقع
be afraid	يخشى	hope	يأمل
be/feel sure	يشعر بالتأكد	know	يعرف
believe	يعتقد	suppose	يفترض
daresay.	يمكنه القول	think.	يعتقد
doubt	يشك	wonder	يتساءل

- I'm sure Ahmed will come back.
- I feel a bit hungry. I think I'll have something to eat.
- I suppose Hossam will sell his motorbike.
- I doubt I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.

ومن الممكن ان يصاحب المستقبل البسيط بعض الظروف مثل :

certainly	بالتأكيد	possibly	من الممكن
definitely	بالتأكيد	probably	من المُحتمل
perhaps	ربما	surely	بالتأكيد

- Perhaps I'll see him at the party.
- She will probably phone me soon.

لاحظ أن الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلًا، ويُستخدَم معها المستقبل البسيط عادةً :

- Malak will pass her exams. She's a clever student.
- Yasmeen and her husband both have green eyes, so their baby will have green eyes.

لكن الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلًا ويُفضل أن يُستخدم معها 'be going to'

- Mohammed looks exhausted. I think he is going to sleep on his chair.

2 التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية (أحداث ليس للفاعل أو رغباته أو إرادته دخل فيها):

- Ahmed will be ten years old next April.
- Winter will come again.
- One day, other people will enter this office, sit at my desk and do my job.

3 يُمكن أن يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط في الجملة الرئيسية مع الروابط الزمنية والحالة الشرطية الأولى :

- If I drop this egg, it will break.
- When the weather gets hot, we will start the repairs to our old house.

4 يُستخدم المستقبل البسيط (أو be going to) بدلًا من المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الترتيبات المستقبلية مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والرغبة والتملك بالإضافة إلى (be) :

- Ayman will arrive at nine. He is knowing the details afterwards. (✗)
- Ayman will arrive at nine. He'll know the details afterwards. (✓)

5 التعبير عن قرار سريع (رد فعل لحظي وقت الكلام):

- The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.
- Oh, I've left the window open. I'll go and close it.
- A: What would you like to have? B: I'll have a burger, please.
- A: Have you phoned Mustafa?
  B: Oh no, I have forgotten. I'll phone him right now.

٦ نستخدم (will + inf.) عند الترتيبات اللحظية التى تتم وقت الكلام:
- So that's settled. I'll buy dinner, you'll buy the theatre tickets, and Ahmed will pay the taxi fares.

٧ نستخدم (will + inf.) عند عرض عمل شيء، أو تقديم خدمة او الدعوة:
- You look very tired. I'll complete the report for you.
- I'll set the table for you, mum.
- Will you have a coffee?

٨ نستخدم (will + inf.) عند طلب خدمة:
- Will you show me how to send an e-mail, please?
- Will you please bring the laptop in here?

٩ نستخدم (will + inf.) عند عمل الوعود:
- When you pass the exams successfully, I'll take you on a two-week journey to Paris.

١٠ نستخدم (will + inf.) عند عمل التهديدات:
- Stop wasting your time or you won't get your pocket money.
- Don't tell lies or I'll put hot pepper in your mouth.

١١ يمكن استخدام (will not / won't) للتعبير عن الرفض أو عدم الاستجابة:
- A: How old is aunt Salwa? B: I don't know. She won't tell anybody.
- My motorbike won't start. Perhaps the battery is dead.

Uses of (shall + inf.)

مع (I / we) فقط

١ فى التعبير عن المستقبل مع (I / We) :
- I shall be 41 years old next September.
- We shall know the result of the job interview next month.

٢ فى السؤال المذيل لبعض الصيغ :
- Let's go for a walk by the Nile, shall we?

٣ فى تقديم الاقتراحات :
- Shall we have a cold drink?

٤ فى الاستفسار الأوامر والتعليمات :
- What shall I do with the paint on the floor?
- How shall I operate this machine?

٥ التعبير عن التصميم على عمل شيء، بشكل أقوى من (will):
- I shall do my best and I shall achieve my goal.
- We shall fight terrorism and we shall win.

2 be going to "form"

Form

Active ⇨ Subj. + am/is/are + going to + inf. ... .

- Sarah is going to do الفاعل the cooking.

Passive ⇨ Obj. المفعول + am/is/are + going to + be + p.p. ... .

- The cooking is going to be done (by Sarah).

Usage

وتستخدم (be going to) فى الحالات التالية :

1 التعبير عن الخطط المسبقة "plans" :

- A : Have you planned anything for the weekend?
  B : Yes. I'm going to plant some trees in our garden.

2 التعبير عن النية (intend/intention) لعمل شىء فى المستقبل القريب:

- I'm going to meet Ahmed at the station at nine.
= I intend to meet Ahmed at the station at nine.

3 التعبير عن شىء على وشك الحدوث:

- Watch out! You are going to fall.

4 التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلًا فى حالة وجود دليل (أى يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشىء):

- Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.
- My aunt is going to have a baby. She is pregnant.

- ربهذا المعنى يمكن استخدام be going to بعد أفعال مثل (be sure/be afraid/believe/think):

- This boy looks very pale. شاحب اللون I think he is going to faint.

5 وتستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عما سيحدث فى المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

decided	have decided	made a decision	made up ... mind

- They are going to have lunch outdoors. They have decided.
- I've made up my mind that I'm going to do more exercise in the future.

6 تُستخدم فى الجملة الرئيسية مع الروابط الزمنية للدلالة على النية:

- Rodayna is not going to work in private hospital when she graduates.
- Where are you going to live when you finish your studies?

7 لاحظ أنه يفضل عدم استخدام الفعلين (go – come) بعد (going to) ويستخدم المضارع المستمر الذى يبدو ملائمًا أكثر:

Instead of : - I am going to go / come with you to the cinema tomorrow.
It is much better to say:
- I am going / coming with you to the cinema tomorrow.

3 The future continuous (will / may + be + inf. + ing)

Form	The Future Continuous Tense زمن المستقبل المستمر
Affirmation & Negation الإثبات والنفي	**Subj فاعل + will / won't + be + inf. + ing ...** - Reem will be doing the housework all morning tomorrow. - At five next Friday, I will be visiting one of my old friends.
Yes / No Q. السؤال بـ (هل)	**Will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...?** - Will Reem be doing the housework all morning tomorrow?
'Wh__' Q السؤال بأداة استفهام	**Q.W. + will + subj. + be + inf. + ing ...?** - What will Reem be doing all morning tomorrow?

تستخدم (may) بدلًا من (will) للتنبؤ بأحداث قد تكون مستمرة فى المستقبل فى حالة عدم التأكد :

may be + inf. + ing

- When Rodayna is 20, she may be studying medicine at university.

Uses of the future continuous استخدامات زمن المستقبل المستمر

1. التعبير عن حدث سيكون مستمرًا فى وقت معين فى المستقبل:

- Omar will be watching a football match at nine tomorrow.
- This time tomorrow, Sama will be travelling to Cairo with her family.

2. التعبير عن حدث سيستمر لفترة فى المستقبل:

- The manager will be interviewing some applicants from three to five tomorrow.

3. التعبير عن شيء، سيكون سائد ومُتعارف عليه فى المستقبل:

- In 10 years' time, more people will be living in new cities.

4. التعبير عن حدث سيكون مستمرًا عندما سيقع حدث آخر فى المستقبل (لاحظ استخدام المضارع البسيط بعد الروابط الزمنية):

- When you return home, I may be preparing lunch.

5. تُستخدم مع روابط السبب والنتيجة لتبرير شيء ما فى المستقبل:

- I can't go to the club next Friday because I will be planting some trees in my garden.

❻ تُستخدم (may) بدلاً من (will) في حالة التعبير عن عدم التأكد أو الاحتمال:

may be + inf. + ing

- Omar may be waiting for you at the airport.

❼ تُستخدم صيغة الاستفهام للطلب أو السؤال عن معلومة بشكل مهذب:

- Will you be using your digital camera tomorrow?

❽ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن أحداث مستمرة الآن ونتوقع أن تكون مستمرة أيضًا في المستقبل:

will / may + still لا يزال + be + inf. + ing

- The number of people may still be increasing in the future.

❾ لا يُستخدم المستقبل المستمر أو أي من الأزمنة المستمرة مع أفعال الحواس والمشاعر والإدراك والملكية:

- At seven tomorrow, the pool will be containing fresh water. (✗)
- At seven tomorrow, the pool will contain fresh water. (✓)

The future perfect المستقبل التام

Active مبنى للمعلوم	Passive مبنى للمجهول
Subj. + will / won't + have + p.p. ...	**Obj. + will / won't + have + been + p.p. .....**
- She will have answered the test by eleven o'clock.	- The test will have been answered (by her) by eleven o'clock.

❶ يستخدم المستقبل التام للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل ، وعادة ما يُستخدم معه تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر (by / before):

- My father will have arrived home before five o'clock.
- By this time next week, I will have heard my test results.

❷ ويستخدم المستقبل التام أيضًا للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل ، وهنا يتوقف استخدام المستقبل البسيط أو المستقبل التام أو المستمر على المعنى:

- When mum arrives home, we will have cleaned our rooms. (سيكون التنظيف قد تم قبل وصول الأم)
- When mum arrives home, we will clean our rooms. (عند وصول الأم ، سنقوم بالتنظيف)
- When mum arrives home, we will be cleaning our room. (سيكون التنظيف مستمرًا لحظة وصولها)

5 The Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form	The present continuous
Active المبنى للمعلوم	**Subject الفاعل + am/is/are + inf. + ing ...** - Ahmed is watching the match at the stadium tomorrow.
Passive المبنى للمجهول	**Object المفعول + am/is/are + being + p.p. ...** - The match is being watched at the stadium (by Ahmed) tomorrow.

Uses of the Present continuous استخدامات زمن المضارع المستمر

Future arrangements الترتيبات المستقبلية

(لابد من وجود تعبير زمنى يدل على المستقبل)

1. **تدل التعبيرات الآتية على وجود ترتيبات :**

arranged, made arrangements, prepared, ...

- Everything is arranged. We are leaving to Cairo at five tomorrow.

2. **يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تم الترتيب لحدوثها فى وقت محدد فى المستقبل (لابد من ذكر توقيت الحدوث) :**

- She is flying to India in the summer.
- My brother is getting married next month.

3. **الاجتماعات واللقاءات الرسمية وكذلك المناسبات الاجتماعية (مثل حفلات أعياد الميلاد والزفاف والزيارات والمقابلات ...) تستلزم ترتيبات لذلك فهى غالبًا تكون فى صيغة المضارع المستمر بشرط تحديد وقت الحدوث :**

- Sama is celebrating her birthday party next Monday.
- My sister is getting married tomorrow.
- The manager is interviewing some applicants after tomorrow's meeting.
- We are meeting the minister at eleven o'clock next Tuesday.
- I am having lunch with my uncle next Monday.

⑤ يمكن استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية (plans) لكن استخدام (going to) أكثر شيوعا :

- According to the plan, he is making (= is going to make) the design of the new building.

6 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

Uses	Subject الفاعل + F.C. التصريف الأول + (inf. + s , es , ies) ...
Events on a timetable أشياء تحدث حسب جدول مواعيد مثل مواعيد وسائل المواصلات - البرامج - الأفلام ... إلخ.	- The course starts in October. - This lesson doesn't finish until 2.30. - My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

① يمكن أن يُستخدم المستقبل التام وأزمنة المستقبل الأخرى مع تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحروف جر وظروف أخرى مثل:

- **This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week .... etc.)**
- **In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' / ....) time**

- This time tomorrow, I will have written the reports.

(سأكون بالفعل قد كتبت التقارير)

- This time tomorrow, I will be writing the reports.

(سأكون مستمرا في كتابة التقارير)

- This time tomorrow, I will write the reports. (سوف أقوم بكتابة التقارير)

② لاحظ أن الأساس في استخدام المستقبل التام أن يكون الحدث قد تم قبل أو بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل، أما في حالة عدم اكتمال الفعل فنستخدم المستقبل البسيط حتى في ظل وجود تعبيرات زمنية مستقبلية تبدأ بحرف الجر (by):

⊙ لاحظ المثال التالي:

- English will be spoken by half the world's population by 2050.

في هذا المثال ، تحدُث اللغة الإنجليزية بواسطة نصف سكان العالم لن يتوقف عند هذا التاريخ ، بل سيكون أمر قائمًا ومستمرًا.

◉ لاحظ أيضا المثال التالي:

- By 2040, people will use renewable sources of energy.

في هذا المثال ،استخدام الطاقة المتجددة سيكون أمر قائما وقيد الاستخدام ، ولن يكون حدثا قد تم أو انتهى.

General Notes on Future forms

ملاحظات عامة على صيغ التعبيــر عــن المستقبــل

1. هناك تعبيرات زمنية دالة على المستقبل بصفة عامة منها :

- tomorrow / in the future / soon قريبا / next (year / month / week / Friday...) ... etc.

- I will be back home tomorrow.

2. يستخدم المضارع البسيط أو المضارع التام للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية:

After / As soon as When / The moment	+	حدث أول (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام)	←	مستقبل / جملة أمر

- After I arrive (= have arrived) home, I'll take a rest.
- Tell Ahmed to call me when you see (= have seen) him.

Before / By the time	+	حدث ثان (مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام)	←	مستقبل / جملة أمر

- Before we leave (= have left) the office, I'll phone some clients.
- Don't leave before you finish (= have finished) the report.

حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى (غالبًا) / جملة أمر	+ till / until +	حدث أول مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام

- Mum won't set the table for lunch until my father arrives (= has arrived) home.
- Don't put the bread in the shopping bag until it completely cools.

❷ إذا منعك شيء من القيام بشيء آخر في المستقبل القريب فإن ما يمنعك يكون مرتبا له، و يمكن في هذه الحالة استخدام المضارع المستمر أو المستقبل المستمر:

- I can't see you this evening. I'm visiting my uncle in hospital.
- I can't see you this evening. I'll be visiting my uncle in hospital.

عزيزي الطالب : من الضروري مراجعة صيغ المستقبل التي سبق دراستها بالرجوع إلى ملحق القواعد الخاص بكتاب المعاصر.

General Exercise  **On Language** — Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. By next October, I .... the university. (LM)
   a. have join b. will join
   c. am joining d. will have joined
2. As soon as you push this button, the door .... (LM)
   a. going to open b. has opened c. open d. will open
3. .... bread before you come home? (LM)
   a. Had you bought b. Have you bought
   c. Did you buy d. Will you buy
4. I .... to the theatre until I meet my friends. (LM)
   a. didn't go b. haven't gone c. won't go d. hadn't gone
5. When I return home, I .... studying because I have a headache. (LM)
   a. not going to start b. haven't started
   c. will start d. won't start
6. .... for help when you are in trouble? (LM)
   a. Are you asked b. Have you asked
   c. Will you ask d. Did you ask
7. When we have done the experiment, we .... the results with the science teacher. (LM)
   a. was discussing b. discussed c. have discussed d. will discuss
8. Do you think that Artificial Intelligence .... doctors and nurses ? (LM)
   a. will be replaced b. will replace
   c. had replaced d. going to replace
9. I think it .... hot tomorrow. (LM)
   a. is going to be b. is being c. will be d. will have been

10. My little grandchild .... three next Friday. (LM)
a. will be
b. will have been
c. is going to be
d. would be

11. I hope the exam .... difficult. (LM)
a. isn't being
b. isn't going to be
c. won't have been
d. won't be

12. I will start writing the report once I .... the research. (LM)
a. was doing
b. have done
c. will do
d. had done

13. I think that Youssef .... a full-time job once he gets his degree.
a. shall find
b. is finding
c. will find
d. finds

14. I'm not sure what I will be doing this time next Monday. I .... football.
a. will be playing
b. may be playing
c. will have played
d. am playing

15. Surely, he .... all this work by two.
a. won't be finished
b. won't have been finished
c. won't have finished
d. hasn't finished

16. The drinks will .... already by the time the party starts.
a. have delivered
b. have been delivered
c. be delivering
d. deliver

17. We .... on Mars 50 years from now. Who knows?
a. may have lived
b. will be lived
c. may be living
d. are living

18. You .... a new car if you come first this year. I promise.
a. are getting
b. are going to get
c. should get
d. will get

19. I expect our National Team .... the match tomorrow.
a. win
b. will win
c. are winning
d. are going to win

20. Government departments typically .... at 8 a.m.
a. open
b. are going to open
c. is opening
d. will open

21. A: We've run out of salt . B: I .... to the shops and get a bag.
a. will go
b. have gone
c. go
d. went

22. A: What would you like to start with? B: Mmm, I .... with some soup.
a. will start
b. am going to start
c. am starting
d. starts

23. **A:** Can you come on tomorrow evening?
B: I wish I could, but I .... tennis with friends.
a. will play b. shall play c. played d. will be playing

24. I .... my father at the garage, so I can't visit you at five.
a. will be helping b. will helped
c. will have helped d. will have been helped

25. I expect Rodayna .... an engineer. She's very clever at maths.
a. is b. is going to be
c. is being d. will be

26. From 9 to 11 tomorrow, I .... an important business meeting.
a. will have attended b. will be attended
c. will be attending d. am going to be attended

2 Special Cases

27. Don't worry; I .... until you feel better. (LM)
a. didn't leave b. won't leave c. hadn't left d. will leave

28. I can't meet you since I .... my lessons all day. (LM)
a. will revise b. had revised
c. will be revising d. have revised

29. My aunt will call us immediately she .... to the station.
a. will get b. had got c. has got d. will have got

30. I think the global warming .... worse in the future.
a. will still be getting b. will still have got
c. is still getting d. still gets

31. **A:** .... your tablet next Sunday?
B: Yes, I always use it to study my lessons.
a. Will you have used b. Do you use
c. Are you used d. Will you be using

32. Stop coming to work late or you .... your job.
a. will lose b. lose
c. are losing d. are going to lose

33. This time tomorrow, this flat .... to us.
a. will be belonging b. is belonging
c. will have been belonged d. will belong

34. When I go to Aswan next winter, I .... to five of Egypt's governorates.
a. have been b. will go
c. will be going d. will have been



35. I haven't seen Mariam for ten years. I'm sure she .... very tall!
a. will grow
b. will be growing
c. will have grown
d. will have been grown

36. Our team are known to be very fit and talented. They .... the championship.
a. will win
b. will be winning
c. are going to win
d. will have won

37. I can't call you at 10 am tomorrow. I .... an important exam.
a. have taken
b. will have taken
c. take
d. will be taking

38. By 2030, the International Space Station .... in orbit for 32 years.
a. will keep
b. will be kept
c. will have been kept
d. will have been keeping

3 Check your understanding

39. "We can't visit you tomorrow since ....".
a. we will be having guests at home.
b. we will have had guests at home.
c. we may be helping mum at home.
d. a & c

40. 'Will you be riding your bike tomorrow morning".
This is a polite way to say that ....
a. I want you to ride your bike.
b. I want to borrow your bike.
c. I want to tell you about the benefits of riding bikes.
d. I know someone who wants to borrow your bike.

41. "We will still be reading printed papers in the future".
This means ....
a. we want to read printed papers.
b. we don't read printed papers.
c. we read printed papers at the present time.
d. we read paperbacks previously.

42. "It is the doorbell. I will open it". This is a/an ....
a. request
b. quick decision
c. promise
d. threat

43. "Will you be using your calculator next lesson"? This is a/an ....
a. request
b. quick decision
c. promise
d. threat

44. I'm sure everything will be OK soon." This is a / an ....
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

45. "The plane takes off at 13:00." This is a / an ....
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

46. "I'm flying on the plane that takes off at 13:00."
This is a / an ....
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

47. "I am going to have lunch outdoors." The speaker of this sentence expresses a/an ....
a. arrangement b. timetable c. intention d. prediction

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. By the time your children .... at university, physical books will have been replaced by ebooks.
a. will have been b. had been c. will be d. have been

2. By 2050, English will .... by two thirds of the world's population.
a. have been spoken b. be spoken
c. have spoken d. have been spoken

3. By two o'clock, three meetings .... already.
a. will be holding b. will have held
c. will have been held d. going to be held

4. I fear she .... down ترفض your marriage proposal.
a. will have turned b. will be turning
c. won't turn d. will turn

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	- المضارع التام بعد الرابطة الزمنية (by the time) يدل على المستقبل، وفى نفس الوقت لا يمكن استخدام (will) فى العبارة الظرفية بعد الروابط الزمنية.
2.	b	- لا يمكن استخدام المستقبل التام لأن التحدث باللغة الإنجليزية لن يكون قد انتهى، بل سيكون أمرًا موجودًا، لذلك استخدمنا المستقبل البسيط
3.	c	- الجملة مستقبل تام مبنى للمجهول
4.	d	- التعبير (I fear) يعني (أخشى) من التعبيرات التي يُستخدم بعدها (will + inf.) وهى أيضًا تدل على معنى سلبى فلا يمكن استخدام (won't turn) بعدها فى هذا السياق

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 32 - 35 WB pages 18 & 19



Part I — Chapter 3

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية ، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

apprenticeship(n)	تدريب مهني	lay - laid - laid(v)	يُعِد المائدة
apprentice(n)	صبي؛ عامل تحت التمرين	lead - led(v)	يقود - يأخذ - يؤدي إلي
argument(n)	جدال - نقاش (حاد)	gloomy(adj)	كئيب/ مظلم
behave yourself	أحسِن التَصَرُّف	spider's web(n)	شبكة عنكبوت
dusty(adj)	مُغَبَّر/ يَعْلُوهُ الغُبارُ	wrap(ped)(v)	يُغلِّف

2 Definitions التعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا. فهى موضع امتحان.

apprenticeship(n) تدريب مهني	- the job of being an apprentice, or the period of time in which you are an apprentice
argument(v) جدال - نقاش (حاد)	- a situation in which two or more people disagree, often angrily.
behave yourself أحسِن التَصَرُّف	- to not do things that annoy or offend يضايق people
dusty(adj) مُغَبَّر/ يَعْلُوهُ الغُبارُ	- covered with dust الغبار
gloomy(adj) كئيب/ مظلم	- dark, especially in a way that makes you feel sad
spider's web(n) شبكة عنكبوت	- a net of thin threads خيوط made by a spider to catch insects

3 Idioms التعبيرات

That's your lot ! = You won't get any more.	هذا كل ما يخصك! (لن تحصل على المزيد)
- could not put my finger on what it was. = I couldn't work out what it was.	لا أعرف ما هو؟

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It was a gloomy room that was poorly lit by oil lamps. Gloomy is an antonym for .... *(LM)*
   a. pleasant b. dull c. depressed d. pleased
2. The young child is serving a/an .... as a carpenter. *(LM)*
   a. scholarship b. apprenticeship c. hardship d. membership
3. My friend .... the present and tied it in ribbon. *(Practice Ex. 2)*
   a. tricked b. appeared c. trapped d. wrapped
4. When I returned home, I saw that the table was .... for lunch.
   a. complicated b. involved c. addicted d. laid
5. We had a tour guide to .... us on our tour.
   a. lead b. leave c. depend d. appoint
6. Here's 200 pounds. That's your .... !
   a. load b. lot c. a lot d. little
7. .... means covered with dust.
   a. Connected b. Dusty c. Gloomy d. Individual
8. A spider's .... is a net of thin threads made by a spider to catch insects.
   a. web b. nest c. cage d. argument
9. A/An .... is a situation in which two or more people disagree, often angrily.
   a. agreement b. nest c. cage d. argument
10. To .... yourself means to not do things that annoy or offend people.
    a. behave b. lay c. lead d. evolve

Part II Skills

Translation


المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Technology plays a vital role in modern lives and profoundly affects the course of human civilisation. Technological advancement has made our lives easier and faster. *(LM)*

أ. تلعب التكنولوجيا دوراً حيوياً في الحياة الحديثة وتُؤثّر بعمق على مسار الحضارة الإنسانية، ولقد جعلت الحياة الحديثة التقدم التكنولوجي في حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

ب. تلعب التكنولوجيا دوراً حيوياً في الحياة الحديثة وتُؤثّر بعمق على مسار الحضارة الإنسانية، ولقد جعل التقدم التكنولوجي حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

جـ. تلعب التكنولوجيا دوراً حيوياً في الحياة الحديثة وتُؤثّر بعمق على مسار الثقافة الإنسانية، ولقد جعل التقدم التكنولوجي الحياة المَدَنية أسهل وأسرع.

د. تلعب الحياة الحديثة دوراً حيوياً في التكنولوجيا وتُؤثّر بعمق على مسار الحضارة الإنسانية، ولقد جعل التقدم التكنولوجي حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

---

2. We have to keep up with the new information, scientific or non-scientific, that is available every day.

أ. علينا مواكبة المعلومات الجديدة، سواء العلمية أو غير العلمية، التي تتاح كل يوم.

ب. علينا مواكبة المعلومات الجديدة، العلمية أو غير العملية، المتوفرة كل يوم.

جـ. علينا الحفاظ على المعلومات الجديدة، العلمية أو غير العلمية، المتوفرة كل يوم.

د. علينا مواكبة المعلومات الجديدة، العملية أو غير العلمية، المتوفرة كل يوم.

---

3. Learning is a never-to-stop process. Lifelong learning helps people to get the skills which help them get promoted.

أ. إن التعلم هو عملية لا يجب أن تتوقف، كما يساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعدهم على الترويج.

ب. إن التعلم هو عملية لا يمكن أن تتوقف، كما يساعد التعلم من الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعدهم على الترويج.

جـ. إن التعلُّم عملية لا تتوقف، ويساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعدهم على الترفيه.

د. إن التعلُّم عملية لا تتوقف، ويساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الأشخاص على اكتساب المهارات التي تساعدهم في الحصول على الترقية.

. Lifelong learning helps people keep up with the ongoing progress in the world of science and technology.

أ. يساعد التعلم مدى الحياة الناس على مواكبة التقدم المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.

ب. يساعد التعلم من الحياة الناس على مواكبة التقدم المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.

جـ. يساعد التعلم مدى الحياة على مواكبة تقدم الناس المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.

د. يساعد التعلم طوال العمر الناس على مقاومة التقدم المستمر في عالم العلوم والتكنولوجيا.

D Choose the best English translation :

١. من خلال الهندسة الاجتماعية، يحاول لصوص الكمبيوتر خداعك لتمنحهم كلمة المرور الخاصة بك لتثبيت برامج ضارة للوصول إلى معلوماتك السرية والتحكم في جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بك. (M)

. Through genetic engineering, hackers usually try to trick you into giving them your password to install malicious hardware to access your secret information and control your computer.

. Through social engineering, hackers usually try to persuade you into giving them your password to install malicious software to access your secret information and steal your computer.

. Through social engineering, hackers usually try to trick you into giving them your password to install malicious software to steal your secret information and control your mobile.

. Through social engineering, hackers usually try to trick you into giving them your password to install malicious software to access your secret information and control your computer.

٢. تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء في محطة الطاقة العملاقة في صحراء مصر الغربية شمال أسوان.

a. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in the giant power station in the western desert of Egypt, north Aswan.

b. Solar energy is used to bear electricity in the giant power plant in the Western Desert of Egypt, northern of Aswan.

c. Solar energy is used to generate electricity in the giant power plant in the Western Desert of Egypt, north of Aswan.

d. Solar energy is used to generate electronics in the giant power plant in the Western Desert of Egypt, north of Aswan.

٣. يجب أن يُوَجَّه البحث العلمي لحل مشكلات المجتمع مثل التكدس المروري والتلوث والتسرب من التعليم.

a. Scientific search should be directed to solve the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollination, and school dropout.
b. Scientific research should be directed only to solve the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.
c. Scientific research should be direct to solve the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.
d. Scientific research should be directed to solving the problems of society such as traffic congestion, pollution, and school dropout.

٤. إذا أردنا أن نتقدم في شتي المجالات، فيجب علينا أن نهتم بالتعليم بجميع أركانه: الطالب والمعلم والمنهج والبيئة المدرسية.

a. If we wanted to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in all its corners: the student, the teacher, the curriculum vitae and the school environment.
b. If we want to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in all its pillars: the student, the teacher, the curriculum and the school environment.
c. If we want to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in all it's pillars: the student, the teacher, the curriculum and the school environment.
d. If we want to advance in various fields, we must pay attention to education in each its pillars: the student, the teacher, the curriculum and the school environment.

Test on Unit 3

• Understand • Apply • Create



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d

1. The good thing is that scientists have introduced really .... ideas to reduce pollution.
   a. immersed   b. produced   c. innovative   d. inconvenient
2. The .... carrying the astronauts reached the space station.
   a. universe   b. surface   c. spacecraft   d. process
3. Film makers depend on .... effects to impress their audience.
   a. illustrated   b. visual   c. paper-thin   d. permanent
4. A/An .... is a scientist who studies the stars and planets.
   a. astronomer   b. astronaut   c. speaker   d. dentist
5. I was shocked when the manager turned down my approach". In this context, 'approach' is a synonym of ....
   a. leave   b. go near   c. attitude   d. proposal
6. Film viewers are still .... by 3-D technology.
   a. immerses   b. immersed   c. immersive   d. immersion
7. You can email me .... moasserseries@moasser.com .
   a. at   b. of   c. for   d. onto
8. It is necessary to sterilise يُعقّم .... equipment.
   a. addicted   b. complicated   c. surgical   d. artificial
9. I'm bored with this programme. When ....?
   a. is it finish   b. does it finish
   c. is it going to finish   d. it finishes
10. When the book forum ...., I will have published my second novel.
    a. opened   b. had opened
    c. has opened   d. will open
11. I'll phone you the minute I .... your work .
    a. have finished   b. will finish   c. had finished   d. finished
12. Phone me once you ....the message.
    a. have read   b. reads   c. was reading   d. had read
13. By this time tomorrow, my father .... to England already.
    a. will fly   b. would fly   c. will have flown   d. flies

14. By 2050, we hope that oil .... by clean energy.
    a. will have replaced
    b. will have been replaced
    c. will replace
    d. has been replaced

15. Once I .... home after work, I am going to take a shower.
    a. arrived
    b. arrive
    c. have been arrived
    d. had taken

16. At ten o'clock tomorrow, I .... on a train to Aswan!
    a. travel
    b. will have travelled
    c. going to travel
    d. will be travelling

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The application of spreading theories of economics has so far failed to lift developing countries out of the cycle of poverty that has effects on the majority of their inhabitants. Worldwide, there are still an estimated 1.3 billion people earning a dollar or less a day and living in extreme poverty. Decades of huge loans by banks from affluent nations-at interest rates that cripple developing economies-do not appear to be providing a solution to poverty. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank, however, is taking a different approach to the problem.

In 1976, the Bangladeshi economics professor started a microcredit programme with a loan of just 62 cents (U.S.) each to a group of 42 workers. Instead of loaning large amounts of money to well-off debtors, the bank he started made extremely small loans to poor Bangladeshis who were considered a bad risk by the traditional banking system.

He **astounded** his critics by proving that the poor were more likely to repay their debts than the wealthy. Virtually none of the thousands of women who have been financially assisted by the bank for over 20 years have defaulted on their payments. Yet all are expected to pay interest and stick to the rules of contract. These borrowings have enabled Bangladeshi women to set up numerous small-scale projects which directly benefit their families and the communities where they live. The success of the experiment has brought about a revolution in the anti-poverty programmes.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The best title for the passage is ....
   a. A common problem with a new solution
   b. A new problem with common solution
   c. A new way of begging money
   d. The developing countries' loans

18. We can infer from the passage that the word **"astounded"** means ....
   a. astonished b. provided
   c. admitted d. improved

19. The last lines of the passage represents ....
   a. the success of the experience b. the failure of the experience
   c. the increase of poverty d. the decrease of interests

20. At the beginning of his experiment, Professor Muhammad Yunus was ....
   a. supported b. criticised c. suspected d. appreciated

21. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank way to treat poverty was ....
   a. unique b. common c. unreliable d. dishonest

22. Do theories of economics manage to overcome the poverty in the world? Why?
   a. Yes, as many people live happily and comfortably.
   b. Yes, as there are few developing countries.
   c. No, as there are loans need to be paid by many developed countries.
   d. No, because most developing countries' people suffer from poverty.

23. What did Muhammed Yunus do to face poverty in Bangladesh?
   a. He borrowed from the rich
   b. He lent the young people
   c. He lent the poor people
   d. He borrowed from Bangladeshi Banks

24. What do you think of Mohammed Yunus?
   a. Genius b. Greedy
   c. Selfish d. Helpless

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Tropical cyclones are called typhoons in Asia and hurricanes in North and South America. These storms go around like a wheel turning to the left when they hit in the northern part of the world. They have wind speeds of 60 kph or more. In the United States, the Tropical Prediction Center in Miami, Florida keeps an eye out for hurricanes.

When meteorologists **detect** a hurricane, they give it a name. They can use either a male or female name. Why should tropical cyclones have names? The name makes it easier for people to keep up with information about a hurricane and its possible dangers. The World Meteorological Organization (WMO), an international weather group, decides what names will be used.

The WMO makes lists of names using the English alphabet. Each name on the list starts with a different letter. The first hurricane of the year gets the first name on that year's list. The second hurricane gets the next name. For example, if the first hurricane is named Abel, the second might be named Betty. The name lists do not include names beginning with the letters Q, U, X, Y, and Z. There aren't many names that begin with these letters.

Asian countries use a different list, which is made up by the WMO's Typhoon Committee.

This list has a few personal names, but most of the names are of flowers, animals, trees, and other similar things.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The best title for this passage is ....
    a. Tropical cyclones
    b. Cyclones' speed
    c. The World Meteorological Organization
    d. The USA cyclones

26. Hurricanes and typhoons are two kinds of ....
    a. floods b. continents c. storms d. rivers

27. It can be inferred from the passage that the fifth hurricane in 2019 might have the name ....
    a. William b. Emmy c. Andrew d. Joliana

28. The writer thinks that ....

a. using names makes matters easier

b. using names makes confusion

c. using numbers is better than using names

d. using letters is better than using names

29. After reading the passage, what does a meteorologist study?

a. The science of the atmosphere and its phenomena.

b. The science of the volcanoes and the earthquakes.

c. The oceans and the marine life.

d. The living things and their lives' cycle.

30. According to the passage, the verb "detect" means ....

a. invent b. discover c. float d. sink

31. Giving the cyclones names helps to ....

a. call for them easily at any time

b. send information about them to the WOM

c. make them known for people to remember them

d. go around like a wheel turning to the left

32. The main idea of the last paragraph is ....

a. Cyclones have different names with the same qualities

b. Hurricanes and typhoons are very different kinds of storms

c. North America doesn't have hurricanes or typhoons

d. Asian typhoons have animals and plants names

Choose the correct Arabic translation:

33. When you buy food, buy it from a reliable restaurant, where you know that you can count on your food being tasty and healthy.

أ. عندما اشتريت طعام، اشتريته من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون حسن الطعم وصحي.

ب. وقتما تشترى طعام، فلتشتريه من مطعم معروف، لكى تستطيع أن تتأكد أن طعامك سيكون حسن المظهر وصحي.

جـ. عندما تشترى طعام، فلتشتريه من مطعم موثوق به، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون لذيذ وصحي.

د. كلما تشترى طعام، اشتريته من مطعم ذو سمعة طيبة، حيثما تستطيع أن تثق أن طعامك سيكون متميز وصحي.

34. Most people agree that there is no place like home. It is more than just a place to stay in. It is part of one's life and personality.

أ. يتفق معظم الناس أنه يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتمكث فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.

ب. يتفق معظم الناس أنه لا يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان للإقامة فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

جـ. دائمًا يتفق معظم الناس أن يوجد مكان مثل الوطن. فهو أكبر من كونه مكان لتحيا فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الواحد وشخصيته.

د. لقد اتفق معظم الناس دائمًا أن يوجد مكان مثل المنزل. فهو أكثر من كونه مكان لتحيا فيه. فهو جزء من حياة الفرد وشخصيته.

Choose the correct English translation:

٣٥. عقدت الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة إيجاد حل لمشكلة الإحتباس الحراري ، ولكننا حتى الآن لم نجد الحل الأمثل.

a. Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global problem, but we couldn't find the most perfect solution.

b. Many international conferences had held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we cannot find the least perfect solution.

c. Many international conferences have held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we cannot be found the most perfect solution.

d. Many international conferences have been held to find a solution for the global warming problem, but we haven't found the most perfect solution.

٣٦. مشكلة نقص الماء ، أحد أهم المشكلات التي تواجه بلدنا في الفترة الحالية وتحاول الحكومة حلها.

a. Water lack is one of the most important problems that forces our country these days and the government had tried to solve it.

b. Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our continent nowadays and the government will try to solve it.

c. Water lack is one of the most important problems that supports our country those day and the government tried to solve it.

d. Water shortage is one of the most important problems that faces our country nowadays and the government tries to solve it.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. The following is part of a/an .... essay. *(LM)*

a. descriptive
b. narrative
c. persuasive
d. argumentative

Learning something new can be a scary experience. One of the worst experiences of my life was learning how to swim. However, I decided that swimming was an important skill to acquire and practise. I thought that learning to swim could make me physically stronger. I felt that would help me be more confident. On the first day of learning how to swim, I felt nervous. Yet, I was encouraged by the excellent performance of my friends. Gradually, I learned how to swim. What a useful experience!

38. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*

a. Tamer, have you read Great Expectations by Charles Dickens.
b. Tamer, have you read Great Expectations by Charles' Dickens'?
c. Tamer have you read Great Expectations by Charles Dickens?
d. Tamer, have you read Great Expectations by Charles Dickens?

39. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*

a. The headmaster said, Rami, could you tell me why you don t pay attention to your teacher?"
b. The headmaster said, "Rami, could you tell me why you don't pay attention to your teacher?"
c. The headmaster said, "Rami could you tell me why you don t pay attention to your teacher".
d. The headmaster said "Rami could you tell me why you don t pay attention to your teacher?"

40. Which of the following makes you write a business letter ?

a. To make sure a friend attends a wedding.
b. To tell a joke.
c. To express concern for a product.
d. To ask about a cousin's health.

Answers of Test on unit 3

اسم الطالـب (رباعياً) : ....

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

No.					No.				
1.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	21.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
2.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	22.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
3.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	23.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
4.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	24.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
5.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	25.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
6.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	26.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
7.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	27.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
8.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	28.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
9.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	29.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
10.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	30.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
11.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	31.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
12.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	32.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
13.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	33.	(د)	(جـ)	(ب)	(أ)
14.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	34.	(د)	(جـ)	(ب)	(أ)
15.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	35.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
16.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	36.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
17.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	37.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
18.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	38.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
19.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	39.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
20.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ	40.	ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 3



1. Finish the following dialogue :

Rodayna is being interviewed for the job of an accountant.

interviewer : (1) ....

Rodayna : Thank you, sir.

interviewer : (2) .... ?

Rodayna : I have an MSc in accountancy.

interviewer : (3) .... ?

Rodayna : I can speak English and French well.

interviewer : (4) .... ?

Rodayna : I'm a member of the club's basketball team.

interviewer : Do you have any work experience?

Rodayna : Yes, I worked for an advertising company for three years.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Technology and its importance in education"

....

3. Translate into Arabic :

To be good citizens in the future, children need to grow in an atmosphere of love and family warmth.

....

4. Translate into English :

- يتحلى الطالب الناجح بالصبر والعزيمة حتى يصل لهدفه المنشود.

....

5. Choose the correct answer : (Islamic Selections)

- Many Meccans .... Prophet Muhammed (PBUH). (الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

a. obeyed b. accepted c. believed d. contradicted

Revision **1**

Based On Units 1, 2 & 3

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 20 : 25

تنويه
تقييمات تراكمية في بنك الأسئلة

Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

advance(d) (v)	يتطورُ – يتقدَّم	handcuffs(n)	قيود (كلابشات) اليدين
apprenticeship(n)	تدريب مهني	hanging over(adj)	مُعلَّق – مُتدلّي
argument(n)	جدال – نقاش (حاد)	immerse(d) (v)	يَدمج – يَغمُر
astronaut(n)	رائد فضاء	impressive(adj)	مُبهر
astronomer(n)	عالم فلك	inaccurate(adj)	خاطئ/ غير دقيق
award(ed) (n/v)	جائزة – مِنحة – يمنح جائزة	including(prep)	بما في ذلك
balanced(n)	متوازن – عادل – موضوعي	inspiring(adj)	مُلهِم
ban(ned) (v/n)	يحظُر – حظر	involve(d) (v)	يتضمن/يشتمل على – يستلزم
bias(ed) (v)	يتحامَل/يتحزَّب-يُحرِّض	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
bias(n)	تَحامُل/ تَحزُّب/ تَحيُّز	misleading(adj/n)	مُضلِّل – التضليل
bride(n)	العروسة	mission(n)	مَهمة
chemist(n)	عالم كيمياء/صيدلاني	objective(adj/n)	موضوعي – هدف
competition(n)	مسابقة	physicist(n)	فيزيائي/خبير في الفيزياء
computing(n)	علوم الحاسبات	point of view	رأي/وجهة نظر
confusing(adj)	مُحيِّر – مُربِك	prejudice(n)	انحياز/ تَحامُل/ ظُلم
contribution(n)	مُساهمة/مشاركة	puppet(n)	دُمية
convict(n)	مَسجون – مُذنِب	radioactivity(n)	النشاط الإشعاعي
cost – cost (v/n)	يتكلَّف – التكلفة	receive(d) (v)	يتلقى – يتسلَّم
CV = Curriculum Vitae(n)	السيرة الذاتية	reporter(n)	صحفي – مُبلِّغ
detect(ed) (v)	يتحسس – يختبر	senior developer(n)	مُطوِّر خبير
development(n)	تطوير	signal-hopping(n)	التنوع الترددي
difficulties(n)	صعوبات	stir(red) (v)	يُقلِّب
digitheatre(n)	المسرح الرقمي	Swarm Robotics(n)	علم الروبوتات السرب
duties(n)	الواجبات	whilst(conj)	بينما – برغم أن
electric-powered(adj)	يعمل بالكهرباء	worth(adj/n)	قيمة – ذو قيمة
ESB Robotics(n)	علم الروبوتات الوسيطة		
gloomy(adj)	كئيب/ مظلم		

2 Extra Vocabulary متلازمات لفظية

actress(n)	ممثلة	musical(n)	عرض موسيقي
basis(n)	أساس	overcome – overcame – overcome(v)	يتغلب علي
career(n)	حياة مهنية		
climate(n)	المناخ	present(ed) (v)	يقوم بعرض تقديمي
communication(n)	اتصال	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
create(d) (v)	يخترع	purpose(n)	غرض
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	racing(adj)	سباق
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية	reality(n)	حقيقة/واقع
electronics(n)	علم الإلكترونيات	recommend(ed) (v)	يُحبِّذ / يُزكي
expert(n)	خبير	review(n)	عرض نقدي
fascinating(adj)	رائع/جذاب	show(n)	عَرْض
field(n)	مجال	software(n)	برنامج تشغيل
hopefully(adv)	من المُنتظَر	target(n)	هدف
invent(ed) (v)	يخترع	theatre(n)	مسرح
inventor(n)	مُخترِع	wireless(adj)	لاسلكي
key skills(n)	المهارات الأساسية	wooden(adj)	خشبي

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

avoid	prejudice يتجنب التحَيُّز	overcome	the difficulties and prejudice يتغلب على الصعوبات والتفرقة (التحيُّز)
develop	key skill يُطوِّر المهارات الأساسية	prepare	a presentation يجهز عرض تقديمي
focus	attention on يركز الاهتمام علي	present	a view يُقدِّم رأي
get	lost يتوه / يضل الطريق	present	an idea يقوم بعرض فكرة
have	... in common لديهم شيء مشترك	share	knowledge with يتبادل المعلومات مع
invent	a technology يخترع تكنولوجيا	take	place يحدث
make	important contribution يُقدم إسهامات هامة	tell	the story of يحكي قصة
make	predictions يتنبأ	win	the chance يحصل علي فرصة

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
a news story	موضوع إخباري	immerse ... in	يدمج ... مع
at the top of	في ذروة/ في أوج	inspiring women	نساء مُلهمات
be made up of	يتكون من	key facts	حقائق أساسية
come to life	يُبعث/ يعود للحياة	on a journey	في رحلة
degree in Computing and Electronics	شهادة جامعية في الحاسبات والإلكترونيات	on your own	بمفردك
dream of	يحلم بـ	space travel	السفر للفضاء
electric-powered racing cars	سيارات سباق تعمل بالكهربا.	take off	تقلع الطائرة – يخلع ملابس
famous for	مشهور بـ	target audience	الجمهور المستهدف
feel about	يشعر بالنسبة لـ	travel into space	يسافر إلى الفضاء.
get messages across to	يُعلِّم دروس مستفادة لـ	wireless communication	الاتصال اللاسلكي
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	wooden puppets	عرائس خشبية
in two different fields	في مجالين مختلفين	work best for	تناسب علي أكمل وجه مع
		write down	يدوّن/يُسجّل

3 Enrich your knowledge اضف إلي معلوماتك

Signal-hopping = Frequency-hopping التنوع الترددي

It is a method of transmitting radio signals by rapidly changing the carrier frequency among many distinct frequencies occupying a large spectral band.

إنها طريقة لإرسال ترددات الراديو عن طريق التغيير السريع لتردد الموجة الحاملة بين العديد من الترددات المتميزة التي تشغل نطاقًا طيفيًا كبيرًا.

STEM العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات

Science, technology, engineering, and mathematics

Swarm Robotics علم روبوتات السرب

In swarm robotics multiple robots collectively solve problems by forming advantageous structures and behaviors similar to the ones observed in natural systems, such as swarms of bees, birds, or fish.

تعمل الروبوتات متعددة السرب على حل المشكلات بشكل جماعي من خلال تكوين هياكل وسلوكيات مفيدة مماثلة لتلك التي لوحظت في النظم الطبيعية، مثل أسراب النحل أو الطيور أو الأسماك.

ESB Robotics
علم الربوتات الوسيطة

ESB = Enterprise Service Bus المُعالج الإلكتروني الوسيط

An enterprise service bus (ESB) is a middleware tool used to distribute work among connected components of an application. It offers applications the ability to connect to the bus and subscribe to messages based on simple structural and business policy rules.

المُعالج الإلكتروني الوسيط (BSE) هو أداة وسيطة تُستخدم لتوزيع العمل بين المكونات المتصلة بالتطبيق، وهو يوفر للتطبيقات القدرة على الاتصال بالمعالج الناقل وتبادل الرسائل بناءً على قواعد هيكلية وسياسة عمل بسيطة.

Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Text

DIGITHEATRE(1) REVIEW(2)

SB page (36)





Scientists from history come to life in a new online show(3) involving(4) wooden(5) puppets, (6) music and theatre(7) called Jina and the Stem Sisters. It's a musical(8) with great songs and a wonderful message. The show tells the story of some of the most inspiring(9) women in science and mathematics.

In the story, Jina is on a journey and gets lost(10) in a forest. There she meets women who have made important contribution(11) to the history of STEM. The women include Hedy Lamarr, who was both an actress(12) and inventor(13). Whilst(14) at the top of her film career(15), she invented(16) a technology called signal-hopping(17), which later was the basis(18) for all modern wireless(19) communication(20), including(21) that found in mobile phones.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المسرح الرقمي
(2) عرض نقدي
(3) عَرض
(4) يتضمن/يشتمل على
(5) خشبي
(6) دُمية
(7) مسرح
(8) عرض موسيقي
(9) مُلهم
(10) يضل الطريق
(11) مُساهمة/مشاركة
(12) ممثلة
(13) مُخترع
(14) بينما
(15) حياة مهنية
(16) يخترع
(17) التنوع الترددي
(18) أساس
(19) لاسلكي
(20) اتصال
(21) بما في ذلك

Other women that Jina meets are Marie Curie, who was a physicist(22) and chemist(23) famous for her research and experiments(24) on radioactivity(25), and Mae Jemison, an American engineer and astronaut(26). Marie Curie was the first woman to win the Nobel Prize award in two different fields(27). Mae Jemison was the first black woman to travel into space.

The scientists share their knowledge(28) with Jina and help her to develop key skills(29) to become a future STEM expert(30) herself. On her journey, Jina also meets computer scientist Ada Lovelace and astronomer(31) who show Jina the stars.

The show has been created(32) for schools. It will hopefully(33) encourage young people to find out more about these inspiring women in science and how they overcame(34) the difficulties(35) and prejudice(36) in their way.

"The puppets were beautiful and completely immerse(37) me in the characters", Mona, aged 12. "I definitely(38) recommend(39) it."

عالم فيزياء (22)
عالم كيمياء/صيدلاني (23)
تجربة معملية (24)
النشاط الإشعاعي (25)
رائد فضاء (26)
مجال (27)
المعرفة (28)
المهارات الأساسية (29)
خبير (30)
عالم فلك (31)
يخترع (32)
من المُنتظر (33)
يتغلب علي (34)
صعوبات (35)
التحيُّز (36)
يغمر - يدمج (37)
بالتأكيد (38)
يُحبذ/ يُزكي (39)

SB page (38)

CV

Name : Sara Ahmed

Education : Degree(1) in Computing(2) and Electronics(3)

Engineering PhD in Swarm Robotics(4)

Job : Senior developer(5), ESB Robotics(6)

Duties(7): Developing software(8) for robots

Biggest achievement : developed a new robot which will teach young people about programming

Check Vocabulary

شهادة جامعية (1)
علوم الحاسبات (2)
علم الإلكترونيات (3)
علم روبوتات السرب (4)
مُطوِّر خبير (5)
علم الروبوتات الوسيطة (6)
الواجبات (7)
برنامج تشغيل (8)

CV

SB page (38)

Name: Amani Safwat
Education: Degree in mechanical engineering
Job : Car engineer, Mahindra Racing[1]
Duties: Prepares cars for race days



Check Vocabulary
(1) سباق
(2) مشاركة/مساهمة
(3) تطوير
(4) يعمل بالكهرباء

Biggest achievement: made a contribution[2] to the development[3] of electric-powered[4] racing cars

Competition time

SB page (39)

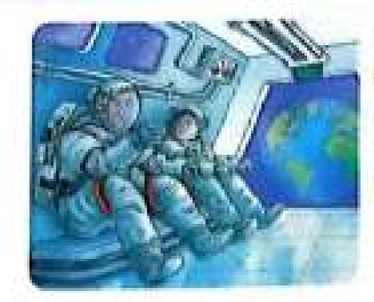
Do you dream of becoming **a journalist** (reporter)? If so, enter our competition to win the chance to see your story in our magazine. If you've got a fascinating story to report from your local area, we want to hear from you. Here are some top tips from our Editor to get you started. The winning story will be published in In the News, find out more:
www.IntheNewsnews.com

Top tips for writing a news story
- Present a view which is **objective** (balanced).
- Include the key facts, and make sure you check them.
- Try to avoid any **prejudice** (bias).
- Don't include information that is inaccurate (not correct).
- Be careful not to include **confusing** (misleading) figures.
- Interview people involved to get different **opinions** (points of view).

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 37)

Presenter : Hi and welcome to the Tech Show.
Today, we'll be talking about space travel[1].
If you dream of[2] going into space, the moment seems to be getting closer[3].



Check Vocabulary
(1) السفر للفضاء
(2) يحلم بـ
(3) يقترب/يدنو

1

Later this year, the first ever space flight for 'tourists' will take place[4], the latest project[5] of a space exploration[6] company. The mission[7] will make history[8] because it'll be made up of[9] four members[10] of the public[11], without an astronaut[12]. If it's successful it could lead to[13] other space travel for tourists in the near future. The lucky passengers taking part[14] will be receiving astronaut training; they'll learn how to cope[15] in an emergency[16], and how to operate[17] the spaceship[18]. After they've taken off from a NASA launch[19] site, the spacecraft will spend several days orbiting[20] round the Earth in space before splashing[21] down off the coast[22] of Florida in the US. Astronaut, Tony Gates who's in the studio today, knows what it's like to experience[23] the feeling of being in space. Tony, what exactly does it feel like[24] to be up there looking down on[25] Earth? What can the tourists expect?

Tony Gates: It's an amazing feeling, difficult to explain[26] in words. It's not like seeing it in a film. When you look out at the universe[27] from the spaceship, it makes you feel connected to the Earth in a special way.

Presenter : So, for hopeful astronauts out there, how much will a trip like this cost in the future?

Tony Gates: For short trips, like these, at least $250,000, for longer trips millions of dollars ...

Presenter : Is it worth[28] it?

Tony Gates: For some people who have that kind of money, obviously[29] yes. Some companies have been developing commercial[30] space craft for many years, and have very long waiting lists[31] for their first passenger flights.

يُنفَّذ (4)
مشروع (5)
استكشاف (6)
مهمة (7)
يصنع التاريخ (8)
يتكون من (9)
عضو (10)
الجمهور (11)
رائد فضاء (12)
يؤدي إلى (13)
يشارك (14)
يتأقلم/يتكيف (15)
الطوارئ (16)
يُشغِّل (17)
سفينة الفضاء (18)
إطلاق (19)
يدور حول (20)
تهبط في الماء (21)
قبالة الساحل (22)
تجرب/يعايش (23)
يبدو مثل (24)
ينظر لأسفل إلي (25)
يشرح (26)
الكون (27)
يستحق (28)
بوضوح (29)
تجاري (30)
قوائم الانتظار (31)

Presenter : And how do you think space travel in general[32] will have advanced[33] by the end of the decade?

Tony Gates: Let's hope we'll have made our first human journey to Mars.

Presenter : That's an exciting thought[34]!

(32) بصفة عامة
(33) يتقدم/يتطور
(34) فكرة

(SB page 38)

Interviewer: How did you get into[1] working with robots? Have you always wanted to be an engineer?

Sara : It was my dad, really, he's worked as a computer scientist all his life, and I was always playing with computers. He bought me my first computer when I was about 7, and I loved it. I was always experimenting[2] on it.

Interviewer: And you studied computer science at university?

Sara : Yes, actually[3] it was computing and electronics engineering[4]. Then I carried on[5] studying and did a PhD in Swarm Robotics.

Interviewer: What's that?

Sara : It's using groups of autonomous[6] robots to work together to perform a task[7].

Interviewer: And what do you do in your spare time[8] ?

Sara : I love music; it's very similar to engineering in some ways. Like computer coding[9], it's a type of language used to communicate, and you need to work hard and practise[10] a lot before you can be creative[11] with it.

Interviewer: And what advice would you give to other girls who want to go into robotics[12] ?

Sara : Go for it! I want to inspire[13] more women to go into the industry[14] because robots are fun, and they'll enjoy it!

Check Vocabulary

(1) ينخرط في
(2) يُجرّب
(3) في الواقع
(4) هندسة الحاسبات والإلكترونيات
(5) يستمر في
(6) مستقل
(7) يؤدي مهمة
(8) وقت فراغ
(9) ترميز
(10) يمارس
(11) مبدع
(12) علم الروبوتات
(13) يلهم
(14) نشاط / صناعة



New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

PART ONE

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات

للصف الثالث الثانوى
عـــام - أزهـــرى
الفصل الدراسى الأول



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى



FIRST TERM




By: Sawsan kameL

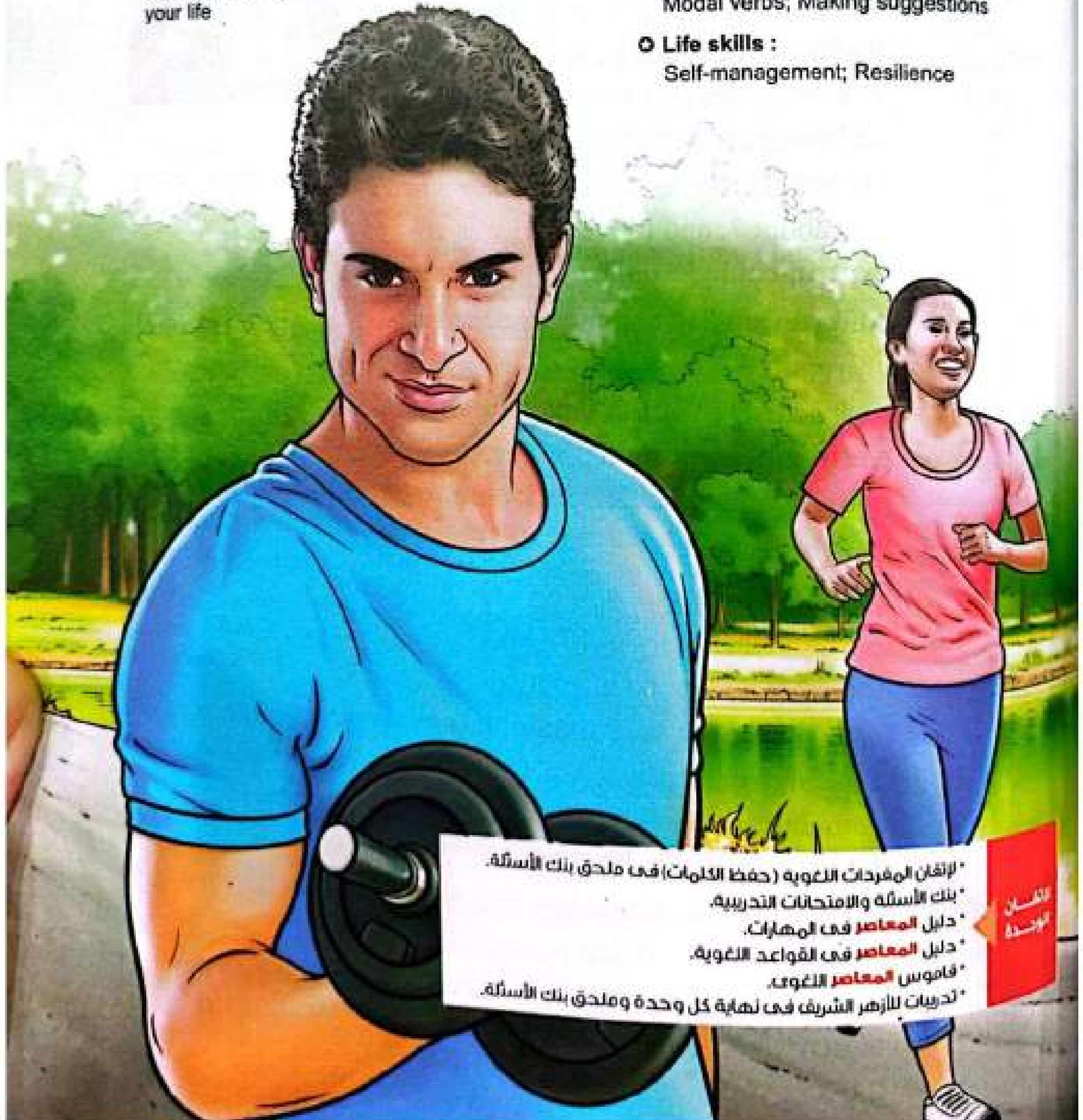
UNIT

4 Taking care of ourselves

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 26 : 31

Learning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  An article about burnout; An excerpt from the poem Suppose by Phoebe Carey
- **Writing :**
  An email to a friend to offer help; An essay about changes you have experienced in your life
- **Listening :**
  Voice messages about well-being
- **Speaking :**
  Discussion to find solutions for mental health problems
- **Language :**
  Modal verbs; Making suggestions
- **Life skills :**
  Self-management; Resilience



LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 42 – 45 WB pages 26 & 27



Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

alter(ed)(v)	يُغير – يتغير	pout(ed) (v)	يستاء - يتجهم
burnout(n)	الإنهاك/نفاد الطاقة	promote(d) (v)	يُروّج لـ – يُرقّي
clear off(phr.v)	يغادر – ينقشع – يزول	promote(d) (v)	يُعزّز/يدعم/يُطوّر
cope(d) (v)	يساير/ يَتصدّى/ يُذلل	scold(ed) (v)	يُعنّف/ يُوبّخ
exhausted(adj)	مُنهَك/مُجهَد/مُرهَق	self-care(n)	العناية بالذات
frown(ed) (v)	يعبس/يقطب جبينه	stress(n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط
improve(d) (v)	يَتحسّن/يُحسن	stressed(adj)	مضغوط/مُجهَد
manage(d) (v)	يُدير – ينجح/يتمكّن	stressful(adj)	مُرهِق/شاقّ/ضاغط
management(n)	إدارة/تَحَكم	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض/ يتصوّر
mental health(n)	الصّحّةُ النّفسِيّةُ/ العقلِيّة	time management(n)	إدارة الوقت
mental(adj)	ذهني/عقلي	well-being(n)	العافية/ السلامة/ السعادة

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

affairs(n)	أحداث – شئون	issue(n)	قضية/مشكلة – موضوع
alarm(ed) (n/v)	منبه – يُزعِج	limit(ed) (v)	يحد من/يقلل
anxiety(n)	الضغط	media(n)	وسائل الإعلام
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنّب/يتحاشي	message(n)	درس مستفاد – رسالة
basis(n)	أساس	normally(adv)	بشكل طبيعي
behaviour(n)	سُلوك/تَصَرُّف	pain(n)	ألم
benefit(ed) (v/n)	يستفيد – فائدة	perfectly(adv)	بشكل مثالي
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفِكر – يستبدع	please(d) (v)	يُسْعِد/يَسُرّ
brave(adj)	شجاع/مقدام	poor(adj)	سيئ
caffeine(n)	الكافيين	pour(ed) (v)	ينهمر/يتدفق
category(n)	تصنيف	pressure(n)	الضغط
choice(n)	اختيار	priority(n)	أولوية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
concentrate(d) (v)	يُركِّز	psychologist(n)	عالم نفس
consider(ed) (v)	يتفكر-يأخذ في الإعتبار	react(ed) (v)	يستجيب/يتجاوب مع
constantly(adv)	باستمرار	reaction(n)	رد فعل - استجابة
control(led) (v)	يتحكم في	reduce(d) (v)	يُقلل
counsellor(n)	مُستشار/مُرشد	regret(ted) (n/v)	الندم - يندم على
creation(n)	الخلق/الكون/الإبداع	regular(adj)	مُنتظم
current(adj)	حالي/جاري	responsibility(n)	المسئولية
divide(d) (v)	يُقسِّم	shoulder(n)	كتف
dress(ed) (v)	يرتدي/يلبس	snack(n)	وجبة خفيفة
endorphins(n)	الإندورفين	sound(ed) (v)	يبدو
experience(d) (v)	يتعرض لـ/يعاني	source(n)	مصدر
extra(adj/adv)	اضافي	stretch(ed) (v)	يُمدِّد - يتمطى
extreme(adj)	شديد/متطرف	tips(n)	نصائح
frustrated(adj)	مُحبَط	unhealthily(adv)	بطريقة غير صحيَّة
increase(d) (v)	يزيد	urgent(adj)	عاجل/ مُلِحّ
interact(ed) (v)	يتفاعل	wise(adj)	حكيم

3 Definitions تعريفات

Word	Definition
alter(v) يغير - يتغير	to change, or to make someone/something change
burnout(n) الإنهاك/نفاد الطاقة	a situation where you can't do anything because you're so tired and stressed
clear off (phr.v) يغادر	to leave a place quickly
cope(d) (v) يساير / يَتَصدَّى / يُذلل	to deal successfully with difficult situations
exhausted(adj) مُنهَك/مُرهَق	describing the feeling of being very tired
frown(ed) (v) يعبس/يتجهَّم- يقطب حاجبيه	to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression تعبير, moving your eyebrows حاجبين together
improve(d) (v) يَتَحسَّن	to get better
mental health(n) الصِّحَّةُ النَّفسِيَّة/ العقليَّة	how we handle stress, relate to others and make choices
pout(ed) (v) يستاء/(يبوز/يُكشِّر)	to push out your lower lip الشِفة السُفلي because you are annoyed or unhappy

promote(d) (v) يُروِّج لـ	to tell people about something
promote(d) (v) يُعزز/يدعم/يُطوِّر	support and encourage the development of something
scold(ed) (v) يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	to angrily criticize ينتقد someone, especially a child, about something they have done
self-care(n) العِنايَةُ الذاتِيَّة	taking care رعاية of your body and how you feel
stress(n) الإجهاد/ الضغط	a feeling of being very worried and scared خائف
suppose(d) (v) يفرض	to think that something is probably true, based on استناداً إلي what you know
time management(n) إدارة الوقت	organising when you do things and for how long
well-being(n) العَافِيَة/ السلامة/السعادة	- how good you feel in your body and how happy you are - the state of being comfortable, healthy and happy

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I couldn't continue working because I was completely .... *(LM)*
   a. exhausted b. relaxed c. interested d. interesting
2. The new secretary was worried that he wouldn't be able to .... with his boss's demands. *(LM)*
   a. run b. race c. cope d. carry
3. Doctors and nurses are responsible for the care and .... of their patients. *(LM)*
   a. well-born b. well-being c. self-harm d. self-denial
4. Time .... is highly recommended when running your own business. *(LM)*
   a. management b. retirement c. punishment d. reassignment
5. Don't worry, your father is .... , and he is going to leave the hospital very soon. *(LM)*
   a. approving b. moving c. improving d. removing
6. Congratulations! I heard you have been .... to a higher position. *(LM)*
   a. uprooted b. promoted c. operated d. removed

7. If you start studying early for your exams, you won't feel afraid or too .... (LM)
a. steered b. relieved c. relaxed d. stressed

8. I must leave now; I'm .... to be in the office in half an hour. (LM)
a. imposed b. supposed c. refused d. enclosed

9. Don't .... the new nurse for breaking the machine. It was an accident. (LM)
a. renew b. reward c. scold d. forgive

10. She .... at her son when she found out that he hadn't done his homework. (LM)
a. pleased b. frowned c. aimed d. saw

11. If you .... the position of the desk, there will be more room for the chair. (LM)
a. alter b. charge c. check d. share

12. I don't like this kind of work because it is .... (LM)
a. needful b. aimful c. stressful d. regretful

13. You need to drive your car slowly; I don't think the mist will .... very soon. (LM)
a. think of b. run after c. clear off d. put off

14. Studying for ten hours nonstop may affect your .... health.
a. mental b. urgent c. brave d. stressful

15. .... plays a vital role in leading a business to success.
a. Burnout b. Management c. Message d. Category

16. I shouted at my daughter, who .... her lips and tears ran down her cheeks.
a. exhausted b. concentrated c. promoted d. pouted

17. Those who suffer from .... should relieve work pressure they put on themselves.
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret

2 Important Vocabulary

18. Although my wife is a successful chemist, our family is her first ....
a. priority b. reaction
c. mental health d. time management

19. It is advisable that you .... making friends with such bullies. تضمين
a. manage b. avoid c. stretch d. experience

20. Don't make much .... on children. Let them have their space and monitored freedom of action.
a. pressure b. well-being c. counsellor d. dress

21. His .... management skills made him a failure.
a. mental b. urgent c. brave d. poor

22. The injured man needed a/an .... surgery on his broken leg.
a. mental b. urgent c. brave d. stressful

23. "I should have worked hard." This sentence expresses past ....
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret

24. A: What is the .... of this novel?
B: It teaches us that patience is a good quality.
a. burnout b. management c. message d. category

25. The purpose of the meeting is to .... ideas, not to make speeches.
a. please b. brainstorm c. suppose d. cope

26. Don't sit still in your chair for more than 25 minutes. Stand up and ....
a. manage b. avoid c. stretch d. experience

27. It is your .... to look after your family when your father is away.
a. pressure b. well-being c. counsellor d. responsibility

28. Rain was .... down while we were driving home.
a. frowning b. pouring c. altering d. promoting

29. I was shocked by his violent .... I don't know what annoyed him !
a. priority b. reaction
c. mental health d. time management

30. Reclaiming desert land and building new factories contribute to job ....
a. stress b. self-care c. creation d. regret

31. I was .... as nobody seemed to understand what I was trying to say.
a. exhausted b. stressful c. plunged d. frustrated

32. It .... a mother when her sons or daughters achieve success.
a. pleases b. brainstorms c. supposes d. copes

33. Everyone .... difficulties in their lives every now and then. Only winners overcome them.
a. manages b. avoids c. stretches d. experiences

34. Being a 75-year-old man, Dr Ali .... retiring from his medical career.
a. considers b. scolds c. improves d. clears

35. You need to find a .... to help you with your son's mental disorder.اضطراب
a. pressure b. psychologist c. counsellor d. b&c

36. I felt really .... and angry with myself when I lost the match. *(LM)*
a. creative b. impressed c. frustrated d. encouraged

3 Definitions

37. .... is a state of emotional, physical and mental exhaustion caused by excessive and prolonged stress. (LM)
a. Break out b. Burnout c. Knockout d. Checkout

38. To .... means to leave a place quickly.
a. stay b. cope c. clear off d. stress

39. To .... is to change, or to make someone or something change.
a. pour b. promote c. pout d. alter

40. To .... is to think that something is probably true, based on what you know.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose

41. .... means organising when you do things and for how long.
a. Time management b. Stress
c. Well-being d. Mental health

42. '............' is an adjective that describes the feeling of being very tired.
a. Mental b. Exhausted c. Poor d. Urgent

43. To .... is to deal with difficult situations.
a. cope b. promote c. alter d. pour

44. .... means how good you feel in your body and how happy you are.
a. Mental health b. Well-being c. Self-care d. Burnout

45. To .... is to angrily criticize someone, especially a child, about something they have done.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose

46. To .... is to help something to develop or increase.
a. cope b. promote c. alter d. prove

47. To .... is to make an angry, unhappy, or confused expression, moving your eyebrows together.
a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose

48. To .... is to get better.
a. cope b. promote c. alter d. improve

49. .... means taking care of your body and how you feel.
a. Mental health b. Well-being c. Self-care d. Burnout

50. .... is a feeling of being very worried and scared.
a. Time management b. Stress
c. Well-being d. Mental health

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

avoid	burnout يتجنب الإنهاك	keep	informed about يبقى على وعي بـ
cause	burnout يُسبِّب الإنهاك	make	decisions يتخذ قرارات
do	a test / exam يحل امتحان	make	notes on يُسجِّل ملاحظات عن
do	activities يمارس أنشطة	make	suggestions about يقدم اقتراحات بخصوص
do	exercise يتمرن	make	time for يوفِّر الوقت لـ
do	hobbies يمارس هوايات	manage	time يدير الوقت
do	revision يُراجع	pay	attention to يولي اهتمام بـ
do	the best you can يبذل أقصى ما بوسعه	promote	the importance of يُعزِّز أهمية
experience	a lot of stress يتعرض لكثير من الضغط	reduce	stress يقلل الضغط
experience	burnout يتعرض للإنهاك	suggest	a special technique يقترح تقنية خاصة
feel	afraid يشعر بالخوف	take	a break يأخذ استراحة
feel	exhausted يشعر بالإرهاق	take	a rest يأخذ استراحة
feel	frustrated يشعر بالإحباط	take	care of يرعى - يعتني بـ
feel	good يشعر أنه بخير	take	exercise يتمرن
feel	lonely يشعر بالوحدة	take	responsibility for يتولى مسئولية
follow	advice يعمل بالنصيحة	take	some snacks يتناول وجبة خفيفة
get	enough sleep ينام بشكل كاف	try	your best تبذل ما بوسعك
improve	well-being يزيد من السعادة		

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What activities can you .... to help you feel good? (LM)
   a. do b. make c. take d. move
2. I will have to .... a lot of tests before I can get this job. (LM)
   a. make b. do c. test d. carry
3. In order to improve your mental health, you need to .... responsibility for the things you can control. (LM)
   a. sit b. let c. make d. take
4. Burnout is caused by both the decisions you ...., and the situations you can't control. (LM)
   a. take b. make c. do d. a&b
5. Why don't you .... the advice your parents give you?
   a. follow b. avoid c. make d. cause
6. You may experience .... as a result of too much work.
   a. burnout b. stress c. a & b d. attention
7. You can do ....
   a. revision b. sleep c. a snack d. suggestions
8. The exams you've .... aim to measure the progress you have achieved in learning.
   a. followed b. felt c. reduced d. done
9. I .... responsibility for the office when Mr Ayman was abroad.
   a. made b. took c. did d. got
10. The new system has .... the importance of teachers' role in the educational process.
    a. made b. promoted c. done d. experienced
11. You can take ....
    a. lonely b. good c. a snack d. well-being
12. Please, stop talking and pay .... to what I say.
    a. burn out b. stress c. a & b d. attention
13. I .... time for some activities I enjoy to avoid burnout.
    a. make b. feel c. do d. experience
14. You should .... your best. Never give up.
    a. follow b. avoid c. try d. cause

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
exhausted (adj)	مُنهَك/مُجهَد/مُرهَق	worn out
improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن	make ... better/ enhance
improve(d) (v)	يَتحسَّن	get better/ become better/ develop
mental (adj)	ذهني/عقلي	intellectual/psychological
scold(ed) (v)	يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	tell off
stress (n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط	pressure

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن	worsen /impair	يُضعِف
improve(d) (v)	يَتحسَّن	worsen/ deteriorate	يتفاقم/ينهار
mental(adj)	ذهني/عقلي	physical	بدني
promote(d) (v)	يُرقّي	demote	يُنزِّل الدرجة/ يُخفِّض الرتبة
scold(ed) (v)	يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	praise/compliment	يمتدح
stress(n)	الإجهاد/ الضغط	relaxation	الراحة

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "His health improved when he moved to the fresh air of the countryside". We can replace the verb 'improved' in this context with ....
   a. made better b. enhanced c. a & b d. got better
2. His health improved when he moved to the fresh air of the countryside". The verb 'improved' in this context is the antonym of ....
   a. worsened b. deteriorated c. a & b d. enhanced
3. When one is under stress, this means they suffer from ....
   a. pressure b. relaxation c. a & b d. compliment
4. 'Mental' is to 'physical' as '............' is to 'praise'.
   a. compliment b. scold c. thank d. greet
5. '............' is to 'intellectual as 'scold' is to 'tell off'.
   a. Bodily b. Physical c. Mental d. Praise

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
exhaust(ed) يُرهِق - يستنفد	exhaust شكمان - عادم السيارة exhaustion إرهاق - استنفاد	exhaustive شامِل - كُلِّي exhausted مُرهَق/مُتعَب بشدة exhausting مُرهِق/مُسبب للإرهاق	exhaustively بشكل شامل
frown يعبس/ يقطب جبينه	frown/ frowning عبوس/قَطْب الجبين		
improve يُحسِّن/ يتحسَّن	improvement تَحسُّن - تحسين	improved مُحَسَّن/مُعدَّل	
manage يُدير - ينجح/يتمكن	management إدارة manager مدير	manageable مُطيع - مُذعِن - سهل	
	mentality العقلية/القدرة على تَعَقُّل الأمور	mental عقلي/ذهني	mentally عقلياً/ذهنياً
pout يُبوِّز/يُكشِّر	pout تكشيرة/تبويزة	pouty مُبوِّز/مكشر	
promote يروج لـ - يُرقِّي - يُعزِّز	promotion ترقية - ترويج promoter مُتعَهِّد (مُنظِّم) - مُؤيِّد		
scold يُعنِّف/ يُوبِّخ	scolding التوبيخ		
suppose يفترض/ يتصوَّر	supposition افتراض - تَصَوُّر	supposed مُفتَرَض	supposedly من المُفترَض

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

• ✪ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Ahmed is supposed to be ....
   a. promote b. promotion c. promoter d. promoted
2. Ahmed is supposed to get the ....
   a. promote b. promotion c. promoter d. promoted

3. Mr Ashraf is a .... of teachers' rights.
   a. promote b. promotion c. promoter d. promoted
4. I can't do this job alone. It would be ....
   a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
5. I would be .... if I did this job alone.
   a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
6. Doing this job on my own would .... me.
   a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
7. Doing this job on my own would lead to complete ....
   a. exhaust b. exhaustion c. exhausted d. exhausting
8. It is clear that your health has ....
   a. improved b. improvement c. improve d. improvingly
9. The .... in your health is clear.
   a. improved b. improvement c. improve d. improvingly
10. I am confident about your ability to .... the team.
    a. manage b. management c. manager d. manageable
11. I am confident that you will be a good .... of the team.
    a. manage b. management c. manager d. manageable
12. I am confident about your good .... of the team.
    a. manage b. management c. manager d. manageable

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a five-minute break	استراحة لمدة خمس دقائق	just for you	من أجلك أنت فقط
afraid of	خائف من	late last night	في وقت متأخر من الليلة الماضية
angry at	غاضب بسبب	left out	مُستبعد
current affairs	الأحداث الجارية	mental health problem	مشكلة صحة نفسية
face-to-face	مباشر/وجهاً لوجه	more often than usual	أكثر جداً من المُعتاد
go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية	most importantly	الأكثر أهمية
in danger of	في خطر	on a regular basis	بشكل منتظم
in order of	حسب – بترتيب	on the downside	في الجانب السلبي
in order of priority	بترتيب الأولوية	poor time management skills	مهارات سيئة في إدارة الوقت
instead of	بدلاً من		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

benefit from	يستفيد من	keep up	يواصل / يستمر في
clear off	يفرّ - يزول/ينقشع	pour down	ينهمر/يتدفق
concentrate on	يُركز على	stay up	يسهر
cope with	يواجه - يساير	suffer from	يُعاني من
divide ... into	يُقسّم ... إلى	talk to	يتحدث إلى
forget about	ينسى ما يخص	think about	يُفكر في

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The referee angrily told the player to clear ....
   a. up b. of c. off d. down
2. The child was .... danger of falling down from the balcony.
   a. on b. in c. at d. with
3. My grandfather suffered from a mental .... problem.
   a. healthy b. healthier c. healthiest d. health
4. You need to do exercise .... a regular basis.
   a. of b. in c. on d. for
5. It is unhealthy to stay .... late at night.
   a. up b. of c. off d. down
6. I went on a five-............ holiday to Sharm.
   a. a day b. day c. day's d. days'
7. Do your jobs in order .... priority.
   a. that b. to c. of d. from
8. You have to retrain to cope .... the requirements متطلبات of your new job.
   a. up b. of c. off d. with

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

frown – pout

- **frown (at) (v)**

يقطب جبينه (حركة تدل على الغضب أو الضيق يقترب فيهما الحاجبان من بعضهما)

- Mr Ayman frowned as he was reading my essay.
- Don't frown at the child. You scare her.

- **frown (n)** تقطيب الجبين/ انعقاد الحاجبين

- Your frown scares the child.

- **frown on/upon (phr. v)** يستهجن - يستنكر
  - Using chemical insecticides is allowed, but it is frowned upon.
- **pout (v)**
  يستاء/ يُكشِّر(يُبوِّز) (حركة بالشفاه تدل على الغضب أو الضيق أو أشياء أخرى)
  - She pouted in a childish way.

mental – physical

- **mental (adj)** ذهني/عقلي (صفة تُستخدم فقط قبل اسم بهذا المعنى)
  - This old woman suffers from an illness which is mental. (✗)
  - This old woman suffers from a mental illness. (✓)
- **physical (adj)** بدني/ جسدي
  - He lost his leg in a car accident and now he suffers from a physical disability.

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

promote

- **promote (v)** يشجع / يُحسِّن - يُرَقّي لوظيفة أعلى - يُروِّج لمنتج معين
  - Adding fertilizers promotes the growth of plants. يُحسِّن
  - My father was promoted to general manager of the company. يُرقي
  - The factory tries to promote its new product by putting posters in the streets. يروج
- **promotion (n)** ترقية لوظيفة أعلى - ترويج لمنتج معين
  - My father's promotion to general manager will get him more money.
  - The promotion plan of the new mobile made it sell well.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Although divorce الطلاق is legal, it is sometimes frowned ....
   a. on　　b. upon　　c. a & b　　d. at
2. Autism التوحُّد is a type of ....
   a. mental disorder　　b. disorder mental
   c. disorder which is mental.　　d. disorder that is mental
3. The manager .... that the new employees needed much retraining.
   a. scolded　　b. stressed　　c. pouted　　d. altered

4. My mother .... us off for starting our lunch before our father did.
   a. told b. scolded c. frowned d. pouted

5. When the children saw the large dog, they soon ....
   a. concentrated on b. coped with c. set up d. cleared off

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	c	- الفعل الإصطلاحى (frown on/upon) هنا يعنى (يستنكر)
2.	a	- الصفة (mental) بمعنى (عقلى/ذهنى) تُستَخدَم فقط قبل الإسم الموصوف.
3.	b	- الفعل (stressed) هنا يعنى (أكد على).
4.	a	- الفعل الإصطلاحى (tell ... off) يعنى (يوبخ/يُعنِّف).
5.	d	- الفعل الإصطلاحى (clear off) هنا يعنى (يلوذ بالفرار).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

How to avoid[1] burnout

(SB page 42)

Burnout[2] is a mental[3] health problem that is affecting more and more people today because there's so much pressure[4] on us to work hard and do everything perfectly[5]. When you experience[6] burnout, you feel exhausted[7] and you usually don't spend enough time doing things you enjoy. You might stop doing hobbies that you used to enjoy and you may become ill more often than usual. As a result, people experiencing burnout feel like[8] they can't live their lives normally[9] anymore[10].

Burnout is usually caused by both decisions[11] you make about things that you can control[12], for example, the amount of homework you have to do, and situations you can't control, for example if you spend a lot more time on your homework than you have to because you want to do it perfectly. This is your choice[13] or the result of poor[14] time management[15] skills.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتجنب/يتحاشى
(2) الإنهاك
(3) ذهني/عقلي
(4) الضغط
(5) بشكل مثالي
(6) يتعرض لـ/يعاني
(7) منهك/مجهد/مرهق
(8) يشعر وكأنه
(9) بشكل طبيعي
(10) أكثر من ذلك
(11) قرارات
(12) يتحكم في
(13) اختيار
(14) سيئ
(15) إدارة الوقت

If you're in danger[16] of suffering from burnout, you will usually experience a lot of stress[17], find it difficult to sleep and have a lot of headaches[18] or pain[19] in your shoulders[20] and back[21].

In order to improve[22] your mental health, you need to take responsibility[23] for the things that you can control.

For example, if you find it difficult to say 'no' when people ask you to do activities[24] outside of school and you feel exhausted because of this, you could change this behaviour[25]. Then you can start thinking about activities you really enjoy doing. These should be activities that help you to forget about everything else that is happening, such as drawing or painting[26], doing a sport or having 'real' conversations[27] with your friends and family. Activities like these are examples of self-care[28]. They help to promote[29] better mental health and increase[30] your well-being[31].

Log in or register to post comments

(16) خطر
(17) الضغط
(18) صداع
(19) ألم
(20) أكتاف
(21) الظَّهر
(22) يُحسِّن
(23) المسئولية
(24) أنشطة
(25) سُلوك/تصرُّف
(26) التلوين
(27) مُحادثات
(28) العناية الشخصية
(29) يُعزِّز
(30) يزيد
(31) العافية

Studying can be stressful[1].

Here are four tips [2] to make life easier.

(WB page 26)

Tip 1: Divide [3] the things you need to do into four categories[4]. These are: (1) urgent[5] and important[6] (2) important but not urgent (3) not important but urgent (4) not important and not urgent. Using this system, you will quickly be able to see what you have to do now and what can wait.

Tip 2: When studying for a long time, you should know when to take a rest. This will help you to avoid burnout and continue[7] studying. Use a clock with an alarm[8]. After every twenty-five minutes, take a five-minute break[9] and stand up and stretch[10].

Tip 3: You should do exercise on a regular[11] basis[12]. Exercise will produce endorphins[13], which are chemicals that help to reduce[14] stress[15]. If the exercise is outside, you will also benefit[16] from some fresh[17] air.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مُرهِق/شاقّ/ضاغط
(2) نصائح
(3) يُقسِّم
(4) تصنيفات
(5) عاجل/مُلِحّ
(6) مُهِمّ
(7) يستمر
(8) منبه
(9) استراحة
(10) يَمُدّ - يتمطى
(11) مُنتظِم
(12) أساس
(13) الإندورفين
(14) يُقلل
(15) الضغط/الإجهاد
(16) يستفيد
(17) نقي

Tip 4: You should not eat unhealthily[18] when you are studying. A salad is quick to prepare[19] and fruit is a better snack[20] than chocolate. You should also avoid having too much caffeine[21]. Water is much healthier.

(18) بطريقة غير صحية
(19) يُعِد
(20) وجبة خفيفة
(21) الكافيين

Suppose

(SB page 44)

by Phoebe Cary

1 Suppose [1] you're dressed [2] for walking,
And the rain comes pouring down[3],
Will it clear off [4] any sooner
Because you scold [5] and frown [6]?
2 And wouldn't it be nicer
For you to smile than pout[7],
And so make sunshine [8] in the house,
When there is none without ?
3 And suppose the world don't please [9] you,
Nor the way some people do,
Do you think the whole creation[10] Will be altered [11] just for you?
4 And isn't it, my boy or girl,
The wisest [12], bravest [13] plan,
Whatever comes, or doesn't come,
To do the best you can?

Check Vocabulary

(1) يفرض
(2) يرتدي/يلبس
(3) ينهمر/يتدفق
(4) ينقشع/يزول
(5) يُعنِّف/يُوبِّخ
(6) يعبس/يتجهم/يكشر
(7) يستاء / يتجهم
(8) ضوء الشمس
(9) يُسعد/يَسُر
(10) الخلق/الكون
(11) يُغيِّر - يتغير
(12) الأكثر حكمة
(13) الأشجع

2 Listening Texts

(WB page 27)



Leila : Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you ?
Nadia : Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.
Leila : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it ?
Nadia : Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science, too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila : That sounds like a lot. Have you considered telling your parents you are stressed ?

Nadia : I don't want to worry them.

Leila : You could write down everything you have to do this week in order of priority[1] and say "no" to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it ?

Nadia : Have you thought about becoming a student counsellor [2] ?
You're very good at giving advice !

Leila : Oh, thank you.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أولوية
(2) مستشار

1

(SB page 45)

Nour : At the moment, I just feel exhausted[1] all the time. I play computer games with my friends after school every evening. Then I don't start doing my homework until about 9 o'clock in the evening. By the time I finish my homework, it's 11 o'clock or even midnight. So, I don't get to bed until it's really late and then I'm exhausted the next day at school and I can't keep up[2] in my lessons.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مُرهَق
(2) يواصل/يستمر
(3) يرعى
(4) هدف
(5) درجات/تقديرات

2

Ibrahim : I spend a lot of time looking after [3] my grandfather, who's seventy-four years old and is ill at the moment. I go to school and then as soon as I get home, I spend the next few hours making him something to eat, reading to him and helping him to wash, things like that. I have to get up early in the morning to do my homework before school and I never seem to have any time to do anything for myself.



3

Heba : It's always my goal[4] to get the best grades[5] that I possibly can at school. It seems that the only way to do that is to spend all of my time on my schoolwork.



So, I work as hard as I can when I'm at school and then in the breaks[6] we have at school, I do some extra[7] reading or look at my notes again. Then, when I get home, I do my homework all afternoon and evening. I just keep going even if I'm feeling exhausted.

- (6) استراحة/فسحة
- (7) اضافي

(WB page 27)

Leila : Hi Nadia. I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you?

Nadia : Hi Leila. Thanks for asking. I'm a bit stressed.

Leila : Oh no! Why don't you sit down and tell me about it?

Nadia : Well, I have three exams this week and don't know when I can revise because I have a big project for science too. I also promised my parents I would help them in the shop in the evenings.

Leila : That sounds[1] like a lot. Have you considered[2] telling your parents you are stressed[3] ?

Nadia : I don't want to worry[4] them.

Leila : You could write down[5] everything you have to do this week in order of[6] priority[7] and say 'no' to the things at the bottom of your list. Also, how about doing your revision while you are in the shop. It's usually quiet in the evenings, isn't it ?

Nadia : Have you thought about becoming a student counsellor[8] ? You're very good at giving advice!

Leila : Oh, thank you.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يبدو
- (2) يفكر في
- (3) مضغوط
- (4) يُقلق
- (5) يدوّن/يسجل
- (6) حسب/بترتيب
- (7) الأولوية
- (8) مرشد/مستشار

3 Video Script

(SB page 45)

Whilst[1] it's important to keep informed about[2] current affairs[3], reading the news when its mostly bad can cause anxiety [4] and stress[5]. Bad news seems to get more attention, so this is what the media[6] give us.

One 16-year-old said he had started worrying constantly[7] about things he was reading in the news and it had affected his sleep. He told researchers[8] that

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بينما
- (2) يبقى على وعي بـ
- (3) الأحداث الجارية
- (4) القلق
- (5) الضغط / التوتر
- (6) وسائل الإعلام
- (7) باستمرار
- (8) باحث

he had started avoiding(9) the news completely. He said he generally(10) felt better, but on the downside(11), he wasn't able to contribute to(12) conversations with friends, and felt left out(13) when they were talking about current affairs. This solution(14) may seem a little bit extreme(15), but there are ways we can reduce(16) stress and anxiety caused by negative news. We spoke with psychologist(17) Alison Carey about the issue(18). She advised young people to take a break(19) sometimes, or to limit(20) the amount of time they spend reading news to once every two days, or once a week. She also suggested that we interact(21) more with positive news sources(22), such as the goodnewsnetwork or positivenews.com.

Most importantly(23), she said that getting out into nature, listening to music, spending less time on your screen and more time in face-to-face(24) conversations would all help reduce stress and anxiety caused by bad news.

(9) يتجنب
(10) بصفة عامة
(11) في الجانب السلبي
(12) يساهم في
(13) مُستبعَد
(14) حل
(15) شديد / متطرف
(16) يقلل
(17) عالم نفس
(18) قضية/مشكلة
(19) يأخذ استراحة
(20) يحد من / يقلل
(21) يتفاعل
(22) مصدر
(23) الأكثر أهمية
(24) مباشر / وجهاً لوجه

Part IV Language

تنويه تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Making Suggestions تقديم الإقتراحات

لاحظ الصيغ التالية التي تُستخدم لتقديم إقتراحات للقيام بشئ في المستقبل:

1. Making Suggestions with questions تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام اسئلة

1. What about + noun / (inf. + ing ...? ماذا عن ...؟
   - What about having fish for lunch?
2. How about + noun / (inf. + ing ...? ما رأيك في أن ...؟
   - How about having fish for lunch?
3. Have you considered + inf. + ing ...? هل فكرت في أن ...؟
   - Have you considered having fish for lunch?

④ Would you consider + (inf. +ing) …? — هل يمكن أن تُفكر في …؟
- Would you consider having fish for lunch?

⑤ Have you thought about + inf. + ing …? — ماذا عن …؟
- Have you thought about having fish for lunch?

⑥ Why don't you / we + inf. …? — لِم لا …؟
- Why don't we have fish for lunch?

⑦ What if you / we + inf. …? — ماذا لو …؟
- What if we have fish for lunch?

⑧ Shall we + inf. …? — هلّا …؟
- Shall we have fish for lunch?

⑨ May I suggest + (inf. + ing) …? — هل يمكنني أن أقترح …؟
- May I suggest having fish for lunch?

⑩ Wouldn't it be better to + inf. …? — ألن يكون من الأفضل أن …؟
- Wouldn't it be better to have fish for lunch?

2. Making Suggestions with statements تقديم اقتراحات باستخدام الجمل الخبرية

① Let's + inf. ... — هيا بنا ....
- Let's have fish for lunch.

② You / we can/could/should + inf. .... — بإمكانك / بإمكاننا أن ....
- We could have fish for lunch

③ I (would) suggest + n / (inf. + ing) ... — أقترح ...
- I suggest having fish for lunch.
- I would suggest having fish for lunch.

④ I suggest you / we + inf. / (should + inf.) ... — أقترح أنك / أننا ...
- I suggest that we have (should have) fish for lunch.

⑤ I think you / we should+ inf. ... — أعتقد أنه ينبغي عليك / علينا ...
- I think we should have fish for lunch.

⑥ I would recommend + (inf. + ing) ... — إنني أوصي بـ / أزكّي ...
- I would recommend having fish for lunch.

7 We should probably consider + (inf. + ing) ... قد يكون من الواجب أن نفكّر في ...
- We should probably consider having fish for lunch.

8 Perhaps/Maybe + you / we could/should+ inf. ... ربما يمكنك يمكننا أن ...
- Maybe we should have fish for lunch.

9 It is just an idea a suggestion, but you / we could+ inf. ...
إنها مجرد فكرة/توصية أنه يمكنك/يمكننا أن ...
- It is just a suggestion, but we could have fish for lunch

10 My suggestion / recommendation would be to + inf. ...
إنها مجرد فكرة/توصية أنه يمكنك/يمكننا أن ...
- My suggestion would be to have fish for lunch.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

Let's – Let us

١ الصيغة (Let's + inf.) هي اختصار لـ (Let us + inf.):
- Let's = Let us

٢ بعد (Let's/Let us) نستخدم الفعل في المصدر بدون (to):
- Let's go out for a walk. (NOT: Let's to go ...)

٣ الصيغة (Let's+ inf.) هي الصيغة الشائعة للاقتراح، وتُستخدَم (Let us+ inf.) للاقتراح في اللغة الرسمية فقط:
- Let's have fish for lunch. (common)
= Let us have fish for lunch. (Formal)

٤ عندما يستخدم المتحدث الصيغة (Let's + inf.) للإقتراح، فهو يقترح لنفسه وللمُخاطَب -لاحظ:
- **Ashraf**: Let's study unit 4 from El-Moasser, Walid.
- فى المثال السابق يقترح أشرف أنه ووليد كلاهما يذاكران الوحدة الرابعة من المعاصر، وهنا يساوي فى المعنى:
- **Ashraf**: We could study unit 4 from El-Moasser, Walid.
لكن فى المثال التالى يقترح أشرف أن يقوم وليد فقط بمذاكرة الوحدة الرابعة من المعاصر.
- **Ashraf**: You could study unit 4 from El-Moasser, Walid.

٥ فى الاقتراح المنفي يمكن أن نستخدم:

- **Let's not + inf. ... / -Don't let's + inf. ...**
- Let's not go out in this bad weather.
= Don't let's go out in this bad weather.

يُفكِّر / يأخذ في الاعتبار consider

1 الفعل (consider) يأتي بعده (inf.+ ing):

- consider + (inf. + ing)...
- Have you considered having a holiday to reduce burnout?

2 في حالة النفي توضع (not) قبل (inf.+ ing):

- consider + not + (inf. + ing)...
- Would you consider not taking the driving test tomorrow?

3 لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- consider + whether / how / where / why ... + to + inf. ... .
- Would you consider where to spend the weekend?

يقترح / يوصي بـ suggest / recommend

1 الفعلان (suggest/recommend) يأتي بعدهما (inf.+ ing):

- suggest/recommend + (inf. + ing) ...
- I suggest spending the weekend in the countryside.
- I would recommend spending the weekend in the countryside.

2 في حالة النفي توضع (not) قبل (inf.+ ing):

- suggest/recommend + not + (inf. + ing) ...
- I recommend not eatng in this restaurant.

3 في حال وجود جملة بعد (suggest/recommend) يكون فعلها (inf.) أو (should + inf.) :

- consider / recommend + (that) + subj. + inf. / (should + inf.) ... .
- I suggest that Mahmoud join the school team.
- I suggest that Mahmoud should join the school team.

How about Vs What about

1 يُمكن استخدام كل من (what about/ How about) لتقديم الإقتراحات ويأتي بعدهما (inf.+ ing):

- What/How about going out for a swim?

2 تُستخدَم (What about) وليس (How about) عند ابداء الإعتراض أو التعبير عن مشكلة مُحتَمَلة:

A: I think Mohammed Mahmoud is the best midfielder in Egypt?
B: You may be right, but what about his too many injuries?

Replying to Suggestions الرد على الاقتراحات

Agreeing	Disagreeing
- Yes, let's. -Why not ? - That's a good / fantastic idea - I'll go along with that. - I agree. - OK - That sounds fine.	- I'm not very keen. - I'm not sure about that. - Maybe some other time. - I'd rather.... - No, I'd prefer to ....

General Exercise **On Language** 

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. .... consult your dictionary or ask your teacher for help. *(LM)*
   a. You could b. What about
   c. How about d. Have you tried to
2. Have you considered .... a report about the conditions in the company? *(LM)*
   a. write b. to write c. writing d. of writing
3. Why .... you spend the weekend in the countryside? - That's a good idea. *(LM)*
   a. won't b. don't c. didn't d. haven't
4. You could do this task with your friend if you wish. This shows .... *(LM)*
   a. ability b. suggestion c. blame d. refusal
5. .... start learning Chinese? *(LM)*
   a. How about b. Why don't you
   c. Let's d. Have you tried
6. .... spending the weekend in Alexandria? *(LM)*
   a. You could b. Why don't you
   c. Let's d. Have you considered
7. What about .... a cold drink together in the break?
   a. have b. having c. no word d. b & c

8. .... go for a walk.
   a. Let's b. Why don't we c. Shall we d. b & c

9. .... go for a walk?
   a. Let's b. Why don't we c. Shall we d. b & c

10. Let's .... the match in the stadium. It is much more exciting there.
   a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching

11. Let's .... the match in the stadium. It is better on TV.
   a. watch b. to watch c. not watch d. watching

12. Have you .... joining a sports club to practise football professionally?
   a. thought b. considered c. seen d. avoided

13. May I suggest .... a snack break?
   a. take b. to take c. taking d. to taking

14. .... we could support our country by helping with charity work.
   a. Perhaps b. My suggestionc. Let us d. Let's

15. My .... would be to prepare chocolate cake for our guests.
   a. suggest b. suggestion c. recommend d. a & c

2 Special Cases

16. A: If you ask me, Mai is the best applicant for the job of the secretary?
    B: Mmm. .... her bad English?
   a. How about b. What about c. Shall we d. Why don't we

17. .... ask father for the trip money right now. He is in a good mood.
   a. Let's b. Let's not c. Don't let's d. b & c

18. .... ask father for the trip money right now. He is furious because the team has lost the match.
   a. Let's b. Let's not c. Don't let's d. b & c

19. I would suggest .... my aunt for dinner.
   a. to inviting b. to invite c. inviting d. invite

20. I suggest mum........... my aunt for dinner.
   a. to inviting b. to invite c. inviting d. invite

21. I .... having falafel to eating this badly-prepared pizza.
   a. recommend b. would recommend
   c. a & b d. object

22. I consider how .... our poor neighbours.
   a. to help b. help c. helping d. to helping

23. I recommend Sama .... the Egyptian Japanese School.
    a. joining   b. join   c. joined   d. to join
24. I suggest that Rodayna .... ready to join the team.
    a. was   b. be   c. should be   d. b & c
25. I suggest .... out until the rain stops. We don't have raincoats.
    a. to go   b. going   c. not going   d. we go
26. I suggest .... out when the rain stops, not now.
    a. to go   b. do not go   c. not going   d. we go

3 Check your understanding

27. "..........." is/are used to make suggestions in formal language only.
    a. Let's   b. Let us   c. lets   d. a & b
28. "..........." is used to show objection to an idea or suggestion.
    a. Let's   b. I suggest   c. How about   d. What about
29. "Let's go for a walk". In other words, the speaker says, "...........".
    a. You could go for a walk.   b. I suggest you go for a walk.
    c. I suggest we go for a walk.   d. a & b
30. "Have you considered going for a walk?". In other words, the speaker says, "...........".
    a. You could go for a walk.   b. I suggest you go for a walk.
    c. I suggest I go for a walk.   d. a & b
31. **A**: ....   – **B**: Yes, let's.
    a. Perhaps you can go out on your own.
    b. Why don't you go out on your own ?
    c. Let's go out together.
    d. I recommend you go out alone.

4 Feedback Exercise :

• راجع أفكارك مع معلمك.

32. She could hardly carry out the difficult task, ... ? *(LM)*
    a. could she   b. she could   c. couldn't she   d. she couldn't
33. We should all spread .... peace because it is the basis of stability. *(LM)*
    a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
34. It's nice that cats usually clean .... ! *(LM)*
    a. ourselves   b. herself   c. themselves   d. itself

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 46 & 47 WB pages 28 & 29



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه

- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

Important Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
accept(ed) (v)	يقبل	identify(ied) (v)	يُحدِّد (هوية)
adapt(ed) to (v)	يتأقلم/يتكيَّف مع	impact(n)	أثر - انطباع
alert(ed) (v)	يُنبِّه/يُحذِّر	influence(d) (v/n)	يؤثر على - تأثير
alert(n-adj)	إشعار/ تنبيه - يقظ/مُنتبه	manage(d) (v)	يدير - يتدبر
anxious(adj)	قلق/مُتوتر	maybe(adv)	ربما
athletics(n)	ألعاب القوى	memo(n)	مُذكرة
athletic(adj)	خاصة بألعاب القوى	normal(adj)	طبيعي
automatically(adj)	تلقائياً	observe(d) (v)	يلاحظ
aware(adj)	مُدرك - لديه عِلْم	optimistic(adj)	متفائل
behave(d) (v)	يتصرَّف / يَسْلُك	participant(n)	مُشارك
change(d) (v)	التَّغيُّر - يتغير	particular(adj)	مُعيَّن - مُحدَّد
congratulations	مبروك	perceive(d) (v)	يُدرك / يلاحظ
contagious(adj)	مُعْدِي	perception(n)	إدراك/تصوُّر
deal - dealt (v)	يتعامل مع/يواجه	perfectionist(n)	شخص مثالي
demonstrate(d) (v)	يُوضِّح	perfectly(adv)	بشكل مثالي
diary(n)	مفكرة يوميات	psychologist(n)	عالم نفس
disappoint(ed) (v)	يُحبط	remain(ed) (v)	يبقى/يظل
edition(n)	نُسخة/طَبعة	results(n)	نتائج
efficient(adj)	كُفء	routine (n)	وتيرة يومية
extend(ed) (v)	يمد	self(n)	النفس - الذات
external(adj)	خارجي	specific(adj)	مُحدَّد - مخصوص
factors(n)	عوامل	teenager(n)	مُراهق
go on (phr. v)	يحدُث - يستمر	thinking(n)	التفكير
grateful(adj)	شاكر/مُمتن	upload(ed) (v)	يرفع على الإنترنت
gratitude(n)	امتنان/عرفان	volunteering(n)	التطوع
habit(n)	عادة		

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It's important to be .... of the signs of burnout. *(LM)*
   a. pleased b. keen c. full d. aware
2. If you're .... from burnout, you can experience a lot of stress. *(LM)*
   a. forbidding b. resulting c. suffering d. preventing
3. Can you kindly tell me what is .... ? Why does everybody look anxious?
   a. feeling like b. coping with c. adapting to d. going on
4. Be alert to the danger of looking at the tablet screen for too long. The word 'alert' in this utterance is a/an ....
   a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
5. I am really .... for your priceless support while I was facing some problems.
   a. normal b. efficient c. grateful d. specific
6. Smoking and addicting to drugs have a negative .... on both physical and mental health.
   a. teenager b. impact c. self d. solution
7. A person who is flexible مَرِن by nature will find it easy to .... changes, not to reject them.
   a. demonstrate b. remain c. perceive d. accept
8. High body temperature and dry cough are two of coronavirus common ....
   a. alerts b. memos c. routines d. factors
9. Winners are always .... and hopeful.
   a. anxious b. external c. positive d. negative
10. I couldn't .... the file onto El-Moasser website because my laptop was offline.
    a. behave b. identify c. influence d. upload
11. I .... throwing the mobile into the sea when its battery went dead during an important call.
    a. felt like b. coped with c. adapted to d. went on
12. Being a/an .... doctor, his clinic is always full of patients.
    a. normal b. efficient c. grateful d. specific

13. Small projects are a good .... to the problem of unemployment.
a. teenager b. impact c. self d. solution

14. The research .... the relation between ignorance الجهل and terrorism. الإرهاب
a. demonstrates b. remains c. receives d. accepts

15. The rise ارتفاع in illegal migration الهجرة غير الشرعية is a result of economic ....
a. alerts b. memos c. routines d. factors

16. I like the .... appearance of this villa. It looks wonderful.
a. anxious b. external c. grateful d. negative

17. .... yourself, Amir. You are too old to be so childish.
a. Behave b. Identify c. Influence d. Upload

18. It took me a long time to .... the burning summer sun here in Aswan.
a. feel like b. help with c. adapt to d. go on

19. It is .... that a child asks too many questions. That's one of their means to discover the world.
a. normal b. efficient c. grateful d. specific

20. Rodayna is not her usual cheerful .... She looks unhappy.
a. teenager b. sign c. self d. solution

21. It was not normal for such a noisy baby to .... silent.
a. demonstrate b. remain c. perceive d. accept

22. My daily .... starts at six in the morning and ends at 11 p.m.
a. alert b. memo c. routine d. factor

23. Parents clearly influence their children". The word 'influence' in this sentence is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

24. Burnout has a/an .... impact on your mental health.
a. anxious b. external c. positive d. negative

25. You can't deny how stress .... your mental health badly.
a. behaves b. identifies c. influences d. uploads

26. Amr .... quite well as a captain of the team.
a. felt like b. coped c. adopted d. went

27. I was asked to give .... examples which persuade them that what I said was right.
a. warm b. anxious c. grateful d. specific

28. .... usually object to elderly authority. سُلطة الكبار
   a. Teenagers   b. Impacts   c. Selves   d. Solutions
29. Salah was .... as a talented player when he was a little child.
   a. demonstrated   b. remained   c. perceived   d. excepted
30. Mr Ayman, my boss, sent me a/an .... about the meeting.
   a. alert   b. memo   c. routine   d. a & b

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

accept	change يقبل بالتغيير	have	fun	يمزح - يستمتع
fall	asleep يستغرق فى النوم	identify	the reasons	يُجد الأسباب
feel	like يشعر وكأنه - يرغب فى	look	exhausted	يبدو مُنهَكًا
follow	advice يأخذ بالنصيحة	make	a study plan	يُعدّ خطة استذكار
get	stressed about يتوتر من		changes	يُحدث تغييرات
	together يلتقى - يتجمّع	move	house	ينتقل من بيت لآخر
	wet يصيبه البلل	pass	exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
have	a big impact on له أثر كبير على	perceive	change	يلاحظ التغيُّر
		put	pressure on	يضع ضغوط على
	a problem with لديه مشكلة فى	show	... how to	يوضّح لـ ... كيف
	a talk about يتحدث عن	take	action	يتصرف
	control over يسيطر على			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm still thinking. I haven't .... action yet.
   a. identified   b. taken   c. perceived   d. got
2. You have no choice but to .... the changes. There's nothing you can do.
   a. perceive   b. make   c. accept   d. do

3. I have .... all my final exams with full marks.
   a. followed b. looked c. moved d. passed
4. The reasons of the problem have already been ....
   a. identified b. taken c. received d. got
5. The new owner .... some changes to the decoration of the flat. It looks a bit different now.
   a. perceived b. made c. accepted d. did
6. My father's advice is always .... by me without any discussion.
   a. followed b. looked c. moved d. passed
7. The change is clear enough for everybody to ....
   a. pass b. take c. perceive d. accept
8. I .... like a bridegroom عريس in my new suit.
   a. perceive b. make c. accept d. feel
9. I got tired of .... houses. I wish I could have my own flat.
   a. following b. looking c. moving d. passing
10. All family members are .... together to discuss my sister's marriage offer.
   a. identifying b. taking c. perceiving d. getting

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	just for fun	للاستمتاع فقط
as normal	كشئ طبيعي	make time for	يوفر الوقت لـ
at the weekend	في العُطلة الأسبوعية	mental health	الصحة النفسية/العقلية
back then	في ذلك الحين	news alerts	إشعارات الأخبار
be aware of	يكون على وعي بـ	on social media	على وسائل التواصُل
be kind to	يكون طيبا مع	out of control	لا يمكن التحكم به/خارج عن السيطرة
be your normal self	تكون بحالتك الطبيعية	positive thinking	التفكير الإيجابي
external factors	عوامل خارجية	possible signs	أعراض محتملة
find it difficult to	يجد صعوبة في أن	react differently	يتصرف بشكل مُختلف
find the time to	يوفر وقت لكي	reason for	سبب في
get to sleep	يستغرق في النوم	signs of burnout	أعراض الإنهاك
grateful for	شاكر/مُمتَن لـ (شيء)	solution to	حل لـ
grateful to	شاكر/مُمتَن لـ (شخص)	spend time on	يقضي الوقت في
half empty	نصف فارغ	thank you for having me	شكرًا على استضافتي
half full	نصف مملوء	voice memo	مُذكرة صوتية
health problems	مشكلات صحية	whether .. or ..	سواء .. أو ..
in any case	على أي حال		
instead of	بدلا من		

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt to	يتأقلم/يتكيَّف مع	seem to	يبدو أن
calm down	يهدأ	set up	يضبط - يُنشئ
deal with	يتعامل/يتعامل مع	share with	يشارك في
focus on	يُركِّز على	struggle with	يصارع - يقاوم
go on	يَحدُث - يستمر	suffer from	يُعانى من
help .. with	يساعد .. في	work out	يستنتج - يعرف
impact on	يؤثر فى	worry about	يقلق على
meet up	يلتقي - يتلاقى	write to	يبعث برسالة إلى
offer to	يَعرض أن		

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Accepting changes .... normal helps us adapt to conditions well.
   a. by b. from c. like d. as
2. Go .... , Ahmed. Don't let anything stop you achieving your goal.
   a. out b. in c. on d. up
3. I'm really grateful .... your useful support.
   a. for b. of c. in d. with
4. I want to set .... a new Windows 11 version.
   a. out b. in c. on d. up
5. I hope I will be able to .... for doing some useful hobbies.
   a. look forward b. make time c. make up d. go into
6. I haven't adapted .... living here yet.
   a. out b. in c. to d. up
7. I have written .... her three times but she won't reply.
   a. to b. in c. on d. up
8. A good citizen is aware .... the dangers that threaten their country.
   a. from b. with c. of d. at
9. Just focus .... what you are doing and everything will be OK.
   a. out b. on c. in d. up

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 46)

When I talk to teenagers[1] who are suffering[2] from burnout, I start by talking to them about the negative [3] effects of their mental health problems. It's a good idea to ask how they're feeling, for example, they may feel exhausted or they may not have any time for self-care. Then, I ask them about their routine[4] because I want to find out how much time they spend doing their homework and how much time they spend on other activities. After that, we can find out if there's anything we can change, for example to have better time management. A final important thing to look at is what activities the student really enjoys. We can talk about these and think about how the student can make more time for[5] them.

Check Vocabulary

(1) المراهقين
(2) يعانى
(3) سلبى
(4) وتيرة يومية
(5) يوفر مزيدًا من الوقت

(WB page 28)

One way to help you deal with[1] life's problems is to focus[2] only on the things you can change. There are many external[3] factors[4] which may influence[5] how well you can cope with[6] a particular[7] problem. However, you should accept[8] that there are some things you just do not have control[9] over. It is not helpful to worry about these things. For example, when it rains do you get stressed about getting wet[10]? Or do you buy a good raincoat[11] to keep you warm[12] and dry in bad weather? This is an example of how you can find a quick and simple solution[13] to what others might see as a problem. This is also the first step[14] to accepting change as something normal[15]. It is a simple way to make sure you remain[16] positive[17] when you face[18] life's difficulties.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يتعامل مع/يواجه
(2) يركز
(3) خارجي
(4) عامل
(5) يؤثر على
(6) يُساير
(7) مُعيّن
(8) يقبل
(9) تحكُّم/سيطرة
(10) مبلل
(11) معطف المطر
(12) دافئ
(13) حل
(14) خطوة
(15) طبيعي
(16) يبقي/يظل
(17) إيجابي
(18) يواجه

(SB page 47)

To : Mohamed@mail.com

From : Karim@mail.com

Hi Mohamed

I wanted to write because I've noticed[1] that you don't seem to be your normal self [2] at the moment. You used to have so much energy, but now you look exhausted a lot of the time at school. I think I can understand how you're feeling because I was suffering[3] from a lot of stress last year too.

I couldn't cope with all of the homework I had. Instead of[4] doing the work, I used to just sit at my desk and worry about it for hours. I remember that I was exhausted all the time and my teachers weren't very happy with my schoolwork. Time management was something I didn't know anything about back then, but I asked my sister for help and she showed me how to plan my study time better.

Is there something that you're worrying about which is stopping you getting to sleep? Or maybe[5] you're doing too many things at the moment. Everyone suffers from stress and finds it difficult to cope with life sometimes, so don't worry about it. When you understand that, you can start to identify[6] the reasons[7] for your problems.

Why don't you think about what is happening in your life at the moment? Is there anything that you're spending too much time on? How often do you make the time to do something you really enjoy? We could get together[8] to have a talk about what's going on[9] if you want. Just let me know when.

Talk soon,

Karim

Check Vocabulary

(1) يلاحظ
(2) في حالتك الطبيعية
(3) يعاني
(4) بدلاً من
(5) ربما
(6) يحدد
(7) أسباب
(8) يلتقي
(9) يحدث

(WB page 29)

A

Imad

I am very worried about passing all my exams and although I can't spend much time with friends, I still follow what they are doing on social media. For the last few weeks, I've been feeling like[1] I can't cope with everything in my life. My friends are getting great marks[2] at school and after school they meet up[3]. But I don't have time to join them. On social media they always upload[4] photos and videos of themselves having fun in the park and around town. I don't know how they find the time to do all these things and study too.

Check Vocabulary
يشعر وكأنه (1)
درجات (2)
يلتقي (3)
يرفع على الإنترنت (4)

B

Seleem

I think it's important to know what is happening in the world, whether it's good or bad. I like to know what is happening in the world and I have set up[1] my phone to send me news alerts[2]. Recently[3] though, there have been so many problems happening around the world and it's making me feel stressed. It's having a big impact[4] on my well-being. I often feel quite anxious[5] and don't want to leave the house.

Check Vocabulary
يضبط (1)
إشعارات (2)
مؤخرًا (3)
أثر (4)
قلق / متوتر (5)

C

Wael

I have moved house and school and it's had an impact on my well-being. I have just started doing sport to calm down[1] because recently I've been quite angry. We have just moved to[2] a new city because of my dad's new job. I had to leave all my best friends, the athletics[3] club I was in and all this happened during an important year at school. I want to study medicine[4], so I have to get good results[5] in my exams. I often get angry about small things.

Check Vocabulary
يهدأ (1)
ينتقل إلى (2)
ألعاب القوى (3)
الطب (4)
نتائج (5)

2 Listening Texts

1

(SB page 46)

Nevine: This is Nevine and six months ago I was really struggling with[1] my mental[2] health. I was suffering from[3] burnout, and I wasn't spending any time on self-care[4] at all. Fortunately, I'm feeling a lot better now. The first step was to work out[5] what was causing the burnout. In my case[6], I was doing too many things and I couldn't cope. For example, I was trying to do all of my homework perfectly[7] while also playing in four sports teams and volunteering[8] at an old people's home on Saturdays. I realised that if you're not spending enough time doing things to promote[9] your own wellbeing, you'll feel exhausted and sad. I decided to stop being such a perfectionist[10] with my homework, only play in one sports team and only volunteer at the old people's home two weekends a month. I always get enough sleep now. Now, at the weekend when I don't have to do anything, I just relax at home and enjoy spending time with my friends and family. I always get enough sleep. Recently[11], I've learnt how to draw animals, but that's just for fun[12] – I don't put any pressure on[13] myself to do it perfectly!

Check Vocabulary

(1) يصارع/يقاوم
(2) عقلي/ذهني
(3) يعاني من
(4) العناية الذاتية
(5) يستنتج/يعرف
(6) في حالتي
(7) بشكل مثالي
(8) التطوع
(9) يُعزز/يدعم
(10) شخص مثالي
(11) حديثاً/مؤخراً
(12) للاستمتاع فقط
(13) يضع أي ضغوط على
(14) يُحبط
(15) يستغرق في النوم

2

Hany: My name's Hany. I didn't think that I would ever have any mental health problems. I used to be so happy and relaxed all the time. Then last year, I started to feel under a lot of pressure at school because we had some important exams. I was so worried about not doing very well in the exams. I didn't want to disappoint[14] my parents who thought I was a really good student. I suffered from a lot of stress, and it was so bad that I couldn't sleep. Of course, that meant that I was exhausted at school the next day and found it hard to concentrate in my lessons. One day I fell asleep[15] in the library at school and a teacher had to come and wake me up.

We talked about how I was feeling, and the teacher helped me to make a study plan[16] I could follow and still get enough sleep! I now spend less time studying, but I learn more than I used to because I manage[17] my time better and take regular breaks[18]. I always get at least eight hours sleep as well.

(16) يضع خطة للاستذكار
(17) يدير
(18) يأخذ استراحات منتظمة

(WB page 28)

Presenter: Hello and welcome to this week's edition[1] of 'Positive Thinking'. In the studio with us today we have psychologist[2] and popular author George Mitchell. Hello George and welcome to the show.

George : Thank you for having me[3]. I'm very happy to be here today.

Presenter: Let's talk about your new book called 'Positive thinking is easy' which was published just last month and has already sold 30,000 copies. Congratulations[4] !

George : Thank you.

Presenter: So, tell me. How can I be more positive?

George : Well, there are many things we can do automatically[5] so they become habits[6]. The first one is something I have done twice already while talking to you.

Presenter: Really? What's that?

George : Saying 'thank you'.

Presenter: Ahh, yes. So, you mean we should say 'thank you' more?

George : Well, what I mean is we should be more grateful[7] for everything we have. We need to focus more on all the good things and less on the negative. For example, in one study by psychologists in American Universities two groups of students were asked to keep a diary[8] and each week group one wrote a few sentences about the things they were grateful for that week and group two wrote about the things that caused them stress. After just 10 weeks the first group were more optimistic[9], did more exercise and visited the doctor less!

Check Vocabulary

(1) نُسخة / طبعة
(2) عالم نفس
(3) شكرا على استضافتي
(4) مبروك
(5) تلقائياً
(6) عادة
(7) ممتن / شاكر
(8) مفكرة يوميات
(9) متفائل

Presenter: Wow! That reminds me of a saying my grandmother used to tell me about how some people see the glass half empty[10] and others half full[11].

George : Your grandmother was right. We should be happy for the good things in our lives and extending[12] this gratitude[13] to other people will also make us feel better.

Presenter: That's an interesting point. Could you tell us more?

George : Of course. We naturally feel more positive when we are kind to others. A study in 2017 showed that being kind to others or observing[14] others being kind improved the well-being of the participants[15].

Presenter: Let me check I have understood. So, not only being kind to other people but also watching others being kind to other people can make you feel more positive?

George : That's right. The impact[16] is huge. Just imagine, if you are kind to someone and a third person observes you, that's three people who immediately feel more positive and they might do something good for another person which will impact on[17] others and so these positive feelings become contagious[18].

Presenter: Well, George Mitchell, this conversation has been very interesting and I'm sorry to have to end it there. We have heard how our own perception[19] of things and being grateful can make us feel more positive. I guess there is just one important thing to say and that is ... 'thank you'!

George : Thank you for having me on the show. I've really enjoyed talking to you today.

Presenter: Well, listeners that's all we have time for today. Remember being positive all begins with how you see things. Thank you for listening and stay happy and healthy.

(10) نصف فارغ
(11) نصف مملوء
(12) ينقل
(13) امتنان/عرفان
(14) يلاحظ
(15) مُشارك
(16) أثر / انطباع
(17) يؤثر في
(18) مُعدي
(19) إدراك / تصوّر

Part IV Language

Modal Verbs

1 Should

يجب أن / ينبغي أن / يفترض أن

1. Should / shouldn't + inf.

1 تُستخدم (should/ought to + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة المُثبَتة:

- You should take a break between work hours.
= You ought to take a break between work hours.
= I advise you to take a break between work hours.
= It is advisable that you take a break between work hours.

2 تُستخدم (shouldn't/oughtn't to + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة المنفية:

- You should not eat much rice. (OR: shouldn't eat)
= You ought not to eat much rice. (OR: oughtn't to eat)
= I advise you not to eat much rice.
= It is inadvisable that you eat much rice.

3 تُستخدم (should... inf.) لطلب النصيحة:

- Should I take a taxi to the train station?
- What should I do to keep fit?

4 تُستخدم (should + inf.) لعمل اقترحات:

- You should try going on holiday; it will refresh you.

5 تُستخدم (should + inf.) لإبداء الرأى الشخصى:

- You should do more revision. It will improve your understanding.
= It is a good idea that you do more revision. It will improve your understanding.

6 لاحظ ما يلي:

- ... should / shouldn't + inf. ...

- You should do a sport to keep fit.
- You shouldn't eat junk food.

= ... ought to / ought not to + inf. ...

- You ought to do a sport to keep fit.
- You ought not (oughtn't) to eat junk food.

= ... had better / had better not + inf. ...

- You'd better do a sport to keep fit.
- You'd better not eat junk food.

تذكر أن:

١. الاختصار ('d) في ('d better) هو اختصار لـ (had) وليس (would):

- You'd better take a rest.

= You had better take a rest. (NOT: would better)

٢. نفي (had better) هو (had better not) وليس (hadn't better):

- You'd better not waste your time. (NOT: hadn't better)

2. Should / shouldn't + have + p.p.

- عند التعبير عن الندم على شيء حدث في الماضي (past regret) أو اللوم (blame) تُستخدم الصيغ التالية:

① تُستخدم الصيغ المثبتة التالية للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على عدم حدوث شيء كان من المُفترَض أن يحدث في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث:

... should/ought to/could + have + p.p. ...

- I should have saved my money.

= I ought to have saved my money.

= I could have saved my money.

- والمتحدث في المثال السابق يشعر بالندم على عدم إدخاره لأمواله في الماضي، فهو يريد أن يقول:

- I didn't save my money and now I regret it.
- I regret not saving my money.

② تُستخدم الصيغ المنفية التالية للتعبير عن اللوم أو الندم على حدوث شيء كان من المُفترَض ألّا يحدث في الماضي لكنه حدث:

- ... shouldn't/oughtn't to + have + p.p. ...

- I shouldn't have wasted my money.

= I oughtn't to have wasted my money.

- والمتحدث في المثال السابق يشعر بالندم على تضييعه لأمواله في الماضي، فهو يريد أن يقول:
- I wasted my money and now I regret it.
- I regret wasting my money.

- لاحظ أن (could have + p.p.) تُستخدم هنا في صيغة الإثبات فقط وليس النفي لأنه يؤدي معنى مختلف.

- I could have gone out but I stayed at home.

والمتحدث هنا في المثال السابق يقول انه كان بامكانه الذهاب للخارج ولكنه لم يفعل.

2 may / might + inf. يمكن أن / نفترض أن

- هُناك حالات كثيرة لإستخدام (may/might + inf.) منها:

1. Possibility: present and future

التعبير عن احتمالية/إمكانية حدوث شيء في المضارع أو المستقبل:

... may/might/ can / could + inf.

- We might meet at Omar's wedding party.
= We can/could meet at Omar's wedding party.
= We will possibly meet at Omar's wedding party.
= It is possible that we will meet at Omar's wedding party.
- Sama may help mum with the housework.
= Sama can / could help mum with the housework.
= Sama will probably help mum with the housework.
= It is probable that Sama will help mum with the housework.

Remember:

What is the difference between 'may' and 'might'?

ما الفرق بين كل من 'may' و 'might' في التعبير عن الإمكانية في المضارع أو المُستقبل؟

- بالرغم من التشابه الكبير بينهما في هذا الإستخدام ، فإن (may) تُستخدَم للتعبير عن حدث مُرجّح حدوثه، بينما تُستخدم (might) مع حَدَث إمكانية حدوثه ضعيفة:

- I may go shopping.
= I probably will go shopping.
= It is more likely that I will go shopping.
- I might go shopping.
= It is unlikely that I will go shopping.

2. Request الطلب

- May I make a comment, Sir?
- Might I go out for a minute, please?

3. Giving Permission إعطاء الإذن / السماح لشخص بالقيام بشئ

- You may leave early, Fady.
- Sara might have half-an-hour break.

4. Making Suggestions (only might) تقديم الإقتراحات

- You might prefer to have a look at our menu.

لاحظ أن صيغة النفي السائدة من (may) هي (may not)

- Headache may not be the reason why he didn't go out with his friends.

لاحظ أن صيغة النفي من (might) هي (might not/mightn't)

- Headache might not(mightn't) be the reason why he didn't go out with his friends.

2. may/might/could + have + p.p.

Possibility: past

تُستخدم الصيغة التالية في التعبير عن احتمالية/إمكانية أن شيء ما قد حدث في الماضي (استنتاج يقوم علي دليل ضعيف):

... | may/might/could | + | have | + | p.p.

- I don't know where Leen was. She may/might/could have gone shopping.

- لاحظ أن (could have + p.p.) تُستخدم هنا في صيغة الإثبات فقط.

- Hesham mightn't have remembered the time of the meeting. (That was possible)
- Hesham couldn't have remembered the time otf the meeting. (That was impossible)

- لاحظ أن (could have + p.p.) لها استخدامين آخرين مُختلفين:

١. التعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف في الماضي بمعني (ربما يكون قد فعل):

- Nada could have gone to bed. I am not sure. (ربما تكون قد ذهبت للفراش.)

= Nada may have gone to bed. I am not sure.
= Nada might have gone to bed. I am not sure.



٢. التعبير عن عدم قيام الفاعل بشيء، رغم أنه كان يستطيع:

- Mr Hossam could have travelled by train, but he preferred to take the bus.
(كان يستطيع السفر بالقطار لكنه لم يفعل.)

3 can / could / be able to — يستطيع / بمكنه أن

can / could / be able to + inf.

- تستخدم في الحالات التالية :

1. Ability : Present
التعبير عن القدرة في المضارع :

- ... can + inf. (إثبات)

- Ahmed can speak English.

- ... am/is/are able to + inf. (إثبات)

- Salah is able to make a difference in tomorrow's match.

- ... can't (cannot) + inf. (نفي)

- Ahmed can't speak French.

- ... am not / isn't / aren't not able to + inf. (نفي)

- Salah isn't able to play tomorrow's match.

= ... am / is / are unable to + inf. (نفي)

- Salah is unable to play tomorrow's match.

ويُمكن استخدام (could + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع، لكنها تعني أن الفاعل لديه القدرة على القيام بالفعل لكنه لا يفعل ذلك:

- You could do much more to help poor people in your town.

2. Ability : past
التعبير عن القدرة في الماضي :

- ... could + inf. (إثبات)

- Amir could fix his bike.

- ... was/were able to + inf. (إثبات)

- Amir was able to fix his bike.

- couldn't (could not) + inf. (نفي)

- Amir couldn't fix his bike.

- ... wasn't / weren't not able to + inf. (نفي)

- Amir wasn't able to fix his bike.

= ... was / were unable to + inf. (نفي)

- Amir was unable to fix his bike.

3. Ability: future التعبير عن القدرة في المُستقبل:

- ... will/shall be able to + inf. (إثبات)

- Yara will be able to pass the exam.

- ... won't/shan't be able to + inf. (نفي)

- Yara won't be able to pass the exam.

4. Giving Permission إعطاء الإذن / السماح لشخص بالقيام بشئ:

- ... can + inf. (إثبات)

- You can leave early, Fady. (You are allowed to leave early.)

- ... can't + inf. ... (نفي)

- You can't leave early, Fady. (You aren't allowed to leave early.)

5. Request الطلب

- Can/Could you help me understand this lesson, mum?

6. Making suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات

- You can/could ask your teacher for help.

4 must + inf. يجب أن / من الضروري أن

1 لاحظ الصيغ المختلفة لجملة (must) :

- We must help our parents. (إثبات)
- You mustn't be late for work. (نفي)
- Must you wear this red shirt? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When must I hand in the report? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

2 تُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن الالتزام الشخصي أو تذكير النفس بقوة بعمل شئ مع (I / We) :

- We must buy a present for Ali's birthday.
- I must call my parents to say that I'm going to be late.

٣ تُستخدم (must + inf.) لتوجيه الدعوة القوية (الشخص مقرّب):

- You must visit me at the weekend!
- You all must come and have lunch with us.

٤ تُستخدم (must + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة القوية (الشخص مقرّب):

- You must stop smoking!
- You must brush your teeth before you go to bed.

٥ تُستخدم (must + inf.) للتعبير عن أنه من المهم القيام بشيء معين:

- I must study hard before my exam.
- Tarek must be quick or he will be late.

٦ تُعبر (must + inf.) عن الاستخدامات السابقة في المضارع والمستقبل:

- I must buy a present for my mother today.
- I must buy a present for my mother tomorrow.

٧ لا توجد صيغة ماضي لـ (must) لكن نستخدم (had to + inf.) :

- I had to buy a present for my mother yesterday.

5 must not (mustn't) + inf. يجب ألا / ممنوع أن / غير مسموح بـ

١ تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن الالتزام الشخصي بعدم القيام بشيء :

- I mustn't forget to post that letter.

٢ تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن المنع أو التحريم أو عدم السماح بعمل شيء :

- You mustn't park here. It is not allowed.
- You mustn't touch the objects in the museum.

٣ تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) لإعطاء النصيحة القوية (الشخص مقرّب):

- You mustn't smoke!

٤ تُستخدم (mustn't + inf.) للتعبير عن أنه من المهم عدم القيام بشيء معين:

- I mustn't leave my keys inside the office again.

6 have to / has to + inf. يجب أن / من الضروري أن

① لاحظ الصيغ المختلفة لـ (have / has + to + inf.) :

He / She / It + has to + inf. ....

- Sama has to pay the bills الفواتير on time. (إثبات)
- Ahmed doesn't have to get up early at weekends. (نفي)
- Does Rodayna have to study history at school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When does Leen have to finish the report? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + have to + inf. ....

- I have to pass the driving test to get a licence. (إثبات)
- They don't have to leave now. (نفي)
- Do we have to arrive at school before seven? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Why do you have to work so long hours? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

② تُستخدم (have / has + to + inf.) للتعبير عن الإلزام الخارجي (ليس للفاعل اختيار آخر) ويشمل ذلك الإلزام الذي تفرضه اللوائح والقوانين:

- I have to wear the school uniform.
- Employees have to be at their desks before nine.

③ يمكن استخدام (have / has + to + inf.) في المضارع والمستقبل:

- I have to take my driving test today.
- I have to take my driving test tomorrow.

④ صيغة الماضي لـ (have to / has to / must + inf.) هي (had to + inf.) :

- Rokaya had to return home early. (إثبات)
- Ashraf didn't have to attend yesterday's meeting. (نفي)
- Did Reem have to do any more exercises? («سؤال بـ «هل)
- Where did Ayman have to park his car? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

⑤ لاحظ صيغة النفي في المضارع :

do not / does not + have to + inf. ....

- You haven't to leave now. (✗)
- You don't have to leave now. (✓)
- Sama hasn't to get up early on Friday. (✗)
- Sama doesn't have to get up early on Friday. (✓)

⑨ لاحظ صيغة النفي في الماضي:

did not + have to + inf. ...

- Esraa hadn't to do the shopping. (✗)
- Esraa didn't have to do the shopping. (✓)

⑦ have / has + got to + inf. يجب أن / من الضروري أن

- هذه الصيغة شائعة الإستخدام بدلا من (have to / has to + inf.) في الإنجليزية البريطانية :

He / She / It + has got to + inf. ....

- He has got to attend today's lecture. (إثبات)
- She hasn't got to take any medicines. (نفي)
- Has he got to take extra courses? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When has she got to meet the manager? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + have got to + inf. ....

- We have got to water the trees soon. (إثبات)
- They haven't got to work at weekends. (نفي)
- Have we got to finish the project today? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- What have I got to do to be accepted for the job? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

- لاحظ صيغة النفي :

haven't / hasn't + got to + inf. ....

- You don't have got to leave now. (✗)
- You haven't got to leave now. (✓)

- لاحظ أنه لا توجد صيغة ماضي من (have/ has + got to + inf.):

- Esraa had got to do the shopping. (✗)
- Esraa had to do the shopping. (✓)

8 need / needs + to + inf. — يجب أن / من الضروري أن

تُستخدم (need / needs + to + inf.) للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل:

He / She / It + needs to + inf. ....

- Amr needs to work hard at school to pass the exams. (إثبات)
- Nada doesn't need to do the shopping. (نفي)
- Does Omar need to carry all these books to school? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- Why do you need to buy all these groceries? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

I / We / You / They + need to + inf. ....

- We need to prepare a big lunch for our guests. (إثبات)
- They don't need to pay any more money. (نفي)
- Do I need to go to the office every day? (سؤال بـ «هل»)
- When do you need to travel to Aswan? (سؤال بأداة استفهام)

needn't + inf. — ليس من الضروري أن

- تستخدم (needn't + inf.) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة فى المضارع :

- Nada needn't do the shopping. Her mum will do it.

= Nada doesn't need to do the shopping. (Not : needn't to ...)

= Nada doesn't have to do the shopping. (Not : needn't to ...)

needn't have + p.p. — لم يكن من الضرورى أن ...

- تستخدم (needn't have + p.p.) للتعبير عن قيام الفاعل بعمل شيء فى الماضى رغم أن ذلك لم يكن ضروريًا (الفاعل لم يكن يعرف أن ذلك غير ضروري):

- I needn't have bought a newspaper. My grandpa had already bought one.
- My uncle needn't have bought me sweets. I have a box in the fridge.

- تستخدم (didn't need / have to + inf.) للتعبير عن أن الفاعل لم يقم بالفعل لأنه كان يعلم أن ذلك غير ضروري :

- It was sunny and warm, so I didn't need (have) to wear my jacket.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 يمكن التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل باستخدام:

- .... must / have to / has to / need to + inf. ...
- .... will + have / need + (to + inf.) ...

- I must look after my baby sister tomorrow.
- Aya has to do her best at tomorrow's interview to get the job.
= Aya will have to do her best at tomorrow's interview to get the job.

2 تُستخدم كل من (must) و (have / has to) للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام ، ويمكن استخدام أحدهما مكان الأخرى مع اختلاف المعنى:

- You must arrive at work on time.

في المثال السابق، تفهم أن المتحدث لديه سلطة الإلزام ويمكن أن يكون المدير أو صاحب العمل.

- You have to arrive at work on time.

في المثال السابق، تفهم أن المتحدث يتكلم عن الالتزام بقانون العمل وليس بالضرورة من يملك سلطة الإلزام.

3 تُستخدم (have / has to + inf.) للتعبير عن الالتزام بالقانون في المواقف المختلفة :

- You have to wear a helmet if you're going to ride your the motorbike.

4 تُستخدم (must) وليس (have / has to) في كتب القانون وكذلك التعليمات المكتوبة التي توجد في أماكن العمل:

- Everyone must turn off mobile phones during duty hours.

5 لاحظ الفرق بين (mustn't) و (don't / doesn't have to) :

- You mustn't park here. (ممنوع أو غير مسموح لك أن تركن سيارتك هنا)
= You aren't allowed to park here.
- You don't have (need) to park here. (لست مضطرًا لركن سيارتك هنا لكن يمكنك ذلك إن أردت)
= You have the choice to park here or not.

6 لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have to + inf.) و (needn't have + p.p.) :

- I didn't have to buy any fruit. (لم أشترِ أي فاكهة لأن ذلك لم يكن ضروريًا)
- I needn't have bought any fruit. (لم يكن ضروريا أن أشترِ فاكهة لكني اشتريت)

7 تذكر عدم استخدام (to) بعد (needn't) :

- Sama doesn't need to get up early.
= Sama needn't get up early.

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. You behaved rudely with your friend; you .... have behaved yourself. *(LM)*
   a. might b. must c. should d. shouldn't
2. You .... your composition: it is full of mistakes. *(LM)*
   a. must have revised b. should have revised
   c. shouldn't have revised d. had to revise
3. I regret arriving late; I .... on time. *(LM)*
   a. must have come b. needn't have come
   c. should have come d. had to come
4. You .... another mobile phone. The one you have is just fine. *(LM)*
   a. must have revised b. should have bought
   c. shouldn't have bought d. had to buy
5. Speaking to native speakers .... a way of improving your fluency. It is a good idea to do this. *(LM)*
   a. should be b. could be c. should have been d. might be
6. It's probable that he won't come to the company today due to his illness; he .... cancel the meeting. *(LM)*
   a. must b. might c. should d. had to
7. The manager .... the meeting because he was seriously ill. *(LM)*
   a. had to postpone b. shouldn't have postponed
   c. must postpone d. needn't have postponed
8. You .... your father yesterday; the problem was too serious for you to solve alone. *(Practice Ex. 1)*
   a. should consult b. should have consulted
   c. didn't have to consult d. shouldn't have consulted
9. You .... show your passport when you travel abroad. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
   a. should b. must have c. have to d. may
10. It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last I .... arrive home.
    a. was able to b. couldn't c. wasn't able to d. managed

11. I .... walk home yesterday as I lost my money. (دور أول ٢٠١٩)
a. must   b. needn't have   c. had to   d. didn't have to

12. I'm bored at work. My dad's advice is that I .... try a different kind of job.
a. might   b. mustn't   c. will   d. should

13. You .... go to the bank. I can lend you some money. (دور ٢٠١٩ - علمي)
a. needn't to   b. don't have to   c. mustn't   d. can't

14. We .... go to Al-Azhar Park tomorrow. We haven't decided yet.
a. might   b. have to   c. should   d. must

15. At her first school, she .... to wear a blue uniform. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١١)
a. had   b. must   c. could   d. has

16. Dad said we .... go out for a walk after dinner.
a. have   b. need   c. could   d. must

17. I really .... phone my parents to tell them I'm going to be late home today. (نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٣)
a. need   b. must   c. can   d. could

18. You .... take that bus. There's another one in ten minutes. (نموذج الوزارة ٢٠١٥)
a. don't have to   b. mustn't   c. can't   d. don't need

19. Penguins are birds that .... fly.
a. could not   b. cannot   c. may not   d. should not

20. I .... take extra English lessons. I'm fluent in it.
a. have got to   b. haven't to   c. needn't   d. mustn't

21. They .... go shopping yesterday because the shops were all closed.
a. shouldn't   b. can't   c. couldn't   d. mightn't

22. In a hospital, one ....
a. mustn't smoke   b. needn't smoke
c. needn't have smoked   d. doesn't have to smoke

23. Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he .... also play the piano.
a. could   b. can   c. was able to   d. managed to

24. You .... arrive at work an hour earlier tomorrow.
a. have got   b. will need   c. had to   d. have to

25. Don't forget that I'm your employer. You .... obtain my permission before you leave work.
a. have to b. must c. needn't d. has to

26. She .... arrive at the meeting on time even after missing the bus, so she was very happy.
a. wasn't able to b. couldn't c. can't d. was able to

27. You .... come and visit us again soon. It's ages since we saw you.
a. needn't b. need c. mustn't d. must

28. Employees .... be late for work.
a. must b. mustn't c. needn't d. don't have to

29. I searched for your house for hours. Luckily, I .... find it in the end.
a. can b. am able to c. could never d. was able to

30. Sama may .... try on a few different sizes.
a. has to b. have to c. must d. had to

31. Do you .... work next weekend?
a. must b. need c. had to d. have to

32. You .... your membership card or you won't be allowed in.
a. have to show b. must show
c. need have shown d. needn't show

33. .... you get me some sugar, please?
a. Need b. Have c. Must d. Could

34. If I want to start this year, I .... apply by the end of next week.
a. had to b. have to c. should d. shouldn't

2 Special Cases

35. I had a lot of money. I .... that expensive T-shirt, but I don't like baggy clothes. (LM)
a. must have bought b. shouldn't have bought
c. could have bought d. had to buy

36. I shouldn't have repeated that mistake. This means that I .... it. (LM)
a. didn't commit b. repeated
c. ought to have repeated d. had to repeat

37. My flat is tidy. I .... bother myself to get it cleaned today. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
a. needn't b. mustn't c. don't have d. must

38. The meal was for free today. You .... for it. You should have saved your money. (دور أول ٢٠١٩)
   a. didn't need to pay b. didn't have to pay
   c. needn't have paid d. needn't pay

39. Oh, no! You .... all that meat. Now, how can I find a space for it in the freezer?
   a. didn't have to buy b. needn't have bought
   c. didn't need to buy d. mustn't buy

40. I always .... take my father's permission before I go out. That's a family rule.
   a. have to b. must c. need d. mustn't

41. .... you make that noise? It really is annoying.
   a. Can b. Could c. Must d. Might

42. At my sports club, everyone .... wear flat shoes. It's an important rule.
   a. has to b. should c. can d. could

43. **A:** I failed my math class. **B:** It was your fault. You .... Ann to help you with your math.
   a. could ask b. should ask c. may ask d. could have asked

44. You can borrow my new jacket but you .... get it dirty.
   a. have to b. mustn't c. don't have to d. haven't to

45. Rody isn't here right now but she .... home around eight or so.
   a. might be b. can't be
   c. might have been d. may have been

46. **A :** Did you make your bed?
   B : No, I .... The housekeeper did that.
   a. needn't to b. didn't have to c. shouldn't have d. won't have

47. You .... leave your clothes all over the floor like this again, Ahmed.
   a. needn't b. don't have to c. have to d. mustn't

48. You .... do more exercises. It's up to you.
   a. have to b. need to c. mustn't d. don't need to

49. The lights are still on. Hoda .... to turn them off.
   a. may forget b. might have forgotten
   c. might forget d. should forget

50. He .... the car with petrol before he set off.
 a. must fill b. shouldn't have filled
 c. ought to have filled d. should fill

51. I .... clean the kitchen before mum gets back. I want to surprise her.
 a. must b. have to c. need to d. have got to

52. Why did you stay at hotel when you were in London? You .... with your uncle.
 a. could stay b. managed to stay
 c. could have stayed d. should stay

53. Sorry, I can't go out now. I .... tidy up my room before I'm allowed out.
 a. must b. have to c. need have d. had to

3 Check your understanding

54. He oughtn't to have sent the email without enclosing the attachment. This means that he .... *(LM)*
 a. sent the email and enclosed the attachment.
 b. had to enclose the attachment with the email.
 c. didn't send the email or enclose the attachment.
 d. sent the email without enclosing the attachment.

55. I might stop working for this company. This means .... *(LM)*
 a. I am completely sure that this will happen
 b. there is a chance that this will happen
 c. I have made up my mind to stop working for this company
 d. I am completely sure that I will go on working for this company

56. Which of the following doesn't express regret? *(LM)*
 a. I should have revised well for the exam.
 b. I'm sorry for not revising well for the exam.
 c. I should revise for the next exam.
 d. I regret not revising for the exam.

57. Which of the following shows possibility? *(LM)*
 a. I must have taken an earlier train.
 b. I should have taken an earlier train.
 c. I could have taken an earlier train.
 d. I needn't have taken an earlier train.

58. "It is not necessary for you to offer help." This means ....
   a. you mustn't offer help.
   b. you must offer help.
   c. you should offer help.
   d. you needn't offer help.

59. "You are not allowed to smoke here." This means ....
   a. you mustn't smoke here.
   b. you don't have to smoke here.
   c. you are obliged to smoke here.
   d. a & c

60. "He unnecessarily bought some fruit." What does this mean?
   a. He had to buy some fruit.
   b. He needn't have bought more fruit.
   c. He needn't buy more fruit.
   d. b & c

61. "I don't have to answer this question." This means ....
   a. I haven't to answer this question.
   b. I needn't answer this question.
   c. I haven't got to answer this question.
   d. b & c

62. "She hasn't got to prepare lunch." What does this mean?
   a. She hasn't to prepare lunch.
   b. She hadn't to prepare lunch.
   c. She doesn't have to prepare lunch.
   d. She has to prepare lunch.

63. "You can't break the law." This means ....
   a. you have to break the law.
   b. you don't have to follow the law.
   c. you have to follow the law.
   d. you don't have to break the law.

64. "It was necessary for me to leave." I mean that ....
   a. I had to stay.
   b. I had to leave.
   c. I have to stay.
   d. I have to leave.

65. "Taking photos here is banned." This means ....
   a. you mustn't take photos here.
   b. you must take photos here.
   c. you can take photos here.
   d. you needn't take photos here.

66. "It is important that I call mum." This means ....
   a. I have to call mum.
   b. I had to call mum.
   c. I must call mum.
   d. I can call mum.

67. Which of the following is a strong invitation?
   a. Would you attend my sister's wedding?
   b. Do you want my sister's wedding?
   c. Must you attend my sister's wedding?
   d. You must attend my sister's wedding.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... export facilities as an important businessman ?
   a. Do you have to　　b. Have you got
   c. Have you to　　d. Do you have
2. I just remind you of the rules. You .... leave your mobile at the security room before you go in.
   a. must　　b. have to　　c. have got　　d. mustn't
3. Our professor gave us a list of books. I .... buy three books for this course.
   a. must　　b. needn't　　c. have to　　d. need to
4. .... wear that yellow tie? It's really ugly.
   a. Must you　　b. Have you to　　c. Do you have to　　d. Need you to
5. .... wear that yellow tie as part of your work uniform?
   a. Must you　　b. Needn't you　　c. Do you have to　　d. Need you not to
6. She .... do all this work today because she can do it next morning.
   a. mustn't　　b. don't have to　　c. hasn't to　　d. hasn't got to

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	– لا يوجد فعل فى المصدر بعد النقط، لذلك (a) هو الاختيار الصحيح قبل الاسم (export facilities).
2.	b	– الزم خارجي يفرضه القانون وليس للفاعل اختيار.
3.	c	– الزم خارجي بشراء الكتب يفرضه (our professor) وليس للفاعل اختيار.
4.	a	– يبدو من السياق أن المتحدث لا يتكلم عن التزام قانونى بالزى بدليل منه يقول (It is ugly) مما يعنى أنه يتحق عن التزام شخصى.
5.	c	– هنا الحديث عن الالتزام بقانون العمل فنستخدم (Do you have to) لأن الإلزام خارجي.
6.	d	– الحديث هنا عن عدم الضرورة، والصيغة الأكثر دقة لانعدام الضرورة هى (hasn't go to) ولا يمكن استخدام (mustn't) لأنها تفيد المنع أو التحريم وهو ما لا يتفق مع معنى الجملة.

LESSONS 5 & 6

SB pages 48:51 WB pages 30 & 31



Part I Chapter 4

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية ، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

angrily(adv)	بغضب	proof(n)	دليل - بُرهان
badly(adv)	بشكل سيئ	property(n)	عقارات
benefactor(n)	متبرّع/ مُتَصَدِّق	quietly(adv)	بهدوء
expectations(n)	أحلام - تَطلعات	slowly(adv)	ببطء
from now on	من الآن فصاعداً	strangely(adv)	بشكل غريب
hammer(n)	شاكوش - مطرقة	suspect(ed) (v)	يشتبه في - يشك
household(n)	أهل البيت	to be worth the effort	يستحق ما يُبذل من جهد
immediately(adv)	حالاً	upset(adj)	مُنزعج
my heart is set on	عازم - مُصمّم		
privately(adv)	سرًا		

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

benefactor(n) متبرّع/ مُتَصَدِّق	- a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life
expectations(n) أحلام - تَطلُّعات	- feelings that good things will happen
from now on من الآن فصاعداً	- an action that starts at a specific مُحدَّد point in time and continues into the future
hammer(n) شاكوش	- a tool with a heavy piece of metal at the end of a long handle مقبض
my heart is set on عازم - مُصمّم	- when you really want something or want to do something
proof(n) دليل - بُرهان	- an object or some information that shows something is true

property(n) عقارات / أملاك	- a building that belongs to you
suspect(ed) (v) يشتبه في - يشك	- to think that something is probably true, especially something bad
to be worth the effort يستحق ما يُبذل من جهد	- something that is useful or good but difficult to do
upset(adj) مُنزعج	unhappy and worried because of something unpleasant غير سار or disappointing مُخيِّب

Exercise **On Vocabulary** • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The young man wasn't set free since he had no .... that he was innocent. *(LM)*
   a. removal b. disapproval c. proof d. roof
2. An anonymous .... donated ten thousand pounds for our local charity. *(LM)*
   a. factor b. benefactor c. malefactor d. tractor
3. Our hearts were all .... on spending the weekend in the country, until my brother broke his leg and we had to postpone the trip. *(LM)*
   a. left b. prepared c. set d. sat
4. As I had .... all along, he was not a real businessman; he turned out to be a crook! *(LM)*
   a. pretended b. invented c. respected d. suspected
5. My cousin will have a lot of property in the future. Property is similar in meaning to .... *(LM)*
   a. inventions b. impressions c. possessions d. suggestions
6. A growing number of households have at least one computer. Households here means .... *(LM)*
   a. the big buildings in a certain city
   b. the people who live together in one house
   c. the offices in a company
   d. the desks inside one room
7. My dad said, "**From this moment and into the future**, you must do your homework as soon as you finish your lunch". The underlined part means : .... *(LM)*
   a. from tomorrow on b. starting from tomorrow
   c. from now on d. starting from yesterday

8. A picture is worth a thousand words. This means that .... (LM)
   a. you shouldn't be talkative b. you should be silent
   c. it's better to show than to tell d. it's better to tell than to show

9. .... are feelings that good things will happen.
   a. Expectations b. Hammers c. Proofs d. Properties

10. A/An .... is a tool with a heavy piece of metal at the end of a long handle.
    a. expectation b. hammer c. proof d. injury

Part II Skills



المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

Translation

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Burnout is a mental problem that affects more people today. Therefore, we must take some rest to get rid of burnout, which affects the accuracy of the work we do. (LM)

أ. الإرهاق مشكلة ذهنية تؤثر على المزيد من العمل اليوم، لذلك يجب أخذ قسطاً من الراحة للتخلُّص من الإرهاق الذى يؤثر علي دقة العمل الذى نقوم به.

ب. الإرهاق مشكلة ذهنية تؤثر على المزيد من الناس اليوم، لذلك يجب أخذ قسطاً من الراحة للتخلُّص من الإرهاق الذى يؤثر على كمية العمل الذى نقوم به.

ج. الإرهاق مشكلة ذهنية تؤثر على المزيد من الناس اليوم، لذلك يجب أخذ قسطاً من الراحة للتخلُّص من الإرهاق الذى يؤثر علي دقة العمل الذى نقوم به.

د. الإرهاق مشكلة ذهنية تؤثر على المزيد من الناس اليوم، لذلك يجب أخذ قسطاً من الراحة لتقليل الإرهاق الذى يؤثر علي دقة العمل الذى نقوم به.

2. Stress and anxiety are common experiences for most people. In fact, 70% of adults say they feel stress or anxiety daily.

أ. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من البالغين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر أو القلق.

ب. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من البالغين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر والقلق يوميًا.

ج. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائعة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من البالغين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر أو القلق يوميًا.

د. التوتر والقلق من التجارب الشائكة لمعظم الناس، ففي الواقع يقول ٧٠٪ من المراهقين أنهم يشعرون بالتوتر أو القلق يوميًا.

3. I should have done my best when it was not so late, but it is no use crying over spilt milk.

أ. يجب أن أبذل قصارى جهدي عندما لم يكن الوقت متأخرًا، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.

ب. كان يجب أن أبذل قصارى جهدي في الوقت المناسب، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.

جـ. كان يجب أن أبذل الأفضل في الوقت المناسب، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.

د. كان يجب أن أبذل أدنى جهدي في الوقت المناسب، لكن لا فائدة من البكاء على اللبن المسكوب.

4. It might seem contradictory, but putting physical stress on your body through exercise can relieve mental stress.

أ. قد يبدو الأمر متناقضًا، لكن ممارسة الضغط البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

ب. يبدو الأمر متناقضًا، لكن ممارسة الضغط البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

جـ. قد يبدو الأمر متناقضًا، لكن ممارسة التوتر البدني على جسدك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

د. يبدو الأمر متناقضًا، لذلك ممارسة الضغط البدني على جسمك من خلال ممارسة الرياضة يمكن أن يخفف الضغط النفسي.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. الحرمان البيئي هو غياب الظروف البيئية التي تُحفِّز التطور الفكري والسلوكي، وغالباً ما يرتبط الحرمان البيئي بالعُزْلَة الاجتماعية ويكون شديداً لدرجة أنه قد يُسبِّب بعض الأمراض النفسية. (LM)

a. Environmental deprivation is the result of environmental conditions that stimulate intellectual and behavioural development. It is often associated with social isolation and may be so severe that it causes social problems.

b. Environmental deprivation is the absence of emotional conditions that stimulate intellectual and behavioural development. It is often associated with economic isolation and may be so severe that it causes harmful diseases.

c. Environmental deprivation is the absence of environmental conditions that stimulate intellectual and behavioural development. It is often associated with social isolation and is so severe that it causes some mental illnesses.

d. Environmental deprivation is the presence of social conditions that stimulate intellectual and behavioural development. It is often associated with social isolation and is so severe that it causes mental illnesses.

---

٢. قد تتأثر صحتك النفسية بشدة كنتيجة مباشرة للإنهاك فى العمل دون الحصول على قدر كاف من الراحة.

a. Your mental health may be severely affected as a direct result of being overworked without getting enough rest.

b. Your mental health might be severely affected as a direct result of being overworked without getting enough rest.

c. Your mental health will be severely affected as a direct result of being overworked without getting enough rest.

d. a & b

---

٣. إن الإجهاد الشديد الذي يتعرض له طلاب المدارس الثانوية يُمكن أن يترك أثراً سيئاً على صحتهم النفسية.

a. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to has a bad effect on their mental health.

b. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to have a bad effect on their mental health.

c. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to might have a bad effect on their mental health.

d. The extreme stress that high school students are exposed to can be had a bad effect on their mental health.

---

٤. لقد كان بمقدوري أن أسافر بالطائرة من أسوان إلي القاهرة، لكنني فضلت السفر بالقطار.

a. I could have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

b. I should have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

c. I must have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

d. I can't have travelled by plane from Aswan to Cairo, but I preferred to travel by train.

Test on Unit 4

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

تنويه
للتدريب على أسئلة
اختيارى MRQ
بنك الأسئلة

○ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Working for several hours without a break is something ....
   a. exhausted b. stressful
   c. stressed d. frustrated
2. It is the policy سياسة of the company to .... the quality of our products as much as possible.
   a. consider b. scold c. improve d. clear off
3. In this hotel, rooms are available in five price ....
   a. burnouts b. managements c. messages d. categories
4. To .... is to push out your lower lip because you are annoyed or unhappy.
   a. pout b. frown c. scold d. suppose
5. Taking a rest will make you .... good.
   a. follow b. feel c. try d. cause
6. "The fresh air of the countryside improved his health". We can replace the verb 'improved' in this context with ....
   a. made ... better b. enhanced c. a & b d. got better
7. She was .... about her safety when her car broke down on a dark area of the road.
   a. anxious b. external c. positive d. negative
8. "Your influence on your children is clear". The word 'influence' in this sentence is a/an ....
   a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
9. Outside prison, criminals are .... control.
   a. out b. out of c. in d. under
10. Tom doesn't feel good. I think he .... a doctor.
    a. should see b. might see c. can't see d. couldn't see
11. You .... to get more practice if you want to pass your driving test.
    a. must b. need c. could d. had to
12. The doctor .... get here as soon as he can.
    a. had to b. didn't have to c. must d. mustn't

13. If you are an employee, you .... get your employer's permission before leaving work.
a. have to
b. had to
c. must
d. mustn't

14. He went by bus but he .... in his car.
a. could go
b. could have gone
c. must have gone
d. needn't have to go

15. You have to pay a fine. You .... so fast.
a. mustn't have driven
b. needn't drive
c. don't have to drive
d. shouldn't have driven

16. Ahmed, let's .... that film. It is boring.
a. watch
b. to watch
c. not watch
d. watching

✪ Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Everyone has one hobby or another. Of all hobbies, I do believe that reading is the simplest and most useful. How can we increase the benefits of reading and make it easier?

I think that we should start a book club for secondary and university students in our town. We could read both Arabic and English books. We could have meetings every week or two in the summer, and once a month during the school year.

Here are the reasons for which I think we should have book clubs. First, if we have a book club, it will encourage us to read more. It is known that if people read a lot, they write better. So, this will help us in two ways. Secondly, we will develop some responsibility if we take turns leading the discussion at meetings. The leader will have to read the book carefully. Thirdly, discussing books will help us to overcome any shyness. Everyone will have to say something.

Reading good books will be a better way to use our time than playing computer games or reading comic books. Don't you agree with me?

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The best title for this passage is ....
a. Merits of Joining Book Clubs
b. Reading Becomes Useless
c. Disadvantages of joining book clubs
d. People are no longer interested in reading

18. What psychological effect does membership in book clubs have?
   a. It helps members to get over their shyness.
   b. It helps to decrease leadership responsibilities.
   c. It helps members to write better.
   d. It helps people to be lonely

19. According to the passage, the word "**overcome**" means ....
   a. surrender b. give up c. defeat d. lose

20. After reading the passage, what type of books does the writer think less useful?
   a. Science books b. Adventure books
   c. Fiction books d. Comic books

21. What happens if people read a lot?
   a. They join book clubs. b. They learn to write better.
   c. They can't lead a discussion. d. They are very shy.

22. The writer thinks that ....
   a. book clubs encourage reading
   b. book clubs distribute books
   c. readers should read books only
   d. readers should not make discussions

23. .... is a good way for spending time.
   a. Reading b. Fighting c. Disagreement d. Meetings

24. The first paragraph deals with ....
   a. the importance of book clubs
   b. the benefits of reading alone
   c. many hobbies are better than reading.
   d. the advantages of reading

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I am one of those people who are not for spending too much of our money on the study of space. I don't mean that we should stop studying space, of course. I only want to direct some of the much money spent on space research to studying other fields and places that I think are much more important and profitable.

We spend billions of dollars to study the sun and distant stars. We should stop this and study the oceans instead. They cover nearly 70% of the earth.

Oceanography is more important than space science. It researches processes that directly affect our lives. For example, we release tonnes of waste into the oceans every year.

Oceanographers, who specialise in various fields, can tell us the results of pollution on marine life, on the chemistry of the seas and on the currents (movement of water) that affect climate.

We know that in different parts of the seas, distinctive forms of life have evolved. There are even living things that do not depend on the sun for energy! Maybe we can learn something useful by studying them. There are vast areas of the oceans, especially in the deepest water, that are unexplored. This is where we should be researching, not the stars.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. What is the main idea of the passage?
   a. Studying space is a waste of time
   b. Studying oceans and seas is more useful than studying space.
   c. Studying deep seas is useful.
   d. Saving money is necessary.

26. If we study oceans, ...
   a. we may explore more about marine life
   b. we may pollute the environments
   c. they can be distinctive
   d. they can be unprofitable

27. Which areas of seas and oceans do you think are impossible to study?
   a. Shallow areas b. Remote areas c. Challenger deep d. Warm water

28. Oceanography researches ....
   a. processes that directly affect our life
   b. chemistry of stars
   c. stars and deepwater
   d. processes that do not affect our life

29. It can be inferred from the writer's words that ....
   a. much money is spent on the study of oceans and seas.
   b. a lot of research is done on marine life.
   c. studying space is more important than the study of marine life.
   d. we should spend more money on studying oceans and seas.

30. Which of the following sentences is the writer's comparative point ?
   a. Studying oceans is more profitable than studying space.
   b. Studying oceans is as important as studying space.
   c. Studying space is more profitable than studying oceans.
   d. Studying space is as important as studying any stars.

31. The last paragraph deals with ....
   a. different marine lives
   b. exploring space is useless
   c. studying oceanography
   d. saving money to explore the space

32. According to the passage, ...
   a. the writer supports exploring space because of its great benefits.
   b. oceanography is the solution for all people's problems on earth.
   c. the writer doesn't refuse exploring space completely.
   d. exploring space provides much money for humanity to explore oceans.

hoose the best Arabic translation :

33. We live in the age of the Internet where information travels round the world in seconds, and is available to people in more countries than ever before. This has made our lives easier and faster. *(LM)*

أ. نحن نعيش في عصر التكنولوجيا حيث تنتقل المعلومات حول مصر في ثوان ويتم إتاحتها للأشخاص في بلدان أكثر من أي وقت مضى، الأمر الذي جعل حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

ب. نحن نعيش في عصر الإنترنت حيث تنتقل المعلومات حول العالم في ثوان ويتم إتاحتها للأشخاص في بلدان أكثر من أي وقت مضى، الأمر الذي جعل حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

جـ. نحن نعيش في عصر الفضاء، حيث تنتقل المعلومات بواسطة الأقمار الصناعية في ثوان ويتم إتاحتها للأشخاص في بلدان أكثر من أي وقت مضى، الأمر الذي جعل حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

د. نحن نعيش في عصر الإنترنت حيث تنتقل المعلومات حول العالم في ثوان ويتم إتاحتها مجاناً للأشخاص في بلدان أعظم من أي وقت مضى، الأمر الذي جعل حياتنا أسهل وأسرع.

34. There are a lot of jobs that can be done online. These jobs vary according to the tasks required and suit a lot of people who are currently unemployed. *(Practice Ex. 1)*

أ. هناك القليل من الوظائف التي يمكنك القيام بها عبر الإنترنت، وتختلف هذه الوظائف وفقاً للمهام التي يتطلبها العمل، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم وظائف للقيام بها.

ب. هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكنك القيام بها عبر الإنترنت، وتختلف هذه الوظائف وفقاً للراتب الذي يُدفع لك، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم وظائف في الوقت الحالي.

جـ. هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي يمكنك قبولها عبر الإنترنت، وتختلف هذه الوظائف وفقاً للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي يناسب الكثير من الشباب الذين تركوا وظائفهم

هناك الكثير من الوظائف التي تبحث عنها عبر الإنترنت، وتختلف هذه الوظائف وفقاً للمهام التي يتم التعامل معها، وهو الشيء الذي قد لا يناسب الكثير من الأشخاص الذين ليس لديهم وظائف للقيام بها.

Choose the best English translation :

2. لا تشغل نفسك بانتقاد الآخرين بدون موضوعية، كن إيجابياً واعمل بجد، وتَقَبَّل الآخر، فلا أحد بدون عيوب، والمهم أن نتعلم من أخطائنا.

(Practice Ex. 1)

a. Do not concern yourself with criticizing others with objectivity. Be positive, work hard and respect others. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to learn from our mistakes.

b. Do not concern yourself with attacking others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and agree with the other. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to learn from our mistakes.

c. Do not concern yourself with criticizing others without creativity. Be positive, work hard and accept the other. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to teach from our mistakes.

d. Do not concern yourself with criticizing others without objectivity. Be positive, work hard and accept the other. No one is without flaws, and the important thing is for us to learn from our mistakes.

3. تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتنمية مهارات الطلاب وتعزيز روح الابتكار لديهم ليكونوا قادرين على مواكبة التقدم العلمي في كل أنحاء العالم ويساهموا في مشروعات التنمية في بلدهم.

(Practice Ex. 1)

a. The Ministry of Education is interested in developing students' innovation and enhancing their skills so that they can keep pace with scientific research all over the world and contribute to development projects in their country.

b. The Ministry of Education is interested in developing student's skills and enhancing their innovative projects so that they can keep peace with scientific progress all over the world and contribute to development projects in their country.

c. The Ministry of Culture is interested in developing students' skills and enhancing their spirit of innovation so that they can keep pace with scientific progress all over the world and contribute to development projects in their country.

d. The Ministry of Education is interested in developing students' skills and enhancing their spirit of innovation so that they can keep pace with scientific progress all over the world and contribute to development plans in their country.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following can be used in a formal email? *(LM)*
   a. Bye b. Dear friend c. Yours sincerely d. Love from
38. Which of the following can end an essay about the merits of changing career? *(LM)*
   a. Moreover, changing career could enable you to make more money regardless of the experience you can acquire.
   b. In conclusion, changing career is very important, as you can acquire a lot of various experiences in different fields.
   c. To start with, changing career isn't a good decision to make, since it has a lot of disadvantages and there are many different obstacles that you will face.
   d. In short, changing career could be a waste of time if you don't have the required skills to occupy another post.
39. Which of the following is part of an essay about the changes you have experienced in your life? *(LM)*
   a. For some people, changing career direction could be a risk, so they prefer sticking to one career throughout their lives
   b. Lack of work experience could be a major obstacle when applying for a new job.
   c. Personally, I have a lot of experience due to the various situations I have been through in life.
   d. In conclusion, personal skills are highly recommended to occupy certain posts.
40. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*
   a. I won't tell you now. however, all will be revealed tomorrow at midday.
   b. I wont tell you now. However, all will be revealed tomorrow at midday.
   c. I won't tell you now. However all will be revealed tomorrow at midday.
   d. I won't tell you now. However, all will be revealed tomorrow at midday.

Answers of Test on unit 4

اسم الطالب (رباعياً) : ....

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

No.			
1. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
2. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
3. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
4. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
5. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
6. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
7. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
8. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
9. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
10. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
11. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
12. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
13. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
14. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
15. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
16. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
17. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
18. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
19. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
20. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
21. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
22. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
23. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
24. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
25. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
26. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
27. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
28. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
29. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
30. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
31. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
32. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
33. (د)	(ج)	(ب)	(أ)
34. (د)	(ج)	(ب)	(أ)
35. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
36. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
37. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
38. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
39. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
40. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ

General Exercises

for Al Azhar students on Unit 4



1. Finish the following dialogue :

Omar is talking with Bill about his visit to Egypt.

Omar : Hello, Bill. (1) .... ?

Bill : Hello, Omar. Yes, I do enjoy it so much.

Omar : (2) .... ?

Bill : The Egyptian Museum, The Pyramids, Cairo Tower.

Omar : (3) .... ?

Bill : I liked it very much. The Egyptian dishes are delicious. By the way, what is Koshari made of ?

Omar : (4) ....

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"How to avoid burnout"

....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- It is no longer true that learning stops as we all need to acquire new skills in this ever-changing world.

....

4. Translate into English :

- لقد أصبح من الضروري أن تنمي مهاراتك باستمرار لتبقى مطلوبًا في سوق العمل.

....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections)

- Why did the Muslim immigrants have to leave Mecca? (الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

....



GUIDE



New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

PART ONE

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات

للصف الثالث الثانوى
عـــام - أزهـــرى
الفصـل الدراسـى الأول



تطبيق
التعلّم التفاعلى

3rd Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM



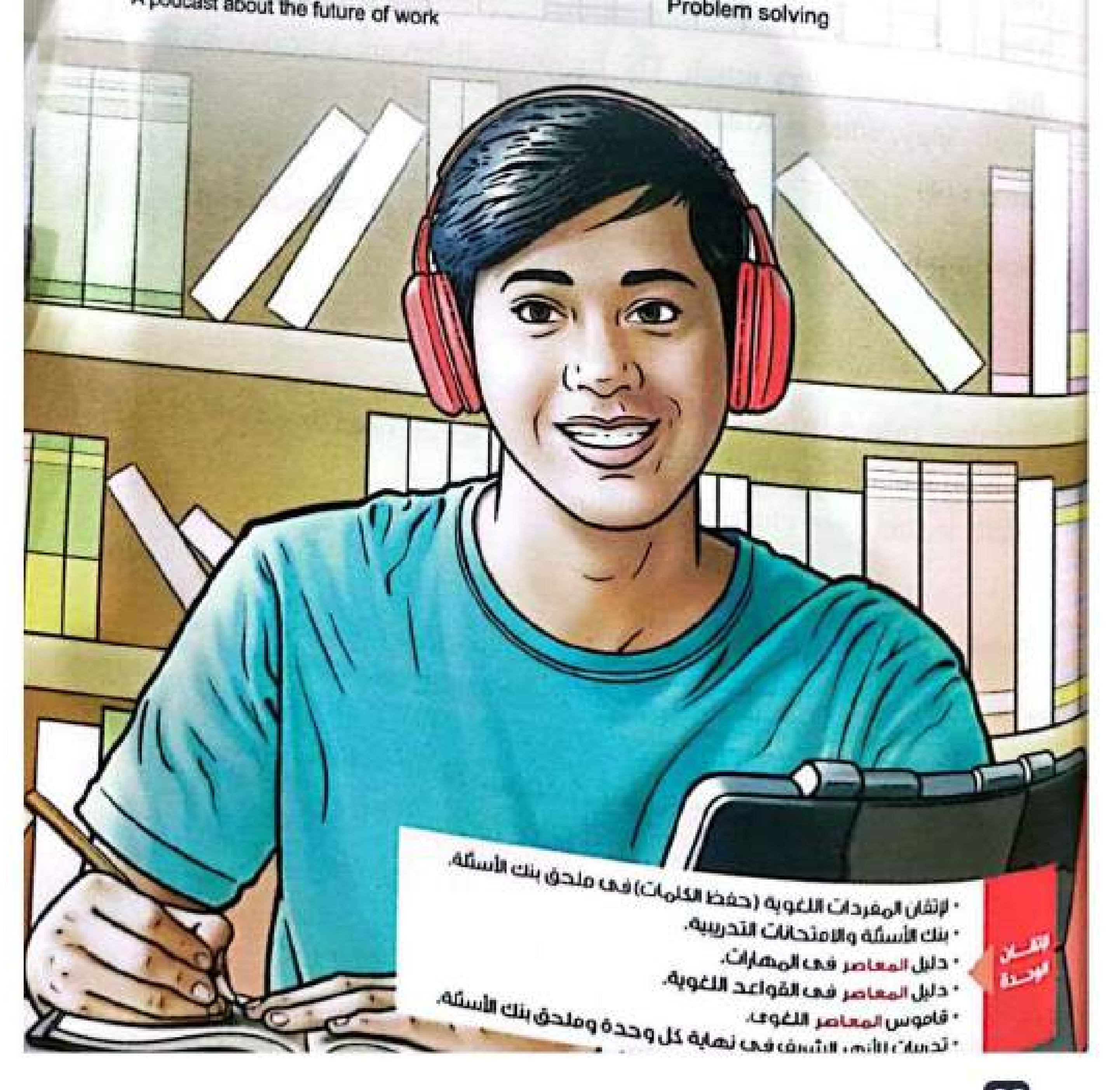
By: Sawsan Kamel

UNIT 5 The future of work

Learning Outcomes :

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 32 : 37

- **Reading :** Text messages between a student and an IT Support worker
- **Writing :** A letter of application for a job; An email asking for clarification about study tips
- **Listening :** A podcast about the future of work
- **Speaking :** A discussion about new ways of studying
- **Language :** Verb patterns with the gerund and infinitive; Phrasal verbs
- **Life skills :** Problem solving



- لإتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- دليل المعاصر في القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- في نهاية كل وحدة وملحق بنك الأسئلة.



LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 52 : 55 WB pages 32 & 33

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

catch up(phr. v)	يواكب/يساير – يلحق بـ	IT= information technology(n)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
catch up with your work	تلحق بعملك	mute(d) (v/adj)	يكتم/يُصمِت – صامت
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب (برنامج)	mute the microphone	يكتم الميكروفون
install software	يُنصِّب برنامج		
join(ed) (v)	ينضم إلي	switch(ed) (n/v)	مُفتاح تشغيل – يُبدِّل
join a virtual meeting	ينضم لإجتماع افتراضي	switch ... on(phr. v)	يُشغِّل
		switch ... off(phr. v)	يُوقِف/يُطفِئ
leave - left(v)	يغادر/يترك	turn ... up(phr. v)	يرفع (الصوت مثلاً)
leave a virtual meeting	يغادر إجتماع افتراضي	turn ... down(phr. v)	يُخفِّض (الصوت) – يرفض
		share(d) (v/n)	يُشارِك – مشاركة – نصيب/حصة
look into(phr. v)	يتحقق من – يُحقِّق في		
look into possibilities	يبحث عن امكانية	share a screen	يشارك شاشة

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر اهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

adapting(n)	التكيُّف/التطور	interviewer(n)	المُحاوِر
advent(n)	مَجيء/ظهور	logical(adj)	منطقي
agriculture(n)	الزِراعة	messaging(n)	المراسلة
ancestors(n)	أجداد/أسلاف	owner(n)	مالك/صاحب
application(n)	انضمام/تَقَدُّم – تطبيق	plug(ged) (v)	يُوصِّل (بالكهربا،/ بجهاز)
apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب – يُطبِّق	plus(conj.)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
brainstorming(n)	العصف الذهني	population(n)	السكان
check(ed) (v)	يتحقق من	position(n)	وظيفة
clarification(n)	التوضيح	possibility(n)	إمكانية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
colleague(n)	زميل عمل	predictable(adj)	يمكن التنبؤ به
conclude(d) (v)	يستنتج	prediction(n)	تنبؤ - نبوءة
conference call(n)	مُكالمة جماعية	range(n)	سلسلة/مجال
connection(n)	إتصال - علاقة	reliable (adj)	موثوق به
consequence(n)	نتيجة	remain(ed) (v)	يبقى - يظل
contact(ed) (v/n)	يتصل به - اتصال/تواصل	repetitive(adj)	متكرر
debate(n)	مناظرة/نقاش	replace(d) (v)	يستبدل - يحل محل
decade(n)	عقد (١٠ سنوات)	respond(ed) (v)	يستجيب
decline(n)	انخفاض	responsibility(n)	مسؤولية
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض - ينهار	risk(ed) (v/n)	يخاطر به - مخاطرة
decrease(n)	انخفاض	schedule(n)	جدول الأعمال
definitely(adv)	من المؤكد	self-service(n)	الخدمة الذاتية
delay(ed) (n/v)	تأخير - يؤخِّر	software(n)	برامج
destroy(ed) (v)	يُدمِّر	solution(n)	حل
document(n)	وثيقة	space(n)	مكان - مساحة - فراغ
efficient(adj)	كفء	strange (adj)	غريب
emerge(d) (v)	يظهر/يَبرُز	study(n)	دراسة - بحث
employee(n)	مُوظف	substitute(d) (v)	يستبدل
forum(n)	مُنتدى	suit(ed) (v)	يُناسب/ يَصلُح لـ
globally(adv)	علي مستوي عالمي	support(ed) (n/v)	دعم - يدعم
headphones(n)	سماعات الرأس	technical(adj)	تقني/فني
health care(n)	الرعاية الصحية	trend(n)	توجه/نزعة
increasingly(adv)	بشكل متزايد	typical(adj)	نموذجي
independently (adv)	بإستقلالية	user-friendly(adj)	سهل الإستخدام
instant (adj)	فوري - لحظي	version(n)	نسخة/إصدار
interpersonal(adj)	بين الأشخاص - تفاعلي	virtual(adj)	افتراضي
interviewee(n)	ضيف الحوار/ المُحاوَر	welfare(n)	ازدهار - راحة

3 Definitions تعريفات

Word	Definition
catch up with(phr. v) يواكب/يساير	to improve يتحسن and reach the same standard مستوى as other people in your class, group etc.
catch up with(phr. v) يلحق به	to come from behind الخلف and reach someone in front of you by going faster
install(ed) (v) يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب	to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used

IT= information technology(n) تكنولوجيا المعلومات	the study or use of electronic processes عمليات and equipment for storing تخزين information and making it available
join(ed) (v) ينضم إلي	to begin to take part in يشارك في an activity that other people are involved in
look into(phr. v) يبحث عن/في – يُحقّق في	to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc. in order to solve it
mute(d)(v/adj) يكتم/يُصمِّت - صامت	to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely
share(d) (v) يُشارِك	to have or use something with other people
switch ... off(phr. v) يُوقف/يُطفئ	to turn off a machine, light, radio etc. using a switch مفتاح
switch ... on(phr. v) يُشغّل	to turn on a machine, light, radio etc. using a switch
turn ... down(phr. v) يُخفّض (الصوت/الحرارة ...)	to turn the switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces less heat, sound etc.
turn ... up(phr. v) يرفع (الصوت / الحرارة ...)	to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces more heat, sound etc.

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I had to .... my mobile during the meeting, so no one would hear it while it rang. *(LM)*
   a. mute b. meet c. turn on d. turn off
2. I got a plumber to .... the new washing machine. *(LM)*
   a. instill b. install c. join d. communicate
3. The sound was terribly loud, so I asked her to turn it .... *(LM)*
   a. out b. down c. up d. on
4. About 500 new members .... El-Moasser page on Facebook every day.
   a. download b. suit c. join d. share

5. "Use this switch to turn the machine on". In this sentence, 'switch' is a/an ....
   a. noun   b. verb   c. adverb   d. adjective
6. Give me some time to .... possible solutions to the problem.
   a. plug in   b. look into   c. delay   d. decline
7. It would be very difficult to .... if you missed two weeks of school.
   a. catch up   b. catch up with   c. contact   d. decline
8. It would be very difficult to .... your school work if you missed two weeks of school.
   a. catch up   b. catch up with   c. contact   d. decline
9. .... before you go to bed.
   a. Turn the TV up   b. Switch the TV off
   c. Switch on the TV   d. b & c
10. .... I can hardly hear you.
    a. Turn the TV up   b. Switch the TV on
    c. Switch on the TV   d. Turn down the TV
11. We should always give employees a share in making decision. The word 'share' here is a/an ....
    a. noun   b. verb   c. adverb   d. adjective
12. .... I can hardly hear what is being said by the guests of my favourite programme.
    a. Turn the TV up   b. Switch the TV off
    c. Switch on the TV   d. Turn down the TV
13. You can't have access to your Facebook account on your mobile unless you .... a Facebook application.
    a. respond   b. apply   c. install   d. mute

2 Important Vocabulary

14. You can join the .... meeting by clicking on the link I sent you. *(LM)*
    a. false   b. virtual   c. offline   d. factual
15. The internet .... is quite strong in the office, so you can do all your online tasks easily. *(LM)*
    a. linking   b. connection   c. joining   d. separation

16. If you can't download the new application, ... your internet connection. *(LM)*
a. check b. shake c. cancel d. agree

17. My friend's health has .... since he started smoking. *(LM)*
a. decided b. improved c. increased d. declined

18. Can you think of a .... to the problem of noise in our city? *(LM)*
a. link b. solution c. fact d. result

19. An efficient .... should be promoted to motivate them to achieve more success. *(LM)*
a. unemployment b. employment c. employer d. employee

20. Your ID is an important .... that you can't do without. تستغني عنها
a. version b. IT c. document d. application

21. Don't expect to get a/an .... response. I will take my time to decide.
a. instant b. virtual c. technical d. interpersonal

22. Parents are responsible for the .... of their children.
a. forum b. space c. welfare d. interview

23. With this amount of experience, skills and qualifications, you are really .... to the job.
a. downloaded b. suited c. joined d. shared

24. I .... the printer cable into one of the USB ports of my laptop.
a. plugged b. installed c. destroyed d. shared

25. "My mother calls me twice a day to make sure I'm all right". Here, "calls' is a/an ....
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective

26. I am going to apply for a lecturer .... advertised on El-Moasser Website.
a. conference b. clarification c. possibility d. position

27. I bought a genuine أصلية .... of Windows 11.
a. version b. IT c. document d. application

28. The product delivery has been .... because of drivers' strike إضراب.
a. plugged in b. looked into c. delayed d. declined

29. The officer .... his life to rescue the kidnapped child.
    a. caught up b. caught up with c. contacted d. risked
30. The point still needs more .... Not all students have understood it.
    a. conference b. clarification c. possibility d. position
31. My headache .... well to this medicine.
    a. responds b. applies c. installs d. mutes
32. I don't expect he will .... this generous offer.
    a. plug in b. look into c. delay d. decline
33. I run an online .... which helps language learners.
    a. forum b. space c. welfare d. interviewee
34. Teamwork needs a high level of .... skills. You need to have a good relationship with other team members.
    a. instant b. virtual c. technical d. interpersonal
35. I intend to attend the medical .... held in the Hilton.
    a. conference b. clarification c. possibility d. position
36. "I was busy messaging some clients". The word 'messaging' in this utterance is a/an ....
    a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
37. Stress may .... your mental health.
    a. plug b. install c. destroy d. share
38. Mental health problems are a direct .... of stressful work life.
    a. colleague b. consequence c. software d. study
39. To .... this 20-gigabyte file quickly, you need a fast internet connection.
    a. download b. suit c. join d. share
40. When the noun "............" means a formal request for something such as a job, it can't be replaced with "app".
    a. version b. position c. document d. application
41. Give children their own .... to choose and decide.
    a. forum b. space c. welfare d. interviewee

42. Give me an objective solution that can easily be ....
a. responded b. applied c. installed d. muted

43. I was visited by three of my .... when I was ill.
a. colleagues b. consequences c. softwares d. studies

44. Just .... me if something goes wrong.
a. catch up b. catch up with c. contact d. decline

45. You can get technical support on our website". 'Support' is used here as a/an ....
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective

46. They are looking into the .... of starting a new branch of the bank here in our town.
a. conference b. clarification c. possibility d. position

47. Make sure that the loud speakers are ....
a. plugged in b. looked into c. delayed d. declined

3 Definitions

48. To .... is to turn a machine, light, radio etc. off using a switch.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. set off

49. To .... is to begin to take part in an activity that other people are involved in.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install

50. To .... is to come from behind and reach someone in front of you by going faster.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. catch up with

51. To .... is to make the sound of something quieter, or make it disappear completely.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install

52. To .... is to turn a machine, light, radio etc. on using a switch.
a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. depend on

53. To .... is to have or use something with other people.
a. join b. mute c. share d. install

54. To .... is to turn a switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces more heat, sound etc.
a. switch ... on b. turn ... up c. switch ... off d. turn ... down

55. To .... is to turn the switch on a machine such as an oven, radio etc. so that it produces less heat, sound etc.
a. switch ... on　b. turn ... up　c. switch ... off　d. turn ... down

56. To .... is to add new software to a computer so that it is ready to be used.
a. join　b. mute　c. share　d. install

57. To .... is to try to find out the truth about a problem, crime etc in order to solve it.
a. switch ... on　b. switch ... off　c. look into　d. catch up with

58. .... is the study or use of electronic processes and equipment for storing information and making it available.
a. AI　b. IT　c. PhD　d. M3ak

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

catch	up with تلحق بـ / تُساير	**leave**	a virtual meeting يغادر اجتماع افتراضى
cause	a change يُسبب تغييراً	**look**	into possibilities يدرس إمكانية
check	the internet connection يتحقق من الاتصال بالإنترنت	**lose**	the race يخسر السباق
do	a project يقوم بدراسة/بحث	**make**	sense يكون ذو مغزى
email	the information يرسل المعلومات عن طريق البريد الإلكتروني	**mute**	the microphone يكتم الميكروفون
email	the students يراسل الطلاب عن طريق البريد الالكترونى	**offer**	a position يمنح/يعرض وظيفة
feel	positive لديه شعور بالإيجابية	**share**	screen يشارك الشاشة
give	rise to يزيد من	**show**	a decline in يُظهر وجود نقص فى
give	access يمكن من الوصول إلى	**stay**	in touch with يبقي على تواصل مع
join	a virtual meeting ينضم إلى اجتماع افتراضى	**study**	... to a very high level يدرس حتي مستوي مُتقدّم ...
join	university يلتحق بالجامعة		

have	a memory of	يتذكر	take	control of	يتحكم في
	control over	لديه تحكم في	tell	... to do	يُخبر ... بأن يقوم به
	a problem with	لديه مشكلة في			
	virtual meetings	لديه اجتماع افتراضي			

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I intend to .... the faculty of engineering after I finish secondary school. *(LM)*
   a. leave b. go c. join d. enroll
2. In a conference call, you won't be heard if you .... the microphone.
   a. turn b. install c. mute d. join
3. To .... your screen with another device or multiple devices, you need to install a particular software.
   a. share b. feel c. take d. look
4. A fast internet connection helps you .... up with your work.
   a. tell b. offer c. do d. catch
5. The software .... on your mobile needs to be updated every now and then.
   a. turned b. installed c. muted d. joined
6. Please, ... me what to do if I am in a place where there is no internet service.
   a. tell b. offer c. do d. catch
7. Before you agree with an idea, first .... into its possibilities of success.
   a. share b. feel c. take d. look
8. The virtual meeting I .... discussed how to relieve work pressure.
   a. turned b. installed c. muted d. joined
9. We're .... a project about the best application of smart technology.
   a. telling b. answering c. doing d. catching
10. I .... positive about the success of my brother.
    a. share b. feel c. take d. switch
11. When I .... the sound up, I saw that there was a blaming look on my father's face.
    a. turned b. installed c. muted d. a & c

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب (برنامج)	set up
install(ed) (v)	يُركِّب/يُثبِّت (جهاز)	put - position
look into (phr. v)	يتحقق من – يُحقق في	investigate/ explore/ research
mute (adj)	صامت	silent / very low
switch	يُغيِّر/يتغير/يتبدل	change
switch … on (phr. v)	يُشغِّل	turn … on (phr. v)

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
install(ed) (v)	يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب (برنامج)	remove/uninstall
join(ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	leave
turn/ switch … off (phr. v)	يُوقِف/يُطفئ	turn/switch … on (phr. v)

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "You need to install anti-virus software". In this sentence, we can replace 'install' with ………… .
   a. remove b. uninstall c. a & b d. set up
2. "The microphone is mute". The word 'mute' in this sentence is the synonym of ………… .
   a. silence b. silent c. loud d. high
3. Mr Ayman said,"Switch the air conditioners off before you leave the office Fady". Mr Ayman wanted Fady to turn the air conditioners ………… .
   a. down b. up c. off d. into
4. "I joined the meeting". The verb 'joined' in this context is the antonym of ………… .
   a. left b. applied c. removed d. set up

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective
install يُثبِّت/يُنصِّب	installation تثبيت/تنصيب instalment / installment التقسيط installer برنامج تثبيت التطبيقات / فنى تركيب	
mute يكتم الصوت/يُصمِّت		mute صامت muted منخفض أو هادئ الصوت mutable متبدل / متغير
switch يُبدِّل - يتحول	switch مفتاح تشغيل – تَبَدُّل/تَغَيُّر	
share يشارك – ينشر - يتقاسم	share نصيب – مشاركة sharing المشاركة - التقاسم	

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama .... her bedroom with her sister.
   a. share b. shares c. sharing d. b & c
2. .... your personal data on social media is a risk.
   a. Share b. Shares c. Sharing d. b & c
3. Egypt's .... of the Nile water is about 55 billion cubic metres.
   a. share b. shares c. sharing d. b & c
4. A professional .... will be sent to the main building and connect the air conditioner.
   a. install b. installation c. instalment d. installer
5. The .... of the air conditioner will be done by a professional technician.
   a. install b. installation c. instalment d. installer
6. A professional technician will be sent to .... the air conditioner.
   a. install b. installation c. instalment d. installer
7. They can't hear you because your microphone is ....
   a. mutable b. mute c. switched d. turned
8. They can't hear you because your microphone is .... off.
   a. mutable b. mute c. switched d. a & b



5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

all the time	طوال الوقت/باستمرار	labour market	سوق العمل
appear to be	يبدو كأنه	long delay	تأخير لوقت طويل
at least	على الأقل	much too loud	بصوت عالي جداً
be on a call	مشغول في مُكالمة	none at all	لا شيء على الإطلاق
be still in	لا يزال في	out of time	لا وقت لديه
be still on	لا يزال يعمل/ لا يزال متصلاً	positive consequences	نتائج إيجابية
be suited to	مُناسب لـ	rather than	بدلاً من / فضلاً عن
by accident	بالصدفة/دون قصد	recent changes	التغيرات الأخيرة
free time	وقت فراغ	stressful situations	المواقف العصيبة
from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا	student welfare officer	مسئول رعاية الطلاب
human beings	البشر	technical problems	مشاكل فنية (تقنية)
human contact	التواصل البشري	thanks for	شكراً على
in other spaces	في أماكن أخرى	the latest version of	أحدث نسخة من
in touch with	على اتصال بـ	the way I see it	من وجهة نظرى
instant messaging	الرسائل الفورية	video conference call	مكالمة جماعية عبر الفيديو
interpersonal skill	مهارة التعامل مع الآخرين	virtual meeting with	اجتماع افتراضي مع
		working from home	العمل من المنزل
IT Support Forum	مُنتدى الدعم الفني لتكنولوجيا المعلومات	working hours	ساعات العمل
		Yours faithfully	المُخلص لك

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

appear to	يبدو أن	give up	يتخلى عن
apply for	يتقدم بطلب من أجل	keep/stay in touch (with)	يبقى على تواصل مع
carry on with	يستمر في		يدرس/يناقش
catch up (with)	يلحق بـ - يواكب	look at	
deal with	يتعامل مع	speak/talk to	يتحدث إلى/مع

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• ✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Ashraf can't meet you now as he is .... a conference call.

a. in b. on c. of d. by

2. A doctor who appears .... calm helps his/her patients relax.
   a. to be b. be c. being d. to being
3. He is well-suited .... this task. He knows enough about fixing machines.
   a. for b. to c. on d. with
4. I have applied .... a job as a teacher in Oman.
   a. to b. for c. with d. in
5. I've known about your arrival .... accident.
   a. in b. at c. by d. with
6. If you have any objection, just talk .... me.
   a. about b. for c. of d. to
7. It is the too much work that has put you in such a .... situation.
   a. stressful b. virtual c. conference d. human
8. You can end a letter of application with '............ faithfully'.
   a. You b. you c. Yours d. yours
9. I am still .... touch with my friends who have travelled abroad.
   a. to b. in c. off d. by

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

by accident - on purpose

• **by accident = by chance = by luck** بالصدفة/ دون قصد
- I met some old friends in the club by accident.

• **on purpose = deliberately** عن عمد/ متعمداً
- You will be punished for breaking the rules on purpose.

install - fix

• **install** يركب جهاز (يُعدّه للتشغيل)
- A technician came to install the washing machine.

• **install** يُثبّت برنامج أو تطبيق (على الكمبيوتر أو الهواتف الذكية)
- I couldn't open this file until I had installed a suitable application.

• **fix** يُثبّت (شيء في مكان)
- I used a screw مفك to fix the handle مقبض of the door.

• **fix** يُصلح (شيء به خلل)
- My father helped me fix my bike.

college - colleague

• **college** كلية - مدرسة عليا
- He studied law in a college in Paris.

• **colleague** زميل عمل - رفيق
- He has good relations with all his colleagues.

message - messaging

• **message** رسالة (اسم معدود)
- I received a message from Mr Helmi.

• **message** درس مستفاد (اسم معدود)
- The message of this film is "Crime does not pay".

• **messaging** التراسل/المراسلة (اسم غير معدود)
- Instant messaging has become possible, thanks to modern technology.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What makes me angry is that he broke my glasses .... He meant it.
   a. on purpose b. deliberately c. a & b d. by chance
2. He met them .... It wasn't arranged.
   a. by accident b. deliberately c. by chance d. a & c
3. .... is provided by different digital applications.
   a. Messages b. Messaging c. Message d. Massage
4. .... are sent and received instantly online.
   a. Messages b. Messaging c. Message d. Massage
5. I studied languages in this ....
   a. colleague b. college c. calling d. catalogue
6. I am grateful to my .... in my new job. They welcomed me warmly.
   a. colleagues b. colleges c. callings d. catalogues

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات الرئيسية

install

- **install (v)** يُركّب - يُثبّت (جهاز/قطعة)
  - Most shops now install security cameras.
- **install (v)** يُثبّت/يُنصّب (برنامج/ تطبيق)
  - Don't install applications from untrusted sites.
- **install (v)** يُنصّب (يضع شخص في منصب هام غالباً باحتفال)
  - Queen Elizabeth II was installed as Queen of England in 1952.
- **installation (n)** تثبيت/تنصيب
  - We spent a lot of money on the installation of a security system.
- **instalment/installment (n)** التقسيط (الدفع على مراحل)
  - Most new flats are sold by installment.

mute

- **mute (adj) صامت = silent**
  - He should have told the truth; I don't know why he remained mute.
- **muted (adj)** مُنخفض أو هادئ الصوت
  - They were talking in muted voices.
- **muted (adj)** هادئ أو باهت اللون
  - She was dressed in a muted green blouse.
- **mute (v)** يُخفض أو يكتم الصوت
  - Try to mute the loudspeaker when you see someone making a phone call.

switch

- **switch (to/between) (v)** يتبدل - يتحول - يُغيّر (إلى)
  - Mr Abdulrahman worked in tourism before he switched to teaching.
  - Mr Mohammed switches between teaching and running his own business

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- switch sides يتغير انتمائه - switch attention يُحوّل انتباهه إلي
- switch off يُغلق جهاز/ يطفئ – يأخذ استراحة
- switch on يُشغّل جهاز
- switch over يتحول – يُغيّر قناة تليفزيونية

• **switch (n)** مفتاح - تَبدُّل / تحوُّل
- Use this switch to operate the machine. (مفتاح)

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary ◄ تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you don't have all the money, you can pay by ....
   a. instalment b. installation c. installment d. a & c
2. Some people regard silence as a/an .... agreement.
   a. switched b. muted c. installed d. public
3. When was President Sadat .... as President of Egypt?
   a. switched b. muted c. installed d. shared
4. He used to support Manchester City, but now he has .... sides and started to support Liverpool.
   a. switched b. shared c. installed d. muted
5. Feeling exhausted, I decided to .... by watching highlights of matches online.
   a. turn on b. switch on c. switch off d. turn off

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	التعبير (by instalment/installment) يعني (بالتقسيط).
2.	b	التعبير (muted agreement) يعني (موافقة ضمنية).
3.	c	الفعل (install) هنا يعني (يُعيِّن في مَنصِب).
4.	a	التعبير (switch sides) يعني (يغير انتمائه).
5.	c	الفعل الاصطلاحي (switch off) هنا يعني (يأخذ استراحة).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

(SB page 52)

Carla : Hi, can you help us?

IT [1] Support [2]: Yes, sure. Can you tell me what the problem is?

Carla : Sure. We wanted to have a virtual [3] meeting [4] with a group of students in Egypt for a project [5]. We installed [6] the software [7] for the meeting and that was fine. Everyone joined [8] the meeting. We turned our microphones on and switched our cameras on. We could hear and see everyone without any problems for the first five minutes.

IT Support : OK and what happened then?

Carla : Then, I shared [9] my screen and everything stopped working.

IT Support : So the other students couldn't hear or see you and you couldn't see or hear them either [10] ?

Carla : That's right. We were talking to them, but they stopped responding [11]. It was clear that they couldn't hear us. We turned our sound up, but it seems [12] that they still couldn't hear anything we said or see us. We can only see the document [13] I wanted to show them now.

IT Support : Did you mute [14] your microphone?

Carla : No, I didn't touch my microphone. It was still on.

IT Support : Did you check [15] your internet connection?

Carla : Yes, I did. The internet connection is fine.

IT Support : That's strange [16]. Are you definitely still in the meeting? Could it be that you left the meeting and you didn't realise [17] it?

Check Vocabulary

(1) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
(2) موظف دعم
(3) افتراضي
(4) اجتماع/لقاء
(5) دراسة/بحث
(6) يُثبت/يُنصّب
(7) برنامج
(8) ينضم إلي
(9) يُشارك
(10) أيضاً
(11) يستجيب
(12) يبدو
(13) وثيقة
(14) يكتم/يُصمت
(15) يتحقق من
(16) غريب
(17) يُدرك/يستوعب

Carla : I'll check. Oh, you're right. I closed the meeting by accident [18] ! Sorry.

IT Support : Don't worry. It happens 🙂 Maybe you can look into [19] other ways of staying in touch with [20] the students during your meetings if there are technical [21] problems, like email or instant messaging [22] .

Carla : Yeah, good idea. Thanks for your help. I'll go and email the students.

(18)	بالصدفة/عن غير قصد
(19)	يبحث عن
(20)	على اتصال بـ
(21)	تقني/فني
(22)	الرسائل الفورية

IT Support Forum

(WB page 32)

Nevine : I've bought some new headphones [1] and have plugged [2] them in but now I can't mute my microphone [3] and everyone can hear me all the time.



Hana : I'm having problems with a video conference call . [4] I can't hear anything when people are talking to me. I have just downloaded [5] and installed the latest version [6] of the software but nothing is happening. I have tried turning off [7] the computer and turning it on [8] again. Any other ideas?

Mazin : I need to show someone what is on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to switch [9] my screen.

Ziad : There is a long delay [10] when I'm playing games online and I can never keep up with [11] my friends. I always lose [12] the races [13] in the games. Do I need to look into [14] getting a better internet connection [15] ?

Malak : When I join a meeting online, I can't switch on [16] my camera. So people can hear me, but they can't see me!

Check Vocabulary

(1)	سماعات الرأس
(2)	يوصّل (بالكهرباء/ بجهاز)
(3)	الميكروفون
(4)	مُكالمة جماعية
(5)	يُنزّل - يُحمّل
(6)	نُسخة/إصدار
(7)	يُطفئ
(8)	يُشغّل
(9)	يُبدّل
(10)	تأخير
(11)	يواكب/يساير
(12)	يخسر
(13)	السباق
(14)	يُحقق في - يناقش
(15)	إتصال
(16)	يُشغّل

A letter for a job application[1]

(WB page 33)

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing this letter to apply for[2] the position[3] of student welfare officer.[4]

I believe that I am suited to[5] the role[6] because I enjoy helping people feel more positive. At school, I have learnt to deal with[7] stressful situations. I like using my weekends and evenings to help other students. I always appear to[8] be calm[9] which helps the person I am speaking to.

I am very excited by this role and I hope you decide to offer[10] me the position.

I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours faithfully[11],

Mariam

Check Vocabulary
(1) طلب تقديم وظيفة
(2) يتقدم بطلب
(3) وظيفة
(4) مسئول رعاية الطلاب
(5) مُناسب لـ
(6) دور
(7) يتعامل مع
(8) يبدو أن
(9) هادئ
(10) يمنح/يعرض
(11) المُخلص لك

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 54)



Salma : Hello and welcome to my podcast[1] where we look at[2] the world of work and the future. I'm joined now by Mina Mahmoud who looks at future trends[3] in the workplace[4]. Welcome Mina.

Mina : Thank you, Salma.

Salma : So, what do you think is the most important future trend in work we need to know about?

Mina : I'd say the biggest change will be that companies will stop seeing work as something everyone does in the same place and at the same time. A lot of employees were already working from home in 2020 and 2021. Employees will carry on with[5] this and even more workers will join them. The research shows that home workers are very efficient[6] and working from home is good for the environment. We also know that employees are more motivated[7] if they decide their own schedule[8].

Check Vocabulary
(1) مُدوّنة صوتية
(2) يدرس/يناقش
(3) توجُه/نزعة
(4) مكان العمل
(5) يستمر في
(6) كفء
(7) يُحفز/يُشجع
(8) جَدول الأعمال

Salma : Does this mean that employees will have more control over other areas of their working lives ? Will more people start working on their own[9] rather than[10] in teams?

Mina : Yes. More companies who are already expecting their employees to work independently[11] will continue doing this and others will soon catch up[12]. Giving employees more responsibility[13] encourages them to work harder. They enjoy making more decisions on their own and deciding how they work.

Salma : Do you think that employees will use technology to help them work more efficiently?

Mina : I think we'll definitely[14] stop sending emails in the next ten or twenty years and use other ways of communicating.

Salma : Why?

Mina : The research suggests people think virtual[15] meetings are a more effective[16] way of solving problems and brainstorming[17] ideas than sending and reading emails. So, these ways of communicating are likely to become more popular[18] and emails will become less popular.

Salma : That seems to be logical[19], I'll definitely remember to invite our team to a virtual meeting instead of sending them a hundred emails from now on[20] !

(9) بمفردهم
(10) بدلاً من/فضلاً عن
(11) باستقلالية
(12) يلحق
(13) مسئولية
(14) من المؤكد
(15) افتراضي
(16) فعّال/مؤثر
(17) العصف الذهني
(18) شائع
(19) منطقي
(20) من الآن فصاعداً

(WB page 33)

Check Vocabulary

(1) سوق العمل
(2) ضيف
(3) حالي
(4) عرض
(5) ملاك/أصحاب
(6) يستنتج
(7) الذكاء الإصطناعي
(8) ملحوظ/كبير
(9) أثر

Presenter: Welcome to 'The Working World' where we are discussing the future of the labour market[1]. Our guests[2] today are Thomas Edwards and Omar Hamed.

Guests : Thank you

Presenter: Let's start with you, Omar. You have been studying the trends in the workplace for many years now. What do you want to tell young people about the future of work?

Omar : Well, after analysing current[3] job offers[4] and interviewing business owners[5], we concluded[6] that Artificial Intelligence[7] will have a significant[8] impact[9] on the type of jobs in the future.

Presenter: Now, Thomas, I think you feel quite strongly about Artificial Intelligence.

Thomas : Yes, I do. Artificial Intelligence, or 'AI' as we call it, promises to destroy jobs. One study found that 82% of areas in Europe and North America experienced[10] a decrease[11] in jobs as a result of[12] using AI.

Omar : Yes, but although this study appeared to show a decline[13] in jobs, it failed to tell us there was an increase of 60% in jobs in areas where AI could not be used. Plus[14], an earlier study tells us that only 5% of jobs can be completely substituted[15] by machines.

Presenter: So, what jobs will be less affected by AI?

Omar : It is clear that jobs that need to use interpersonal[16] skills are a lot safer from being substituted by AI.

Presenter: You both seem to be suggesting that the job market appears to be[17] changing. Should we risk[18] using AI if it is going to cause so many problems?

Thomas : Change has always happened and always will. Most of our ancestors[19] used to work in agriculture[20] but machines reduced the demand[21] for farmers but increased the need for computer programmers[22].

Presenter: What new jobs are expected to be common[23] in the future?

Omar : Well, teaching jobs appear to be an area that will be less affected by AI and technology in general[24], as well as[25] jobs in medicine, so nurses and doctors.

Presenter: Nurses and doctors? Why is that?

Thomas : Well, the population[26] of the world is getting older and as more people live longer, they will need more health care[27].

Presenter: Ah. That makes sense[28] ! What impact would this have?

Omar : Well, it is expected that by 2030, an average[29] of 600 million people worldwide[30] will have to change careers[31] or learn new skills.

(10) يواجه
(11) انخفاض
(12) كنتيجة لـ
(13) انخفاض
(14) بالإضافة إلى ذلك
(15) يستبدل
(16) شخصي/بشري
(17) يبدو كأنه
(18) يجازف/يخاطر
(19) أجداد/أسلاف
(20) الزراعة
(21) الطلب
(22) مُبرمج
(23) شائع/منتشر
(24) بصفة عامة
(25) بالإضافة إلى
(26) السكان
(27) الرعاية الصحية
(28) ذو مغزى
(29) متوسط
(30) في كل أنحاء العالم
(31) مهنة

Presenter: Interesting .... And what are some of these new skills Thomas?

Thomas : They need to learn about new technology and speak different languages. With the internet we are working much more globally[32] now, and we need to speak to people all over the world. I would consider studying English to a very high level and perhaps another language too.

(32) على مستوى عالمي
(33) لا وقت لديه
(34) يتخلى عن
(35) في هذه النقطة
(36) التكيُّف/التطور
(37) أكثر أهمية عن ذي قبل

Presenter: OK, we're almost out of time[33]. Can you give our listeners one last piece of advice, Omar?

Omar : First of all, my advice would be not to worry. If you are at school now, do not give up[34] the idea of your dream job. But remember you may need to learn a few new things to do that job in the future.

Presenter: Thank you. And how about you Thomas?

Thomas : Although I don't often agree with Omar, I do on this point[35]. Adapting[36] is the key, and you have to continue learning new things. This is more important now than ever[37].

Presenter: Well, thank you both very much for sharing your advice and giving us all a better idea of the world of work in the future.

3 Video Script

(SB page 55)

For decades[1] now, there has been a fear that humans will be replaced by robots in the workplace. But is this something we really need to worry about?

Check Vocabulary

(1) عقود (١٠ سنوات)
(2) متكرر
(3) يمكن التنبؤ به
(4) نموذجي
(5) مُحصّل
(6) بشكل متزايد
(7) الخدمة الذاتية

The trend over the last few decades has been for repetitive[2], predictable[3] work to be replaced by technology. A typical[4] example of this is supermarket check-out[5] assistants.

Supermarket workers are increasingly[6] being replaced by self-service[7] check-outs. Most supermarkets do still have more traditional

check-outs with a human assistant as well[8]. But the job of supermarket check-out assistant could soon completely disappear[9].

Developments[10] in technology don't always mean that humans lose jobs though – they can create jobs, too. Let's look at two examples. The internet gives us access to[11] an enormous amount of information, but we still need humans to check how reliable[12] this data is and analyse[13] it. That's what a data scientist does.

The internet has also given rise to[14] a wide range[15] of online learning courses[16]. To be effective, these courses need to be designed in a user-friendly[17] way. This is where a user-experience designer is needed. These jobs didn't exist[18] before the advent[19] of the internet, and we will probably see many more new types of jobs emerge[20] in the next few decades.

So, it seems that there are two sides to the debate[21] and the question remains[22]: will human workers be completely replaced by technology? Or will human jobs simply change?

(8) أيضاً
(9) يختفي
(10) التطور
(11) يُمكّننا من الوصول لـ
(12) موثوق به
(13) يُحلّل
(14) يؤدي إلى
(15) سلسلة/مجال
(16) كورسات تعليمية
(17) سهل الاستخدام
(18) يُوجَد
(19) مجيء/ظهور
(20) يظهر/يبرز
(21) مناظرة/نقاش
(22) يبقى

Part IV Language

تنويه تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية على دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Phrasal Verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

What is a phrasal verb ? ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحي ؟

A phrasal verb is a group of words that consist of a verb and one or two prepositions. When these words are used together, they create a new verb with a different meaning.

الفعل الاصطلاحي هو مجموعة من الكلمات تتكون من فعل وحرف جر واحد أو اثنين وعندما يتم استخدام هذه الكلمات معًا فإنها تُكوّن فعلًا جديدًا بمعنى مختلف —لاحظ الأمثلة التالية مع الفعل (look):

1. I looked at the screen of my tablet.

- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (look) بأحد معانيه الأصلية (ينظر)، ولم يُؤثّر حرف الجر (at) على معناه، فهو هنا لا يُعتبَر فعلاً اصطلاحيا.

check-outs with a human assistant as well[8]. But the job of supermarket check-out assistant could soon completely disappear[9].

Developments[10] in technology don't always mean that humans lose jobs though – they can create jobs, too. Let's look at two examples. The internet gives us access to[11] an enormous amount of information, but we still need humans to check how reliable[12] this data is and analyse[13] it. That's what a data scientist does.

The internet has also given rise to[14] a wide range[15] of online learning courses[16]. To be effective, these courses need to be designed in a user-friendly[17] way. This is where a user-experience designer is needed. These jobs didn't exist[18] before the advent[19] of the internet, and we will probably see many more new types of jobs emerge[20] in the next few decades.

So, it seems that there are two sides to the debate[21] and the question remains[22]: will human workers be completely replaced by technology? Or will human jobs simply change?

أيضاً (8)
يختفي (9)
التطور (10)
يُمكّننا من الوصول لـ (11)
موثوق به (12)
يُحلّل (13)
يزيد من (14)
سلسلة/مجال (15)
كورسات تعليمية (16)
سهل الإستخدام (17)
يُوجَد (18)
مَجئ/ظهور (19)
يظهر/يَبرُز (20)
مناظرة/نقاش (21)
يبقي (22)

Part IV Language

تنويه تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Phrasal Verbs الافعال الاصطلاحية

What is a phrasal verb ? ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحي ؟

A phrasal verb is a group of words that consist of a verb and one or two prepositions. When these words are used together, they create a new verb with a different meaning.

الفعل الاصطلاحي هو مجموعة من الكلمات تتكون من فعل وحرف جر واحد أو اثنين وعندما يتم استخدام هذه الكلمات معًا فإنها تُكوّن فعلًا جديدًا بمعنى مختلف — لاحظ الأمثلة التالية مع الفعل (look):

1. I looked at the screen of my tablet.

- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (look) بأحد معانيه الأصلية (ينظر)، ولم يُؤثّر حرف الجر (at) على معناه، فهو هنا لا يُعتبَر فعلاً اصطلاحيا.

2 Rodayna looks happy.
- في المثال السابق تم استخدام الفعل (look) بأحد معانيه الأصلية (يبدو)، فهو هنا لا يُعتبَر فعلاً اصطلاحيا.

3 I looked after my sister while mum was out.
- في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look after) بمعنى (يعتني بـ)، وهو معني مُختلِف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحي.

4 He looks down on us because we are not as rich as him.
- في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look down on) بمعنى (يتعالى على/ينظر بتعالى)، وهو معني مُختلِف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحي.

5 I'm looking for my keys.
- في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look for) بمعنى (يبحث عن)، وهو معني مُختلِف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحي.

6 I look forward to hearing from you.
- في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look forward to) بمعني (يتطلع إلى)، وهو معني مُختلِف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل اصطلاحي.

7 I look up new word in my dictionary.
- في المثال السابق تم استخدام (look up) بمعنى (يبحث عن معلومة)، وهو معني مُختلِف عن معناه الأصلي، لهذا فهو فعل إصطلاحي.

What does a phrasal verb consist of ? مما يتكون الفعل الاصطلاحي ؟

A phrasal verb consists of a verb and one or two prepositions or adverbs.
يتكون الفعل الاصطلاحي من فعل وبعده حرف جر أو اثنين أو ظرف أو اثنين:

- **... verb فعل + preposition حرف جر**
  - I found out why Sama was very angry. (اكتشفت)
- **... verb فعل + preposition حرف جر + preposition حرف جر**
  - I don't want anyone to find out about this secret. (يعرف عن)
- **... verb فعل + adverb ظرف**
  - I picked up my keys and went out. (تناولت)
  - = I picked my keys up and went out.
- **... verb فعل + adverb ظرف + preposition حرف جر**
  - I look forward to my first day in my new clinic. (يتطلّع إلى)

What is a transitive phrasal verb ? ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحي المتعدي ؟

A transitive phrasal verb takes an object.

الفعل الاصطلاحي المُتعدي يأخذ مفعولاً مثل:

- A famous surgeon carried out the operation (أجري/قام بـ) .
= A famous surgeon carried the operation out.

Where is the object of a phrasal verb located?

أين يُوضع مفعول الفعل الاصطلاحي؟
يتم تحديد مكان مفعول الفعل الاصطلاحي حسب القواعد التالية:

1. إذا كان المفعول اسم فإنه عادة يوضع بعد الفعل الاصطلاحي بالكامل (أي بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف):
- I am looking my keys for. (✗)
- I am looking for my keys. (✓)
- He wants to catch with his friends up. (✗)
- He wants to catch up with his friends. (✓)

- لكن في بعض الحالات يُمكِن وضع الاسم قبل أو بعد حرف الجر :
- Can you turn the sound up? (✓)
= Can you turn up the sound? (✓)
- Salma plugged the speaker in. (✓)
= Salma plugged in the speaker. (✓)

2. إذا كان المفعول ضمير فإنه في الغالب يوضع بعد الفعل الاصطلاحي بالكامل (أي بعد حرف الجر أو الظرف):
- Where are my keys. I am looking them for. (✗)
- Where are my keys. I am looking for them. (✓)

– لكن في بعض الحالات يوضع الضمير بعد الفعل وحرف الجر أو الظرف، وغالباً يحدث ذلك مع حروف الجر والظروف القصيرة مثل (up/down/in/out/on/off):
- The jacket is making me hot. I will take off it. (✗)
= The jacket is making me hot. I will take it off. (✓)
- The fan is off. I asked Sama to switch on it. (✗)
= I asked Sama to switch it on. (✓)

الجدول التالي يحتوى على أهم الأفعال الاصطلاحية المتعدية التي سبق دراستها :

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Translation
back up	to support	يدعم – يحتفظ بنسخة احتياطية
blow up	to make an image larger	يُكبِّر الصورة
break down	to hit it so hard that it breaks and falls to the ground	يُحطِّم – يهدم

break into	to enter a building by using force, in order to steal something	يقتحم
breathe in	to inhale	يستنشق
breathe out	to exhale	يزفر
bring back	to return	يُعيد
bring up	to raise	يُربي
call up	to telephone	يتصل به
calm down	to make someone become quiet and relaxed	يُهدئ
catch up with	to improve and reach the same standard as	يلحق به
clean up	to tidy	يُرتب
fill in / out	to complete	يُكمل
fill up	to make full	يملأ
find out (about)	to get information, after trying to discover it or by chance	يكتشف/يعرف(عن)
give back	to return	يُعيد
give off	to send out / to produce smell, light, heat, a sound, etc.	يُخرج – تنبعث منه
give up	to stop doing something, especially something that you do regularly	يتوقف عن – يُقلع عن
go on	to continue doing something or being in a situation	يستمر في
hand in	to give something to the person in authority	يُسلم شيء إلى
hand on	to give to another person	يُناول
hang up	to finish a telephone conversation	ينهي حديث تليفوني
hold back	to restrain, delay	يعيق – يؤخر
knock out	to make unconscious	يُفقد ... الوعي
lay off	to put out of work	يفصل – يطرد
leave ... on/ off	to keep a machine working/not working	يترك (جهاز) مفتوح/مُغلق
leave behind	to leave, not bring	يترك ... وراءه – يُغادر بدون

leave out	to omit	يحذف - يستبعد
let down	to disappoint	يُحبط - يخذل
look into	to investigate	يُحقق في - يتحقق من
look up	to find (information)	يبحث عن (معلومة) في مصدر
make up	to invent	يخترع
pick up	to collect	يُحضر - يتناول
plug in	to connect a piece of electrical equipment to the main supply of electricity, or to another piece of electrical equipment	يُوصّل ... بالكهرباء أو بجهاز
point out	to draw attention to	يلفت الانتباه لـ - يشير إلى
pull down	to demolish	يهدم
put away	to put in proper place	يضع ... في مكانه
put back	to return to original location	يُعيد ... إلى مكانه
put off	to postpone	يؤجّل
rub out	to erase	يمسح
run out of	to use all of something and not have any more left	يستنفد - يستهلك كل
sum up	summarize	يُلخّص
switch/turn down	to make (sound) lower	يُخفّض (الصوت)
switch/turn off	to deactivate by using a switch	يوقف - يُطفئ
take in	to absorb	يمتص - يستنشق
take off	to remove a piece of clothing	يخلع ملابس - ينزع
take out	to invite to a restaurant	يُخرج - يعزم ... بالخارج
take over	to assume control	يتولى المسئولية عن
talk over	discuss	يناقش
tear up	destroy by tearing	يُمزّق
think over	to consider	يُفكر في
try on	to test clothes by putting them on	يُجرّب ملابس
try out	to test by using	يُجرّب استخدام
turn on	to activate by using a switch	يُشغّل
turn up	to make (sound) louder	يرفع (الصوت)

use up	to use all of something	يستنفد – يستهلك كل شئ
wear out	to gradually destroy by wearing or using	يبلي – يتهالك من كثرة الاستخدام
work out	to calculate an answer, amount, price etc	يحسب – يحل
work out	(of a problem) to gradually get better or get solved	تنفرج الأمور – يتم حل المشكلة
write down	to make a note	يدون ملاحظة – يُسجّل كتابياً

What is an intransitive phrasal verb? ما هو الفعل الاصطلاحي اللازم ؟

An intransitive phrasal verb doesn't take an object.

- الفعل الاصطلاحي اللازم لا يأخذ مفعول، مثل:

- We hope prices will fall off. (تنخفض)
- Watch out! You are going to drop the vase. (انتبه)

- بعض الأفعال الاصطلاحية تكون لازمة بمعنى ومُتعدية بمعنى آخر — لاحظ مثلاً كيفية استخدام الفعل (take off) في الأمثلة التالية:

- The plane took off at 16:20. (أقلعت الطائرة – فعل لازم)
- I took off my coat. (خلعت المعطف – فعل متعدي)

الجدول التالي يحتوي على أهم الأفعال الاصطلاحية اللازمة التي سبق دراستها :

Phrasal Verb	Meaning	Translation
break in	to enter a building by using force, in order to steal something	يقتحم – يسطو
break down	to fail or stop working in a successful way	يتعطل
calm down	to become quiet and relaxed after being angry, excited	يهدأ
catch up	to improve and reach the same standard as	يلحق – يُدرك
fall off	to become less	ينخفض
get away	to escape	يهْرُب
give in	to admit defeat	يستسلم – يرضخ
go on	to continue	يستمر في
give up	to stop trying to do something	يتوقف عن محاولة القيام بشئ

grow up	to become an adult	يكبر/ينضج
log on	to connect (a computer / the internet)	يُسجِّل دخول على (حاسب آلي/ الإنترنت)
log off / out	to stop using a computer system by giving it particular instructions	يُسجِّل خروج من (حاسب آلي/ الإنترنت)
look forward to	to be excited and pleased about something that is going to happen	يتطلع إلي
move in	to start living in a new home	يُعزِّل
move out	to leave the house where you are living now to live somewhere else	ينتقل/يُغادِر
run out	if something is running out, there will soon be none left	ينفد - ينتهي
set off	to leave	يُغادِر/ينطلق
settle down	to become peaceful	يستقر
settle in	to become used to	يعتاد علي
show up	to arrive	يصل
stay up	to not go to bed at normal times	يسهر
step down	to resign	يستقيل - يتنحى
take off	to leave the ground	تُقلع الطائرة
turn up	to arrive at a place	يصل -يظهر
watch out	to beware / to be careful	ينتبه/يَحذَر
wear off	to gradually disappear	يتلاشى

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. I usually turn .... my computer when I leave the office. *(LM)*
   a. on b. of c. off d. in
2. If you neglect your work, it will be difficult to catch .... *(LM)*
   a. down b. out c. up with d. up

3. Please, turn the sound .... I can't hear you clearly. (LM)
a. up b. on c. off d. over

4. Don't give .... your dreams. One day you will achieve them. (LM)
a. over b. up c. at d. of

5. I didn't go out since I had to spend the weekend catching .... the lessons I had missed. (LM)
a. with b. up c. for d. up with

6. We should find ways of staying in .... with each other. For the time being, I think emails will be fine. (LM)
a. isolation b. separation c. touch d. catch

7. I asked my sister to look .... the baby for me.
a. up b. after c. for d. like

8. **A:** Who has taken your mobile? **B:** I haven't .... yet.
a. caught up b. caught up with
c. found out d. found out about

9. **A:** Who has taken your mobile? **B:** I haven't .... it yet.
a. caught up b. caught up with
c. found out d. found out about

10. The technical team is going to look .... other ways of sharing documents online.
a. down b. into c. on d. off

11. We have .... all the roses in the garden. There isn't any left.
a. used up b. warmed up c. set up d. worked out

12. To stay .... means not to go to bed at the normal time.
a. in b. at c. up d. down

13. I typed and sent the email and soon logged ....
a. in b. on c. at d. off

14. My car broke .... and I had to take a taxi.
a. down b. up c. out d. into

15. You are right to .... a longer break between work hours.
a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for

16. Please, turn .... the TV while I am on the phone.
a. on b. of c. down d. up

17. Don't get nervous. Calm ...., please.
a. down b. back c. off d. with

18. I set .... my trip at around seven.

a. to b. up c. of d. off

19. You don't have to turn your tablet on if you don't want to. Leave it ....

a. down b. into c. on d. off

20. I had to .... the power cable to recharge the battery.

a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for

21. I had to .... the call as there's someone at the door.

a. give up b. hang up c. hand in d. blow up

22. Would you pay your friend .... the money you owe to him, please?

a. up b. back c. again d. down

23. Everything finally .... and I was over the moon.

a. took off b. turned up c. went on d. worked out

2 Special Cases

24. I asked Rodayna to turn the sound of the TV............ , but then it was much too loud.

a. down b. up c. on d. off

25. The air hostess asked us to fasten our seat belts; the plane was about to take ....

a. over b. up c. out d. off

26. I asked the petrol station attendant to .... the tank with petrol.

a. fill in b. fill up c. fall off d. fall away

27. I .... the documents to the manager in person.

a. gave up b. hung up c. handed in d. blew up

28. I found some money in the street and I am going to .... to the police.

a. hand it in b. hand in it c. turn it on d. turn on it

29. To set off means to ....

a. arrive b. leave c. finish d. cook

30. "I have already installed the software". We can use .... instead of 'installed' in this sentence.

a. sit back b. sit down c. set off d. set up

31. The baby has dropped its toy. I'll ....

a. pick up it b. pick it up c. it pick up d. it picked up

32. We'd only waited a little when he turned ....

a. up b. in c. into d. down

33. I was shocked because I didn't expect him to turn .... my request.
a. up b. in c. into d. down

34. This photo is small; it needs ....
a. giving up b. hanging up c. handing in d. blowing up

35. Nabil hurt his elbow in yesterday's tennis match and had to ....
a. pay back b. plug in c. give in d. ask for

36. I had to .... the application form with my personal data.
a. fill in b. fill up c. fall off d. put away

37. The sugar I had at home ran............ and I had to go out at midnight to buy some.
a. out of b. out c. with d. down

38 . I ran............ sugar and I had to go out at midnight to buy some.
a. out of b. out c. with d. down

39. I have invited all my friends to the party, but only a few of them showed ....
a. on b. off c. up d. down

3 Check your understanding

40. A phrasal verb consists of ....
a. two verbs and a preposition
b. a verb followed by one or two prepositions.
c. a transitive verb, an object and a preposition.
d. none of the above.

41. 'Look forward to' is a/an ....
a. phrasal verb b. modal verb
c. adverbial clause d. verbal collocation

42. The phrasal verb 'grow up' meaning 'to become an adult' is a/an .... phrasal verb.
a. modal b. passive c. transitive d. intransitive

43. Where is the object of an intransitive phrasal verb located?
a. After the preposition. b. before the preposition.
c. a & b d. It doesn't take an object.

44. When you want to stop a call for a short time and resume it shortly after, you ....
a. hang up b. switch off c. turn off d. put away

45. We use .... verbs or pronouns after a verb to form a phrasal verb.
a. one b. two c. no d. any

46. Which of the following is NOT correct?
a. The match ended when one of the two players gave in to the other.
b. The match ended when one of the two players gave in.
c. The match ended when one of the two players gave to the other in.
d. a & b

47. Which of the following does not have a phrasal verb?
a. The charger is plugged in.
b. Omar looked at his sister.
c. My mobile is switched off.
d. I knew that my PC had been left on.

48. I am going to pick my uncle up from the airport. This means that I'm going to .... *(LM)*
a. say goodbye to my uncle at the airport.
b. take my uncle from home to the airport and see him off
c. meet my uncle at the airport and take him to another place
d. go to the airport and travel with my uncle.

4 Feedback Grammar

• راجع أفكارك مع معلمك.

49. Some people have problems while .... studying, and it might help to get up and move around. *(LM)*
a. they're b. he's c. she's d. we're

50. She lost .... hope and decided to give up. *(LM)*
a. no article b. a c. an d. the

51. My brother and I usually depend on .... to face everyday problems. *(Practice Ex. 4)*
a. myself b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself

LESSONS **3 & 4**

SB pages 56 - 57 WB pages 34 & 35



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه
- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

1 Important Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
apply(ied) (v)	يُطبِّق/يُنفِّذ	mind map(n)	خريطة ذهنية
arrow(n)	سَهْم	old-fashioned(adj)	عفا عليه الزمن/قديم
attach(ed) (v)	يُرفِق-يُرسِل كمُرفَق	option(n)	خيار/اختيار
background(n)	خلفية	order(ed) (v-n)	ينظم - يطلب - ترتيب/نظام - أمر
certain(adj)	مُعيَّن/مُحدَّد	prepare(d) (v)	يُعِد/يُجهِّز
chat(n)	دردشة	present(ed) (v)	يعرض/يُقدِّم
click(ed) (v/n)	ينقر – نقرة (علي الماوس)	presentation(n)	عرض تقديمي
concentrate(d) (v)	يُركِّز علي	record(ed) (v)	يُسجِّل
conclude(d) (v)	يختتم – يستنتج	reduce(d) (v)	يُقلِّل/يختصر
document(n)	وثيقة	right(adj)	علي حق/مُصيب
draw - drew - drawn(v)	يرسم	session(n)	جلسة
effective(adj)	مُؤثِّر/فعَّال	shocked(adj)	مصدوم
effectively(adv)	بفاعلية	similar(adj)	مُشابه
email(ed) (v)	يرسل بريد الكتروني	slide(n)	شريحة
essential(adj)	ضروري/جوهري	sound(ed) (v)	يبدو
explanation(n)	شرح/توضيح	specific(adj)	مُحدَّد
guess(ed) (v)	يُخمِّن	study(n)	استذكار/مذاكرة
highlight(ed) (v/n)	يُظلِّل/يُبرز- الجزء الهام/البارز	technique(n)	تقنية/أسلوب
identify(ied) (v)	يُحدِّد	tend(ed) (v)	يميل - يُفضِّل
image(n)	صورة	tips(n)	نصائح / إرشادات
link(n)	رابط	topic(n)	موضوع
mind(ed) (v)	يُمانع	wonder(ed) (v)	يتساءل

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My teacher has given us some study .... so we can improve our achievement. *(LM)*
   a. tops b. tapes c. tips d. types
2. I can't .... on hard work for more than five hours; I'm afraid of making mistakes. *(LM)*
   a. persist b. suggest c. concentrate d. penetrate
3. Use markers to .... the important parts of the text.
   a. attach b. present c. highlight d. tend
4. Click on this .... and you will be able to download all the books you need.
   a. session b. link c. technique d. explanation
5. Water is .... for all life forms.
   a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar
6. When you write an essay, you need to provide some .... information about the topic in the introduction.
   a. document b. presentation c. option d. background
7. The company started a/an .... advertising campaign .
   a. certained b. certainly c. effective d. effectively
8. Moataz .... to arrive late at the office. It is one of his worst habits.
   a. attaches b. presents c. highlights d. tends
9. All attendants liked the .... I made.
   a. document b. presentation c. option d. background
10. I divide my study hours into forty-minute ....
    a. sessions b. links c. techniques d. explanations
11. The sales assistant refused to .... the price.
    a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce
12. I was .... to hear that such a kind man had been murdered.
    a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar
13. I .... a copy of my qualifications to the CV.
    a. attached b. presented c. highlighted d. tended
14. It is important to .... the study plan that works.
    a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce
15. Spending the night in the lobby of the hotel is the only .... available.
    a. document b. presentation c. option d. background

16. Using mind maps is one of the best study ....
   a. sessions b. links c. techniques d. explanations
17. Now, most university students use their mobiles to .... lectures.
   a. click b. record c. draw d. switch
18. I make friends with people who have interests .... to mine.
   a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar
19. To be understood well, ... your ideas simply and in the correct order.
   a. spend b. present c. install d. tend
20. Good writers .... their essays effectively leaving readers with a challenge.
   a. concentrate b. identify c. conclude d. reduce
21. Do you want a/an .... hair-cut or you will let me decide?
   a. certain b. certainly c. effective d. effectively
22. I can't find a/an .... for his strange behaviour.
   a. session b. link c. technique d. explanation
23. Sending letters has become .... Emails are faster and safer.
   a. essential b. old-fashioned c. shocked d. similar

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

attach	a document يُرفق وثيقة – يرسل وثيقة كمرفق
bring	... together يُجمّع - يَضُمّ
create	a study system يبتكر نظام استذكار
discover	new ideas يكتشف أفكار جديدة
do	a session يقوم بجلسة
draw	mind maps يرسم خرائط ذهنية

highlight	important details يُظلل/يُبرز التفاصيل المهمة
make	a list of يُعد قائمة بـ
	a study plan يُعد خطة استذكار
	a summary of يُعدّ تلخيص لـ
	changes يُحدث تغييرات
	notes يُدوّن ملاحظات

feel	free to لا تتردد في أن	prepare	a presentation يُعِد عرض تقديمي
get	angry يَغضَب	put	in order يُرتِّب
	stressed يتوتر	share	documents يشارك/يعرض وثائق
give	a presentation يُقدِّم عرضاً	sound	like يبدو مثل
	an explanation يُقدِّم تفسيراً	take	a break يأخُذ استراحة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. How many study sessions have you .... ?
   a. put b. done c. made d. sounded
2. .... free to criticize me if I do anything wrong.
   a. Feel b. Make c. Give d. Take
3. Mind maps are good ways of .... information about the topics together.
   a. attaching b. bringing c. giving d. highlighting
4. He .... like an important man.
   a. puts b. does c. makes d. sounds
5. Don't get ...., Ahmed. We're joking.
   a. angry b. free c. attached d. highlighted
6. The explanation she has .... isn't persuasive.
   a. felt b. made c. given d. b & c
7. I was asked to .... the cards in order.
   a. put b. do c. create d. sound
8. I have .... two documents to the email.
   a. attached b. brought c. got d. highlighted
9. The break we .... renews our energy.
   a. feel b. make c. give d. take
10. The notes I .... help me remember.
    a. put b. do c. make d. sound
11. I used a yellow pen to .... the important parts of the lesson.
    a. attach b. bring c. get d. highlight

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
all the best	أرَقّ الأمنيات	in a different way	بطريقة مُختلفة
as well as you can	بأفضل ما تستطيع	in different colours	بألوان مختلفة
at the bottom	أسفل/تحت	learn differently	يتعلم بطريقة مختلفة
be on video calls	مشغول بمكالمة فيديو	let me explain	دعني أشرح لك
be sure about	مُتأكّد من	let me know	أخبرني
chat box	صندوق الدردشة	on the map	على الخريطة
creative solutions	حلول مُبتَكَرة	plus sign	علامة (+)
good at	جيد في	reply to	رد / يرد على
Hi there,	أهلاً	speak soon	رد سريعاً
in advance	مُقدّماً	study plan	خطة استذكار
in a different order	بترتيب مختلف	study system	نظام استذكار
talk to you soon!	أحدّثك قريباً		

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

Verb + Preposition	Meaning	Verb + Preposition	Meaning
click on	ينقر على	meet up with	يلتقي بـ
conclude with	يختتم بـ	present ... to	يُقدّم ... لـ
experiment with	يُجرّب - يُمارِس	reduce ... into	يختصر ... إلى
give up	يتوقف عن - يقلع عن	send ... to	يُرسل ... إلى
look for	يبحث عن	start by	يبدأ بـ
		tend to	يميل إلى أن

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I look forward to .... my old friends.
   a. meeting
   b. meeting up
   c. meeting up with
   d. a & c
2. Some building workers ought to be given their money .... advance.
   a. at
   b. off
   c. in
   d. of
3. Conclude your essay .... a good summary of the main points.
   a. with
   b. to
   c. from
   d. about

4. I reduced the novel .... three pages.
   a. off b. from c. of d. into
5. This type of birds tend .... build their nests in holes in mountains.
   a. for b. to c. from d. at
6. Let children experiment .... depending on themselves.
   a. with b. on c. as d. like
7. Leave your sister concentrate .... her study.
   a. after b. for c. on d. than
8. Do the job as .... as possible.
   a. bad b. long c. good d. well
9. Only losers give........... .
   a. off b. up c. down d. at
10. When you have finished, let me ....
   a. know b. knew c. knowing d. to know

Part III Reading

Reading Texts

Study Tips

(SB page 56)

TIP 1 : Make a study[1] plan before you start studying

Start by thinking what you need to learn. For example, if you need to study for a Maths exam, make a list[2] of all the topics[3] you need to know. Then, decide how much time you'll need to learn about each one. Finally, decide which topics are the most important and plan to spend more time on these.

TIP 2 : Draw[4] mind maps[5]

This is a creative [6] way of bringing information about a topic together in one place. You start by writing the topic in the centre[7] of the page and then draw lines from the centre. At the end of each line, you write a different part of the topic and make short notes about it. You could even use pictures instead of text in your mind map, too.

Check Vocabulary

(1) استذكار/مذاكرة
(2) قائمة
(3) موضوع
(4) يرسم
(5) خريطة ذهنية
(6) مبدع
(7) وسط

TIP 3 : Create[8] a study system with colours

For example, if you write the most important points about a topic on cards[9], you could use the same colour cards for similar[10] topics. This will help you to find information more quickly. You could also get some different coloured pens and highlight[11] different types of words (verbs, nouns, adjectives, etc.) in different colours.

(8) يبتكر
(9) بطاقة
(10) مُشابه
(11) يُظلل/يُميز

Studying on my Head (by Hamid Shazly)

(WB page 3

I was never very good at concentrating,[1] so my dad gave me a book called 'Study skills for you'. I discovered lots of new ideas.

The first message[2] in the book is that we all learn differently. So, the first thing I did was to learn how I best remember things. I tried[3] making a summary[4] of each unit of the schoolbook, then a summary of the summary until I reduced[5] the essential[6] information into a small mind map. Highlighting important details[7] in different colours helped me so much that I was even able to remember where on the map certain[8] information was.

History was my worst subject. So, while I was making my notes, I played the same song in the background[9]. When I went to sleep, I used to listen to the song again to make me think about the history notes. To avoid too much sitting on my desk, I got up every 20 minutes and walked around my room or went and studied in the park. I also recorded[10] my notes on my phone and listened to them while walking in the park.

So, I guess[11] you're wondering[12] whether all these experiments worked? Well, it certainly helped me discover how I remember things best and it made revising a lot more interesting. This meant I spent more time doing it. When I got my final results, I was shocked[13] but very happy to tell my dad that the highest mark I got was in History!

Check Vocabulary

(1) التركيز
(2) درس مُستفاد
(3) يحاول - يُجرب
(4) مُلخّص
(5) يُقلل/يختصر
(6) ضروري/جوهري
(7) تفاصيل
(8) مُعيّن/مُحدد
(9) خلفية
(10) يُسجّل
(11) يُخمن
(12) يتساءل
(13) مصدوم

(SB page 57)

To : Monica@mail.com
From : Iman@mail.com
Hi Monica,

Thank you for your email about virtual meetings. I understand how to join the meeting by clicking[1] on the link[2] in an email and turning my microphone and camera on and off, but I'm not sure about how to give a presentation[3] during a meeting.

It sounds[4] like you have to share your screen if you want to show other people a document[5] or PowerPoint slides[6], is that right? So, I need to join the meeting, share my screen and then stop sharing when I've finished showing the thing I wanted to show. Have I understood that correctly? If I haven't, feel free to[7] let me know how I should be doing it. Maybe we could have a quick call so you can talk to me through it.

Thanks very much in advance[8] for your help. I'm sure I' ll be able to give presentations in our meetings without any problems very soon.

Talk to you soon,
Iman

Check Vocabulary

(1) النقر
(2) رابط
(3) عَرض تقديمي
(4) يبدو
(5) وثيقة
(6) شريحة
(7) لا تتردد
(8) مُقدماً

(SB page 57)

Hi there,

You asked for some study tips and I have two good ones for you:

Try using the Pomodoro technique[1]. You concentrate[2] on your work for 25 minutes, then take a break[3], then do another session[4] for the same amount of time, then take another break. After a few of these, you take a longer break.

Try teaching another student something you find difficult to understand. Prepare[5] something before you meet up with them. Then explain it to your friend as well as you can[6].

Let me know how the studying goes.

Talk to you soon!

Check Vocabulary

(1) تقنية/أسلوب
(2) يُركِّز على
(3) استراحة
(4) جَلسة
(5) يُعدّ/يُجهِّز
(6) بأفضل ما تستطيع

(WB page 35)

Hi Eman,

Thanks so much for your help with sharing documents while in a virtual meeting. I think I have understood everything, but I'd just like to check.

I read your email carefully[1] and from your explanation[2] I understand that there are different ways to share documents. The first is to send each person an email with the document attached. That's a good idea but there are 25 people in my class, and I don't have all their email addresses.

The other option is to attach[3] the document in the chat[4] box. Am I right[5] in thinking that I have to click[6] on the clip icon to do this? After that I need to choose the option[7] which says 'everyone' and click on the arrow[8] to send it to everyone in the video call. Have I understood that correctly[9]?

Thanks again for all your wonderful advice which has been really helpful. If I have any more questions, do you mind[10] me emailing[11] you again for help?

All the best,

Heba

Check Vocabulary

(1) بحرص
(2) شرح/توضيح
(3) يُرفق/يُرسل كمُرفق
(4) دردشة
(5) على حق/مُصيب
(6) ينقر
(7) خيار/اختيار
(8) سَهم
(9) بشكل صحيح
(10) يُمانع
(11) يُرسل بريد إلكتروني

(WB page 35)

Hi there,

Adding a virtual background is great fun and quite easy to do when you know how. Let me explain.

First, look for[1] the arrow next to the camera icon at the bottom of the screen. Click on that and then click on 'settings'. Another window will open, and you have to find the option on the left that says 'video and image[2] backgrounds'. You have to click on that. If you don't have any images, you can add them by clicking on the plus sign[3] which you can find on the right. Choose the image you want and then click on 'apply'[4] and that's it!

I hope you have lots of fun but let me know if you have any questions.

Speak soon,

Basel

Check Vocabulary

(1) يبحث عن
(2) صورة
(3) علامة
(4) يُطبّق/يُنفذ

Part IV Language

"-ing" forms or the infinitive

1 Verb + (inf. + ing)

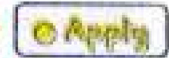
① الأفعال التالية يتبعها مصدر مضاف له (ing):

admit (to)	يعترف/يُقر به	finish	يُنهي
appreciate	يُقدر / يُثمّن	imagine	يتخيل
avoid	يتجنب	include	يشمل
consider	يفكر في	keep	يظل / يستمر في
delay	يؤجل	mind	يمانع
deny	ينكر	miss	يفوته
dislike	يكره	practise	يمارس
enjoy	يتمتع به	risk	يخاطر به
fancy	يتوهم - يتخيل	suggest	يقترح

- Karim admitted / denied borrowing my pen without asking me.
- The driver of the car avoided hitting the motorbike.
- He dislikes/ enjoys sleeping during the day.
- They're going home as soon as they've finished working.
- Samir and his brother practise playing tennis every day.
- My friend suggested going for a picnic on the beach.

② يمكن نفي الأفعال السابقة بإستخدام (not + inf. + ing) :

- He suggested not going to the club and helping mum instead.

Mini Test 1 

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama suggested .... fish for lunch as she likes it.
   a. to prepare b. preparing
   c. not to prepare d. not preparing
2. Rodayna suggested .... fish for lunch as she likes chicken.
   a. to prepare b. preparing
   c. not to prepare d. not preparing
3. I don't mind .... you with the shopping.
   a. helping b. not helping c. to help d. not to help

4. He admitted .... my tablet by mistake.
a. take b. to take c. taking d. to be taken

2 Verb + to + inf.

❶ الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.):

afford	يمكنه تحمُّل تكلفة أن	learn	يتعلم أن
agree	يوافق على أن	manage	يتمكن من
arrange	يرتب لـ	offer	يعرض أن
choose	يختار أن	plan	يخطط أن
decide	يقرر أن	pretend	يتظاهر أن
deserve	يستحق أن	promise	يعد أن
expect	يتوقع أن	seem	يبدو أن
fail	يفشل في أن	threaten	يهدد أن
help	يساعد في	try	يحاول أن
hope	يأمل أن	want	يريد أن
intend	ينوي أن	wish	يتمنى أن

- Everyone agreed / arranged / decided to meet at the airport.
- I expect / hope to finish my homework later this evening.
- I learned to swim when I was three years old.
- She offered / promised to help her mother prepare lunch.
- What do you plan / want to do in the summer?

❷ يمكن نفي الأفعال السابقة بإستخدام (not to + inf.):

- He intended not to go to the club with us.

Mini Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Leen agreed .... me use her tablet.
a. let b. to let c. letting d. to letting

2. Mohammed .... me to come first.
a. admitted b. deserved c. afforded d. expected

3. I decided .... them anymore. They are really bad company.
a. knowing b. to know c. not to know d. not knowing

4. He .... not to know me but I am sure we have worked together before.
a. pretends b. chooses c. learns d. threatens

Verb + [to + inf.] / [inf. + ing]

❶ الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.) أو (ing- form) دون وجود اختلاف في المعنى:

love	يحب	prefer	يفضل
hate	يكره	start / begin	يبدأ
like	يحب	continue	يستمر

- I hate/ like / love / prefer to do (= doing) exercise every day
- It has started to rain (= raining).

❷ إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل أي من الأفعال السابقة فلابد أن يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) فقط:
- I'd love to go for a swim this evening. (NOT: I'd love going)

❸ بعد (starting/beginning) نستخدم (to + inf.) فقط وليس (inf. + ing):
- It was starting to rain. (NOT: it was starting raining)

❹ الأفعال التالية يتبعها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق في المعنى:

Verb	Example	Meaning
stop يتوقف	- Leila stopped listening to the radio.	توقفت عن القيام بشيء
	- Leila stopped to listen to the radio.	توقفت لكي تقوم بشيء آخر
remember يتذكر	- I remembered phoning my mother.	يتذكر أنه فعل
	- I remembered to phone my mother.	تذكرت أن أفعل ثم فعلت
regret يندم / يشعر بالأسف	- I regret arriving late.	نادم على ما فعلت
	- I regret to say that you can't go.	أشعر بالأسف لأنني مضطر للقيام بـ ...
forget ينسي	- I forgot bringing my book.	نسيت أنني أحضرت الكتاب
	- I forgot to bring my book.	نسيت أن أحضر الكتاب
try يحاول - يُجرِّب	- He tried to control the children, but they went on shouting.	يُحاول/يقوم بمحاولة
	- Try logging off and logging on again.	يُجرِّب
go on يستمر في	- He finished his English homework, and then he went on to study physics.	ينتقل من عمل لآخر
	- He went on working for the same company.	يستمر في القيام بنفس العمل

Mini Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr Mohammed prefers .... in a coastal city.
   a. living b. to live c. to living d. a & b
2. Mr Mohammed would prefer .... in a coastal city.
   a. living b. to live c. to living d. a & b
3. It's started .... heavily.
   a. to rain b. raining c. a & b d. rain
4. It's starting .... heavily.
   a. to rain b. raining c. a & b d. rain
5. When there's a curfew حظر تجوال, people stop .... out.
   a. to go b. going c. to going d. not going
6. I got tired of studying, so I stopped .... to bed.
   a. to go b. going c. to going d. not going
7. Remember .... me when you arrive home.
   a. to calling b. not calling c. calling d. to call
8. I remember .... you when I arrived home, but you didn't answer my call.
   a. to calling b. not calling c. calling d. to call
9. Do you regret .... your time?
   a. not wasting b. wasting c. to wasting d. to waste
10. She regrets .... that she is guilty, but she thinks it is the right thing to do.
    a. not to admit b. admit c. admitting d. to admit

4 to = in order to = so as to

من أجل / لكي

- عندما تُستخدم (to) بمعنى (لكي) يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر (.inf) :

- I study hard to get good marks.
- Sama went home early to welcome the visitors.

5 to + (inf. + ing)

- عندما تكون (to) جزء من تعبير معين يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing)، ومن أمثلة هذه التعبيرات :

adapt to	يتأقلم مع	be accustomed to	معتاد على
apply .... to	يُطبق ... على	be opposed to	يعترض على
be used to	يكوْن معتاد على	lead to	يؤدي إلى
become used to	يتعود على	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
confess to	يعترف بـ	object to	يعترض على
contribute to	يساهم فى	take to	يعتاد على
get used to	يتعود على		

- I look forward to (am used to) spending the holidays in Sharm.
- Rodayna took to living in Aswan.

6 Expression + (-ing form)

- التعبيرات التالية يأتى بعدها (inf. + ing):

be busy	مشغول بـ	feel like	يود / يريد
be interested in	مهتم بـ	It's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
be worth	يستحق	It's a waste of time	مضيعة الوقت
can't help	لا يستطيع أن يتوقف عن	It's no good	لا فائدة من
can't stand	لا يطيق	= It's no use	لا فائدة من
		prefer ... to ...	يفضل...على...

- It's a waste of money buying this second hand car.
- I prefer drinking coffee to eating sweets.
- I prefer tea to coffee.
- I can't help feeling sorry for the poor man.

7 Special Cases حالات خاصة

1 الافعال التالية يمكن أن يأتى بعدها المفعول ثم (to + inf.):

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
allow	يسمح	motivate	يحفز
ask	يطلب	order	يأمر
beg	يتوسل	permit	يسمح
challenge	يتحدي	persuade	يقنع
choose	يختار	promise	يعد
command	يأمر	remind	يُذكر

encourage	يشجع	teach	يُعلِّم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يأمر
force	يُجبِر	urge	يحث
help	يساعد	want	يريد
hire	يؤجر شخصا	warn	يُحذِّر
instruct	يأمر	would like	يود / يريد

- I advised Ola to see a doctor.
- Rodayna allows Ahmed to play with her toys.
- Our teacher has asked us to write a letter.
- We will choose Mr Nasser to be the manager.

- في المبني للمجهول تأتي (to + inf.) بعد الفعل مباشرة:

- Ola was advised to see a doctor.
- Ahmed is allowed to use Rodayna's toys (by her).
- We have been asked to write a letter.
- Mr Nasser will be chosen to be the manager.

الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعـدها (inf. + ing) في حالة عدم وجود مفعول ، و يأتي بعدها (to + inf.) في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	recommend	يوصي بـ
allow	يسمح	permit	يسمح
forbid	يمنع / يحرم	encourage	يشجع

- We don't allow smoking here.
= We don't allow anyone to smoke here.

الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل علي أننا تابعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها (inf. +ing) ليدل علي أننا تابعنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يري	watch	يشاهد

- I heard Mariam sing a song. = I heard the whole song.
- I heard Mariam singing a song. = I heard part of the song.

General Exercise On Language



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. Your suggestion appears............ logical; I agree with you. *(LM)*
   a. is b. to be c. being d. to being
2. You must .... using your mobile for a long time; it's harmful. *(LM)*
   a. continue b. stop c. enjoy d. encourage
3. I .... her to use my dictionary. *(LM)*
   a. made b. let c. allowed d. refused
4. Heba: Let's go to the library. This means that Heba .... to the library. *(LM)*
   a. suggests going b. lets us go c. allows us to go d. refuses to go
5. I got him to change his mind. This means that I .... change his mind. *(LM)*
   a. forced him to b. let him
   c. persuaded him to d. hoped he would
6. The burglar admitted .... the lady's jewellery. *(LM)*
   a. stealing b. that he has stolen
   c. to steal d. to be stolen
7. I shouldn't have annoyed my brother. This means that I .... that. *(LM)*
   a. hoped to do b. regret doing
   c. regret to do d. was pleased to do
8. I promise .... you overcome this problem. *(LM)*
   a. I would help b. I will be helped
   c. to help d. help
9. I .... eating late at night since it makes me feel heavy in the morning. *(LM)*
   a. forbid b. dislike c. enjoy d. hope
10. She intended .... a new dress for her birthday party. *(LM)*
    a. will buy b. would buy c. to buy d. buy
11. I .... him to attend my sister's wedding. *(LM)*
    a. decide b. hope c. made d. expect
12. I will start .... my homework as soon as I have lunch. *(LM)*
    a. doing b. to doing c. make d. making
13. We hope .... Mohammed Salah in England next Summer. (دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
    a. to meet b. meet c. to be meeting d. meeting

14. He kept .... into the jungle as if there was no danger.
a. to go b. going c. to going d. to have gone
(مصر الدور الأول ٢٠١٩)

15. Gihan's mother forced her .... her room.
a. not to tidy b. tidying c. tidy d. to tidy
(مصر الدور الأول ٢٠١٨)

16. Although my question was easy, he refused .... it.
a. answering b. for answering c. to answer d. answer
(السودان ٢٠١٧)

17. My sister hates .... by air.
a. travelling b. to travelling c. travels d. travelled
(مصر حديث ٢٠٢١ - منفصل)

18. In 1954, the government decided............ the High Dam.
a. built b. building c. to build d. had built
(مصر ٢٠١١)

19. She often avoids ....with strangers as she is very shy.
a. speaks b. to speak c. speak d. speaking
(مصر أول ٢٠١٨)

20. He denied ....at the scene of the crime.
a. to be b. had been c. was d. being
(مصر الدور الثاني ٢٠١٤)

21. Would you mind ....the door, please?
a. closing b. to close c. closed d. to closing

22. I'd love .... to the party, but it is impossible.
a. to going b. to go c. going d. go

23. I'd prefer .... a taxi.
a. getting b. to get c. to getting d. get

24. Try to concentrate .... the task in your hand.
a. to achieve b. on achieve c. on achieving d. to be achieved

25. I feel like ....to the cinema tonight.
a. go b. to go c. going d. to going

26. I considered .... for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
a. apply b. applying c. to apply d. to applying

27. Leila pretended ....me as she passed me in the street.
a. not see b. not seeing c. to seeing not d. not to see

28. Rodayna always does her best .... first.
a. on coming b. to come c. to coming d. to be come

29. Please, remember .... the door when you go out.
a. locking b. lock c. to locking d. to lock

30. Our neighbours threatened ....the police if we didn't stop the noise.

a. to call b. calling c. call d. to calling

31. The police warned us .... out at night.

a. to not going b. not going c. not go d. not to go

2 Special Cases

32. Which mobile phone have you decided ...., Sir? *(LM)*

a. at b. up c. to d. on

33. A lot of people still believe .... magic! *(LM)*

a. in b. with c. of d. at

34. The criminal was in disguise to avoid .... by the police. *(LM)*

a. arresting b. being arrested

c. arrest d.be arrested

35. I was made .... the composition again, as it was full of mistakes. *(LM)*

a. to revise b. revise c. revising d. to revising

36. She needn't .... the things that are unnecessary. *(LM)*

a. buys b. to buy c. buy d. to buying

37. I prefer reading .... TV. *(LM)*

a. to watching b. than watch

c. to watch d. more than watch

38. My mother asked me to stop .... bread because we needed it for lunch. *(LM)*

a. buy b. to buying c. buying d. to buy

39. I am sorry; I forgot .... your book. I am going to return it tomorrow. *(LM)*

a. to bringing b. bringing c. to bring d. bring

40. Why didn't you return the book you had borrowed?

- Oh! I remember .... it a week ago. *(LM)*

a. to returning b. return c. to return d. returning

41. When I train, I follow the coach's advice; I .... a break every 15 minutes to get some rest. *(LM)*

a. refuse to take b. avoid taking c. stop to take d. stop taking

42. Because of the bad weather conditions, Egypt Air regrets .... its flight to London.

a. to cancel b. canceling c. cancel d. to canceling

43. The teacher instructed us .... the passage and give short answers to the questions. (Practice ...)

a. read b. that read c. to read d. to reading

44. I stopped .... the book to answer the phone.

a. to have read b. reading c. to read d. reads

45. He remembered .... her at a party once.

a. meet b. to meet c. met d. meeting

46. Although he is diabetic, he can't help .... chocolate.

a. to eat b. to be eaten c. eat d. eating

47. Do you object .... to Hurghada? Where else can we go?

a. being taken b. be taken
c. to be taken d. to being taken

48. What do you think .... the statue to fall?

a. demolished b. made c. caused d. divided

49. I don't think the film is worth ....

a. seeing b. to see
c. to have been seen d. to be seen

50. Did you remember .... my letter?

a. posted b. post c. to post d. posting

51. Tom was used .... alone but now he lives with his grandparents.

a. to living b. to live c. live d. living

52. She isn't able to look after herself. She needs ....after.

a. to look b. looked c. to be looked d. look

53. A little boy was heard ....

a. cries b. cry c. to crying d. to cry

54. I'd rather .... at home tonight than go to the cinema.

a. stay b. to stay c. staying d. to staying

55. I regret .... to my father's advice . He was right.

a. not to listen b. not listen c. not listening d. not to listening

56. Eating too much fatty food will certainly lead .... weight.
a. to gain b. to gaining c. in gaining d. gained

57. It is a waste of time .... all these silly exercises.
a. do b. to do c. to doing d. doing

58. I can't stand .... next to these noisy neighbours.
a. living b. live c. to live d. to living

59. I saw an old man .... this busy street alone.
a. crosses b. to cross c. cross d. to crossing

60. I can't imagine ....a bike.
a. my father to ride
b. my father riding
c. riding my father
d. to my father riding

61. Sama is busy .... the housework.
a. on doing b. do c. to do d. doing

62. Leen has finally taken .... in their new flat.
a. to living b. to live c. life d. living

63. You can't stop me ....what I want.
a. to doing b. doing c. to do d. do

64. It is no use .... over spilt milk.
a. cry b. crying c. to cry d. to crying

65. I regret ....you that you have failed the driving test.
a. tell b. telling c. to tell d. to telling

3 Check your understanding

66. The shop assistant talked me into buying that expensive T-shirt. This means that he .... *(LM)*
a. allowed me to buy it for a low price
b. persuaded me to come again for a better collection.
c. convinced me to buy it.
d. forced me to buy it.

67. Which of the following is not structurally correct? *(LM)*
a. I suggested travelling by car.
b. I suggested that he travel by car.
c. I suggested that he is travelling by car.
d. I suggested that we should travel by car.

68. "He doesn't smoke anymore." This means ....

a. he stopped to smoke.
b. he stopped smoking.
c. he has never smoked.
d. a & c

69. "I remembered to call my mother before going to bed." What does this mean?

a. I remembered calling my mother.
b. I remember that I call my mother.
c. First I remembered, then I called my mother.
d. First I called my mother, then I remembered.

70. "I have forgotten to bring my camera." This means ....

a. it is not with me now.
b. it is with me now.
c. I have forgotten bringing it.
d. a & c

71. "It is impossible for me to stop watching football matches." What does this mean?

a. I am busy watching football matches.
b. I can't help watching football matches.
c. It is no use watching football matches.
d. It is no good watching football matches.

72. "Omar got used to living on his own." - Omar ....

a. can't live alone
b. hates living on his own
c. doesn't live on his own
d. took to living alone

73. "I advise my students to understand, not to memorize." This means ....

a. My students are advised to memorize and understand.
b. My students are advised to memorize not to understand.
c. My students are advised not to memorize but to understand.
d. My students are advised not to memorize or understand.

74. "I heard a bird singing." What does this mean?

a. I heard a bird sing.
b. A bird was heard singing.
c. A bird was heard to sing.
d. A bird was heard to singing.

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. For centuries, the wind has been used............ships.
   a. to sailing b. sailed c. sailing d. to sail
2. I remember my father .... me to the zoo when I was young.
   a. has taken b. is taking c. taking d. will take
3. I was made .... the home-work again.
   a. do b. to do c. to be done d. to be doing
4. You seem ....weight .
   a. to have lost b. losing c. to be lost d. to losing
5. I believe that what I said was fair. I don't regret ....it.
   a. saying b. to saying c. say d. to say

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	d	التعبير (been used) هنا يعني (كان يُستخدم لـ)، وليس (إعتاد أن) لذلك نستخدم بعده (to + inf.).
2.	c	هذه الصيغة قاعدتها كالتالي (remember + obj. + inf. + ing)
3.	b	هذه الصيغة مبنية للمجهول وقاعدتها كالتالي (be made to + inf.)
4.	a	بعد (seem) نستخدم (to+inf.) ولأن الجملة مبنية للمعلوم لا يمكن استخدام (to be lost)
5.	a	الفاعل يقول إنه غير نادم في المضارع على شيء حدث بالفعل في الماضي، لذلك لابد من استخدام (inf. + ing) وليس (to+inf.) .

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 58 : 61 WB pages 36 & 37





Part I — Chapter 5

تنويه
• هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

1 Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية ، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى	half-brother(n)	أخ غير شقيق
be convinced	يكون مقتنعاً	inherit(ed) (v)	يرث
clerk(n)	مُوظف	jealous(adj)	حاقد
dare(d) (v)	يجرؤ	lodgings(n)	مأوى/مسكن
fiancé(n)	خاطب	share(d)(v)	يتقاسم
get engaged	تتم خطبته/خطبتها	take revenge on	ينتقم من
grumpy(adj)	مُتأفف - غضبان		

2 Definitions تعريفات

تنويه
لابد من قراءة التعريفات التالية جيدًا، فهي موضع امتحان.

adopt(ed) (v) يتبنى	to legally take someone else's child into your family
be convinced يكون مقتنعاً	to be completely sure that something is true
clerk(n) مُوظف	a person who works in an office
dare(d) (v) يجرؤ	to be brave and story enough to do something
fiancé(n) خاطب	a man who has agreed to marry someone
get engaged تتم خطبته/خطبتها	to agree to marry someone and give them a ring.
grumpy(adj) مُتأفف - غضبان	to often be in a bad mood
half-brother(n) أخ غير شقيق	someone who is the son of one of your parents
inherit(ed) (v) يرث	to receive something from someone else, usually in a will وصية
jealous(adj) حاقد	feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want

lodgings(n) مأوي/ مَسْكَن	a place to live
share(d)(v)(n) يتقاسم / نصيب	• to divide something so that each person gets a part of it • a part of something that has been divided
take revenge on ينتقم من	to do something bad to someone who was unpleasant to you

3 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
cheerful	مبتهج	happy (and smiling)
disappointed	مُحبَط	sad (because something good did not happen)
good-natured	ودود	friendly
grateful	ممتن / شاكر	happy (and saying thank you)
handsome	وسيم	beautiful (usually for a boy or a man)
ordinary	عادى	normal or typical
pale	شاحب	white
proud	فخور	happy

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The young man was arrested after the police discovered that he had been .... in a fight. *(LM)*
   a. engaged b. enjoyed c. enlarged d. entered
2. She is very rich; she has............ a fortune from her late grandfather. *(LM)*
   a. robbed b. inherited c. left d. done
3. I am completely .... that buying this bag is a good decision. *(LM)*
   a. agreed b. disagreed c. convinced d. forced
4. .... revenge on those who have insulted you will never give you a sense of peace! *(LM)*
   a. Letting b. Making c. Taking d. Sitting
5. A good teacher never .... a single technique; they always use different strategies. *(LM)*
   a. appears b. succeeds c. adopts d. agrees

6. To .... is to be strong or brave enough.
   a. get engaged b. dare c. adopt d. inherit
7. A .... is a person who works in an office.
   a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
8. To be .... means to often be in a bad mood.
   a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous
9. A .... is a man who has agreed to marry someone.
   a. half-brother b. clerk c. benefactor d. fiancé
10. To be .... means feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want.
   a. persuasive b. convinced c. grumpy d. jealous

Part II Skills

تنويه: المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متبوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة علي حدة.

Translation

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. Scientists believe that work conditions will be quite different in the future. Artificial Intelligence is one of the most important factors that will decrease the number of people working in different fields.

   a. يعتقد العلماء أن شروط العمل ستكون مختلفة تمامًا في المستقبل، ويُعد الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستزيد من عدد العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.
   b. يعتقد العلماء أن ظروف العمل ستكون مختلفة تمامًا في المستقبل، ويُعد الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستقلل من عدد العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.
   c. يعتقد علماء الاقتصاد أن ظروف العمل ستكون مختلفة تمامًا في المستقبل، ويُعد الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم النتائج التي ستقلل من عدد العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.
   d. يعتقد علماء الاقتصاد أن ظروف العمل ستكون مختلفة تمامًا في المستقبل، ويُعد الذكاء الاصطناعي من أهم العوامل التي ستزيد من عدد العاملين في المجالات المختلفة.

2. When I join a virtual meeting, I switch on my camera and microphone so people can see and hear me.

   a. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بتشغيل الكاميرا والميكروفون حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والإستماع إليّ.
   b. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بتشغيل الكاميرا والسماعة حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والإستماع إليّ.
   c. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم بتشغيل الكاميرا والميكروفون حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والإستماع إليّ.

د. عندما أنضم إلى اجتماع افتراضي، أقوم أبدل الكاميرا والميكروفون حتى يتمكن الأشخاص من رؤيتي والإستماع إليّ.

I may need to show someone what is on my computer when we're on a call, but I don't know how to switch my screen.

أ. أريد أن أظهر شخص ما ما هو موجود على جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بي عندما نجري مكالمة، لكنني لا أعرف كيفية تبديل شاشتي.

ب. قد أحتاج أن أظهر لأحدهم ما هو موجود على جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بي عندما نجري مكالمة، لكنني لا أعرف كيفية تبديل شاشتي.

جـ. أريد أن أظهر لشخص ما ما هو موجود على جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص به عندما نجري مكالمة، لكنني لا أعرف كيفية تبديل شاشتي.

د. أريد أن أظهر لشخص ما ما هو موجود على جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بي عندما نجري نداء، لكنني لا أعرف كيفية تبديل شاشتي.

Adding a virtual background is great fun and quite easy to do when you know how.

أ. تُعدّ إضافة خلفية افتراضية مزاح كبير ويسهل القيام به عندما تعرف كيف.

ب. تُعدّ إضافة خلفية افتراضية متعة كبيرة ويسهل القيام بها عندما تعرف كم.

جـ. تُعدّ إضافة خلفية حقيقية متعة كبيرة ويسهل القيام بها عندما لا تعرف كيف.

د. تُعدّ إضافة خلفية افتراضية متعة كبيرة ويسهل القيام بها عندما تعرف الكيفية.

Choose the best English translation :

١. لا شك أن التكنولوجيا الحديثة الخاصة بالإتصالات قد أحدثت طفرة كبيرة جداً في كل المجالات.

There is no doubt that the modern technology of communication has brought up a very big leap in all fields.

There is a doubt that the modern technology of communication has brought about a very big leap in all fields.

There is no doubt that the modern technology of communication has bought about a very big leap in all fields.

There is no doubt that the modern technology of communication has brought about a very big leap in all fields.

٢. جعلت وسائل الاتصالات الرقمية من الممكن أن يعمل بعض الناس من منازلهم دون الحاجة للذ... إلى مقر العمل.

Digital communications have made it impossible for some people to work from their home without having to go to the workplace.

Digital communications have made it possible for some people to work from their home without having to go to the workplace.

c. Numerous communications have made it possible for some people to work from their home without having to go to the workplace.

d. Digital communications have made it possible for all people to work from their home without having to go to the workplace.

---

٣. لقد بدأت الحكومة بالفعل في نقل مقار بعض الوزارات والإدارات الحكومية الهامة إلى العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة التي تم تزويدها بأحدث الإمكانيات التكنولوجية المتطورة.

a. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government monasteries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological capabilities.

b. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the primary advanced technological capabilities.

c. The government has already started moving the headquarters of some important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, which has been equipped with the latest advanced technological abilities.

d. The government has already started moving the headquarters of all important government ministries and departments to the new administrative capital, that has been equipped with the latest advanced technological capabilities.

---

٤. من أولويات عملية تطوير التعليم في مصر خلق بيئة تعليمية جذابة تجعل الطالب محباً للمدرسة والتعلم ومستمتعًا بالتعلم.

a. One of the priorities of developing the educational process in Egypt is to create an attractive learning environment that makes students like school and enjoy learning.

b. One of the priorities of developing educational procession in Egypt is to create an unattractive learning environment that prepares students like school and enjoy learning.

c. One of priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create an attractive learning environment that makes students live school and enjoy teaching.

d. One the priorities of developing educational process in Egypt is to create and attractive learning universe that makes students like school and enjoy learning.

Test on Unit 5

• Understand • Apply • Create



Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I keep all my important .... in a password protected steel safe.
   a. documents b. presentations c. options d. backgrounds
2. Double .... on the browser to go online.
   a. click b. record c. draw d. switch
3. This application helps me to .... the screen of my smart TV so that I can display videos from my mobile on the smart TV.
   a. plug b. install c. destroy d. share
4. It is commonly known that IT stands for ....
   a. Information Training b. Information Technology
   c. Intelligence Training d. Intelligence Technology
5. To make a video call, you need to .... your camera on.
   a. download b. suit c. join d. switch
6. I downloaded a powerful anti-virus ....
   a. colleague b. consequence c. software d. study
7. Only one of the .... will be given the job.
   a. forums b. spaces c. welfares d. interviewees
8. To .... is to improve and reach the same standard as other people in your class, group etc.
   a. switch ... on b. switch ... off c. look into d. catch up with
9. We told one of the waiters that the music was too loud so she turned it ....
   a. down b. up c. on d. off
10. Hurry up, Karim. I'm waiting for you to ....
    a. catch up b. catch up with c. find out d. find out about
11. Hurry up, Sama. I'm waiting for you to .... us at the corner of the street.
    a. catch up b. catch up with c. find out d. find out about
12. I wish my son .... computer games. He is addicted to them.
    a. gave up b. hung up c. handed in d. blew up

13. My father has .... doing the same job since he graduated.
  a. logged b. set off c. turned up d. gone on

14. If you walk into a busy street without looking, you risk .... knocked down.
  a. being b. to be c. be d. to being

15. I don't mind you ....the phone as long as you repay your calls.
  a. used b. using c. to use d. to using

16. Don't be easily defeated. Keep .... yourself.
  a. discouraging b. encouraging c. demotivating d. appointing

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

When people think of **distinctive** Scottish folk music, they usually think of the bagpipes. However, the instrument was not invented in Scotland. Experts think that the bagpipes must have first been played in Egypt in around the first century BCE, when a bag was added to a type of flute.

To play the bagpipes, a bag made from animal skin had to be filled with air. When the bagpipe player pressed the bag, air went into the instrument, so that the music could be continuous, even when the player stopped blowing.

The bagpipes were very popular and they were taken into the north of Europe by the Romans. People enjoyed listening to the bagpipes for about a thousand years. Then people started to spend more time indoors. Bagpipes, which are very loud, are not the kind of instrument that you want inside a house, so they became less popular in some countries.

In Scotland, however, people still love listening to them. The army used them to send messages; it is said that the bagpipes can be heard up to 16 kilometres away. For this reason, the English (who often had battles with the Scottish) banned people from playing the bagpipes at the end of the eighteenth century.

Today the bagpipes are played at many important processions and events throughout Scotland. But you don't have to go to Scotland to hear them. They are also popular in Ireland and parts of France, Spain and Turkey.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The second paragraph answers the question ....
   a. How can you play the bagpipes? b. How can you buy the bagpipes?
   c. Where are the bagpipes made? d. Who invented the bagpipes?

18. This passage is about ....
   a. bagpipes b. Scottish people
   c. music d. musical instruments

19. How did the bagpipes become popular in the north of Europe?
   a. They were taken there by the Romans.
   b. The Egyptians invaded Scotland.
   c. The British took the bagpipes there.
   d. The Scottish army took them there.

20. People don't want to listen to the bagpipes inside a house because ....
   a. women don't like them. b. they are expensive.
   c. they are very loud. d. the police ban them.

21. In 20 years, traditional folk music in Egypt will .... unless we enhance young people's interests in music.
   a. appear b. be popular c. be interesting d. disappear

22. When can you hear the bagpipes in Scotland nowadays?
   a. At war time only b. At important events
   c. At battle time only d. At very few festivals

23. We can infer from the passage that the word "**distinctive**" means ....
   a. sociable b. distinguishable c. affordable d. predictable

24. Why did the Scottish army use the bagpipes?
   a. To call soldiers for meals
   b. To send messages
   c. To celebrate the soldiers' weddings
   d. To entertain the soldiers in free time

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

In the 1700s, work was very different to today. Most people worked on farms or had traditional jobs as weavers, carpenters or builders, working in their own homes or in small workshops. At this time, work was done by hand or with the help of animals; nothing was mechanised and there were no factories.

The Industrial Revolution started in England towards the end of the eighteenth century. The most important invention of the time was the steam engine, which was used to power machines in factories. Thousands of new factories were built by businessmen who made money by producing goods quickly and efficiently. Many of the things that were produced in English factories were exported to countries all over the world.

This change in the way things were produced had a huge effect on people's lives. English towns and cities grew very fast because poor people from rural areas moved to find work in the new factories.

The Industrial Revolution not only made a few businessmen very rich, but also gave work to millions of ordinary people and improved their standard of living. Mass production brought down prices and meant that people could afford to buy things that had been too expensive for them in the past.

Industrialisation, which spread quickly from England to other parts of Europe and then to the rest of the world, has transformed people's lives in just over two hundred years. The fact that we can drive cars, watch televisions and use computers is all because of the Industrial Revolution.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The best title for the passage is that ....
 a. The Industrial Revolution and its effect
 b. Primitive life and merchandise
 c. Industry nowadays
 d. Many English factories

26. In the near future, the industrial revolution will ....
 a. stop
 d. be limited
 c. last without stop
 d. continue to have an end

27. The Industrial Revolution reduced prices because of ....
 a. nobody wanted to buy goods
 b. the poor goods produced
 c. production was more than demand
 d. none of the above

28. Why did English towns and cities grow very fast?
 a. Because a lot of poor people from rural areas moved there.
 b. Because parents gave birth to a lot of children there.
 c. Because there was a lot food and cheap houses there.
 d. Because they worked at factories and got too much money.

29. According to the passage, which of the following inventions helped to start the Industrial Revolution?

a. the steam engine b. the wheel c. agriculture d. pacemakers

30. The main idea of the second paragraph is ....

a. the side effects of the steam engine
b. the start of the Industrial Revolution
c. many people left their houses to the villages.
d. the Industrial Revolution has many negative effects.

31. Industrialisation spread .... from England to other parts of Europe and the whole world.

a. slower b. fast c. slow d. higher

32. The more factories increase their production, ... people afford to buy it.

a. the less b. the more c. the least d. the fewest

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. There are some measures that may keep you healthy for long. One of them is to brush your teeth with dental paste twice daily.

أ. يوجد بعض المعايير التى ربما تبقيك بصحة جيدة، لفترة طويلة. أحد هذه المعايير أن تغسل أسنانك بمعجون الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

ب. يوجد العديد من المعايير التى ربما تحافظ عليك بصحة جيدة، أحد هذه المعايير أن تنظف أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

جـ. هناك بعض عدد المعايير التى تبقيك بصحة جيدة. إحدى هذه المعايير غسل أسنانك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين يوميًا.

د. هناك عدة المعايير التى ربما تحافظ على صحتك، أولى هذه المعايير أن تغسل فمك بفرشاة الأسنان مرتين كل يوم.

34. Some people need escapism stories to forget about their worries and troubles. These stories take them to the world of imagination and thinking.

أ. يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص للهروب من الواقع، ليبعدوا الأشياء التى تقلقهم ومتاعبهم، هذه القصص تسرح بهم لعالم من الخيال والاعتقاد.

ب. يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص هروبية، لينسوا الأشياء التى تقلقهم ومتاعبهم. هذه القصص تأخذهم لعالم خيالى معتقد به.

جـ. يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص الهروب من الواقع لينسوا الأشياء التى تقلقهم ومتاعبهم. هذه القصص تأخذهم لعالم من الخيال والتفكير.

د. قد يحتاج بعض الناس لقصص التهرب من الواقع لكى يتذاكروا الأشياء التى تقلقهم ومتاعبهم، هذه القصص تأخذهم لعالم من الخيال والتفكير.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. تتمتع مصر بمناخ جيد طوال العام ، فالشمس متوفرة فى معظم شهور السنة ، ولهذا السبب تسعى مصر لإستخدام الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهربا..

a. Egypt has a good weather all the year. The sun was available most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks to use the sun energy to generate electricity.

b. Egypt has a good climate all the year. The sun is available most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks to use the solar energy to generate electricity.

c. Egypt has a good climate all the year. The sun is avoidable most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks using the solar power to tolerate electricity.

d. Egypt had a good weather all the year. The sun is available most of months of the year. So, Egypt seeks using the solar power to tolerate electricity.

٣٦. الإرهاب مشكلة عالمية تواجه كل دول العالم ، فهى ليس شأنًا داخليًا يخص دولة أومكان معين.

a. Terrorism is a national problem that faces all the world countries. It is not an internal affair that belongs to a specific place or country.

b. Terrorism is a global problem that forces all the world countries. It is not an internal affair that belongs to a special place or country.

c. Terrorism is a world problem that faces all the world countries. It is not an internal affair that belongs to a specific place or country.

d. Terrorism is an international problem that faces all the world countries. It is an external affair that belonged to a special place or country.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. Which of the following is part of an essay about the skills needed to face the challenges of the future? *(LM)*

a. However, no one can ignore the importance of experience to remain employable regardless of the changes we are going to face in the future.

b. Most experts agree that workplaces will require employees with different skills to cope with the challenges they are going to face.

c. Personally, I think that traditional criteria will remain the same in the future when selecting appropriate employees.

d. That is why a lot of young people still prefer to have a job near where they live.

38. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*
   a. My friend said, "Have you read Oliver Twist Rami"?
   b. My friend said, "Have you read Oliver twist, Rami?"
   c. My friend said, "Have you read Oliver Twist, Rami?"
   d. My friend said "Have you read Oliver Twist, Rami?"

39. One of the following sentences CAN'T be used when you CONCLUDE writing an essay on the merits of mass media: .... *(LM)*
   a. To sum up, mass media could be a window to the whole world.
   b. In my opinion, the mass media has a lot of disadvantages if we use it badly.
   c. In my view, mass media is very useful to all of us.
   d. In conclusion, mass media has made the world a small village.

40. Which of the following is part of a persuasive essay on the negative impact of the news on social media?
   a. To start with, we should consider the possible benefits of the current news we follow all over the world.
   b. Moreover, the constant cycle of news, which is mostly bad, can make people stressed and worried.
   c. On the other hand, we can't ignore that a lot of people aren't keen on following current events.
   d. In summary, social media plays an important role in spreading public awareness concerning the challenges we face.

Answers of Test on unit 5

اسم الطالب (رباعياً) : ....

تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

No.					No.				
1.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	21.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
2.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	22.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
3.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	23.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
4.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	24.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
5.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	25.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
6.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	26.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
7.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	27.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
8.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	28.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
9.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	29.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
10.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	30.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
11.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	31.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
12.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	32.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
13.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	33.	(د)	(جـ)	(ب)	(أ)
14.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	34.	(د)	(جـ)	(ب)	(أ)
15.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	35.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
16.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	36.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
17.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	37.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
18.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	38.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
19.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	39.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
20.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)	40.	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 5



1. Finish the following dialogue :

A police officer is investigating a murder.

Officer : (1) .... ?

Suspect : Yes, I went to that villa.

Officer : (2) .... ?

Suspect : At about five

Officer : Can you tell me why you went there ?

Suspect : (3) ....

Officer : Did you fix the problem with the bathroom pipes ?

Suspect : (4) ....

Officer : Why ?

Suspect : Because the landlord refused to give me the money I asked for.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"The future of work market"

....

3. Translate into Arabic :

Take advice from the wise and the experienced, not from the funny company around you.

....

4. Translate into English :

- لعلك تعلم أن من أهم سمات الإنسان الناجح هى التخطيط وتنظيم الوقت وتحديد الهدف.

....

5. Choose the correct answer : (Islamic Selections)

- Khaled was a .... fighter. (الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

a. prominent b. permanent c. proof d. proud



GUIDE

New Hello! & Great Expectations

By A Group Of Supervisors

PART ONE

كتاب الشرح و التدريبات

للصف الثالث الثانوى
عام - أزهرى
الفصل الدراسى الأول



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى

3rd Sec.
2023
FIRST TERM




By: Sawsan kameL

UNIT

6

Let's get it done !

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 38 : 43

earning Outcomes :

- **Reading :**
  A report on a study into productivity
- **Writing :**
  A reflective text
- **Listening :**
  An interview with an expert on productivity
- **Speaking :**
  Brainstorm and discuss ideas to improve productivity
- **Language :**
  Get something done; Causative verbs
- **Life skills :**
  Productivity; Self-management



- إتقان المفردات اللغوية (حفظ الكلمات) في ملحق بنك الأسئلة.
- بنك الأسئلة والامتحانات التدريبية.
- دليل المعاصر في المهارات.
- دليل المعاصر في القواعد اللغوية.
- قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.
- تدريبات للأذ...



LESSONS **1 & 2**

SB pages 62 : 65 WB pages 38 : 39

Part I Vocabulary

تنويه • اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية فى كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

assess(ed) (v)	يُقيِّم	productive(adj)	مُثمِر - مُنتِج
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة - ينهار - يرفض	productivity(n)	الإنتاجية - العائد
		progress (n)	تَقدُّم/تَحسُّن
decline (n)	انخفاض - انهيار	raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد - يُحسِّن - يجمع (مال)
efficiency(n)	كفاءة		
efficient(adj)	كفء	switch(ed) off (v)	يستريح لفترة قصيرة (يفصل)
procrastinate(d) (v)	يُسوِّف/يُماطِل		
procrastination(n)	التسويف/المماطلة	vary(ied) (v)	يُنوِّع - يتنوع - يتغير

تنويه • المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية.

2 Important Vocabulary

achieve(d) (v)	يُنجز - يُحقِّق	increase(d) (n/v)	زيادة - يزيد - يزداد
aim(ed) (n/v)	هدف - يَهدِف	individual(n/adj)	فرد - فردي
amongst(prep)	بين	interrupt(ed) (v)	يُقاطع
analysis(n)	تحليل	lead - led (v)	يؤدي إلي
awareness(n)	الوعي	let – let - let (v)	يَدَع - يَسمَح
brain(n)	المخ	level(n)	مستوي
concentration(n)	التركيز	look(ed) at (phr. v)	يفحص - يُحلِّل
conclusion(n)	استنتاج	look(ed) for (phr. v)	يبحث عن
delay(ed) (v/n)	يؤخِّر - يؤجِّل - تأخير/تأجيل	manage(d) (v)	يُدير - يتحكَّم به
depending on	حسب - استناداً إلي	memory(n)	الذاكرة
diary(n)	مفكرة شخصية	mention(ed) (v)	يَذكُر - يقول
distract(ed) (v)	يُشتِّت - يصرف انتباه	permission(n)	إذن - تصريح
effect(n)	أثر - نتيجة	pollution(n)	التلوث
effectively(adv)	بفاعلية	private(adj)	شخصي/خاص
effectiveness(n)	فاعلية - تأثير	process(n)	عملية

error(n)	خطأ	recent(adj)	حديث
exactly(adv)	بالضبط	researcher(n)	باحث
excuse(d) (n/v)	عُذر -يَعذُر	response(n)	استجابة
factors(n)	عوامل	session(n)	جَلسَة - دَورَة - مُقَابَلَة
finding(n)	اكتشاف - نتيجة	significantly(adv)	بشكل ملحوظ
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع	sort(n)	نوع
force(d) (v/n)	يُجبِر - يُرغِم - قوة	specific(adj)	مُحدد
habit(n)	عادة	state(d) (v)	يَذكُر - يقول
hand(ed) (v)	يُسلِّم (شيء) باليد	therefore(conj.)	لذلك/ ومن ثَمّ
impossible(adj)	مستحيل		

3 Definitions تعريفات

assess(ed)(v) يُقيِّم	to make a judgment حُكم about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it
decline(d)(v) ينخفض بشدة - ينهار	to decrease in quantity الكمية or importance الأهمية
efficiency(n) كفاءة	the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy
procrastinate(d)(v) يُسوِّف/يُماطِل	to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it
procrastination(n) التسويف/المماطلة	the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it
productive(adj) مُثمِر - مُنتِج	producing or achieving a lot
productivity(n) الإنتاجية	the rate مُعدَّل at which goods are produced, and the amount produced
progress(n) تَقَدُّم/تَحَسُّن	the process of getting better at doing something, or getting closer to finishing or achieving something
raise(d)(v) يرفع - يزيد	to increase an amount, number, or level
switch(ed) off (v) يستريح لفترة قصيرة (يفصل)	to relax for a short time
vary(ied)(v) يُنوِّع - يتنوع - يُغيِّر	to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Key vocabulary

1. The manager used to encourage his workers' .... levels. *(LM)*
   a. necessity b. productivity c. facility d. equality
2. People usually try to .... their standard of living to lead a better life. *(LM)*
   a. raise b. arise c. rise d. arouse
3. Nowadays, employees are mostly evaluated according to their ...., regardless of the number of years they have worked. *(LM)*
   a. importance b. experience c. efficiency d. sufficiency
4. You aren't working hard; you need to be more .... *(LM)*
   a. talkative b. productive c. negative d. successive
5. I read an important report on .... the impact of advertising on children. *(LM)*
   a. assessing b. pressing c. aggressing d. blessing
6. My father advises me to stop studying when I feel exhausted because my concentration .... *(Practice Ex. 2)*
   a. increases b. declines c. improves d. moves
7. You will never achieve any success if you continue to .... over each detail.
   a. delay b. procrastinate c. inspire d. raise
8. .... negatively affects the amount of work you can do.
   a. Procrastination b. Analysis c. Productivity d. Level
9. I have achieved a clear .... in learning English.
   a. process b. conclusion c. permission d. progress
10. "There was a sharp decline in the number of tourists in 2020." In this sentence, the word 'decline' is a/an ....
    a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb
11. Being .... as a surgeon, he was accepted for the job.
    a. impressed b. individual c. efficient d. recent
12. You can .... and have a cold drink in the café.
    a. lead b. vary c. distract d. switch off

13. The exam's questions should .... in order to cover all aspects of the assessment. (LM)
   a. decrease b. include c. raise d. vary

2 Important vocabulary

14. You can .... better if you study in a quiet environment. (LM)
   a. concentrate b. evaluate
   c. raise d. get distracted
15. Energy bills have increased .... this winter all over the world. (LM)
   a. significant b. significance c. significantly d. signify
16. Both hotels are OK. The cost is the only deciding ....
   a. factor b. finding c. session d. error
17. Too much noise .... me while studying my lessons.
   a. leads b. varies c. distracts d. switches off
18. "One feels safe amongst his/her family members". 'Amongst' is a/an ....
   a. conjunction b. pronoun c. adverb d. preposition
19. The report .... most teenagers are addicted to online games.
   a. forced b. stated c. mentioned d. b & c
20. The .... of the research on that medicine have surprised us. It is 100% safe.
   a. factors b. findings c. sessions d. errors
21. This advertisement .... to promote our new product.
   a. aims b. assesses c. hands d. declines
22. Don't try to draw any .... before you examine the information available.
   a. processes b. conclusions c. efficiencies d. progress
23. The Media played an important role in raising the citizens' .... of the protective measures الإجراءات الوقائية against coronavirus.
   a. permission b. concentration c. increase d. awareness
24. I have taken the decision .... on the available data.
   a. depending b. affecting c. managing d. stating
25. The doctor said I would need five .... of therapy. العلاج
   a. factors b. findings c. sessions d. errors
26. Professor Mustafa gave a detailed .... of the economic situation.
   a. procrastination b. analysis c. productivity d. level

27. I have a/an .... interest in helping the poor and the homeless.
a. safe b. individual c. affected d. available

28. Your friends have an important .... on you.
a. effective b. effectively c. effectiveness d. effect

29. It is clear that this coronavirus vaccine is ....
a. effective b. effectively c. effectiveness d. effect

30. The .... of this coronavirus vaccine is clear.
a. effective b. effectively c. effectiveness d. effect

31. You can't leave school early without ....
a. permission b. concentration c. increase d. awareness

32. Those who .... what should be done to a later time will always be losers.
a. lay b. procrastinate c. assess d. raise

33. We need to look .... the data in hand before we decide.
a. for b. at c. after d. b & c

34. The application does not respond. It gives a/an .... message.
a. factor b. finding c. session d. error

35. I .... the letter in to the manager who started to read it at once.
a. aimed b. assessed c. handed d. declined

36. Stress has a bad effect on your .... on your work.
a. permission b. concentration c. increase d. awareness

37. Hard work will surely .... to real success.
a. lead b. vary c. distract d. switch off

38. Have you heard of the .... changes in the team ? Two super strikers have just been included.
a. useless b. individual c. protective d. recent

39. The learning .... never stops at any age.
a. process b. conclusion c. efficiency d. permission

40. Everyone in our street is looking .... the lost child.
a. for b. at c. after d. b & c

41. "Hand it to me carefully." In this sentence, the word 'hand' is a/an ....
a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

42. Choosing the right time and the best place will raise your productivity ....
   a. procrastination b. analysis c. permission d. level
43. Mr Mohammed blamed me for .... my friend while he was giving a speech.
   a. linking b. supporting c. interrupting d. raising
44. Your school work is .... better this year. Keep hard work.
   a. significant b. significantly c. individual d. individually

3 Definitions

45. To .... is to be different from each other in size, shape, etc.
   a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
46. To .... is to decrease in quantity or importance.
   a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
47. To .... is to make a judgment about a person or situation after thinking carefully about it.
   a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
48. To .... is to delay doing something that you ought to do, usually because you do not want to do it.
   a. assess b. decline c. procrastinate d. vary
49. To .... is to relax for a short time.
   a. delay b. achieve c. raise d. switch off
50. To .... is to increase an amount, number, or level.
   a. delay b. achieve c. raise d. switch off
51. .... means producing or achieving a lot.
   a. Individual b. Productive c. Impossible d. Common
52. .... is the quality of doing something well and effectively, without wasting time, money, or energy.
   a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
53. .... is the act of delaying something that you should do, usually because you do not want to do it.
   a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
54. .... is the rate at which goods are produced, and the amount produced.
   a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه: ساعد نفسك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء قسمًا بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

assess	productivity levels يُقيِّم مستويات الإنتاجية	improve	productivity يُحسِّن الإنتاجية
		increase	awareness of يرفع الوعي بـ
become	more productive يُصبح أكثر انتاجية	keep	a diary يُسجِّل مذكرات
do	a study يقوم بدراسة/بحث	make	changes to يُحدث تغييرات في
	good work يقوم بعمل جيد		more progress يُحقِّق تقدم أكبر
draw	a conclusion يصِل لإستنتاج	raise	productivity يرفع الإنتاجية
have	... back يستعيد ...		efficiency يرفع كفاءة
	a very positive effect on لديه تأثير إيجابي جدًا على	get	the same results يحصل على نفس النتائج
			distracted يتشتت
	an effect on له تأثير على	vary	study habits ينوع / يُغيِّر عادات المذاكرة

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Making some changes to your study habits may .... your productivity levels.
   a. draw b. have c. improve d. become
2. We are .... a scientific study on the application of technology in education.
   a. varying b. doing c. having d. raising
3. You can find out about anything he does if you read the diary he ....
   a. states b. makes c. does d. keeps
4. I tried to .... some conclusions but I didn't have enough evidence to depend on.
   a. draw b. allow c. assess d. become

5. You won't feel bored if you .... your study habits.
   a. vary b. do c. have d. raise
6. The progress my son has .... is quite good.
   a. stated b. made c. did d. kept
7. You'll .... more productive if you aren't distracted by unimportant details.
   a. draw b. have c. assess d. become
8. Thank you for the good work you've ....
   a. told b. become c. done d. concentrated
9. Working to a good plan and getting enough sleep will surely .... your efficiency.
   a. vary b. do c. have d. raise
10. I want to .... my money back, please.
   a. state b. have c. assess d. become

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
assess(ed) (v)	يُقيِّم	analyse / judge / evaluate
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة	reduce/decrease
decline(d) (v)	ينهار	deteriorate
decline(d) (v)	يرفض	turn down/reject/refuse
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	effectiveness / productivity/ competence
procrastinate(d) (v)	يُسوِّف/يُماطِل/يؤجِّل	put off / postpone/delay
productive(adj)	مُبدِع - خلاّق	inventive/creative
productive(adj)	مُثمِر - مُنتِج	useful / fertile/fruitful
progress (n)	تَقَدُّم/تَحَسُّن	advance /advancement/ development
raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد	increase
raise (d) (v)	يربي	bring up
raise (d) (v)	يُحسِّن	improve
vary(ied) (v)	يُنوِّع - يُغيِّر	change/diversify/modify/ alter
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف	differ

3 Antonyms متضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)
decline(d) (v)	ينخفض بشدة	increase
decline(d) (v)	ينهار	flourish
decline(d) (v)	يرفض	accept

efficiency(n)	كفاءة	inefficiency / incompetence	عدم الكفاءة - عجز
productive(adj)	مُبدع - خلّاق	unproductive	غير مُبدع
productive(adj)	مثمر - مُنتج	unproductive - sterile	غير مُنتج - عقيم
raise (d) (v)	يرفع - يزيد	lower/reduce	يُقلل/يُخفض
vary(ied) (v)	يتنوع - يختلف	agree	يتفق

Mini Test 2 Synonyms & Antonyms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Parents do their best to raise their children." The verb 'raise' in this sentence is a synonym of ....
   a. increase b. improve c. lower d. bring up
2. "Abdulrahman comes up with productive ideas." The adjective 'productive' in this utterance is an antonym of ....
   a. sterile b. creative c. inventive d. old-fashioned
3. "She declined his offer to marry her saying they have different personalities." The verb 'declined' here gives an opposite meaning to ....
   a. accepted b. flourished c. reduced d. turned down
4. "People's opinions tend to vary according to culture and interests." The antonym of 'vary' here is ....
   a. agree b. disagree c. differ d. modify
5. "Mr Baleigh varies his teaching techniques and strategies according to students' levels." The synonym of 'varies' here is ....
   a. agrees b. disagrees c. differs d. modifies
6. "I knew he was a loser when he kept procrastinating in all the time." The word 'procrastinating' here can be replaced by ....
   a. postponing b. putting off c. a & b d. putting away

4 Derivatives المشتقات

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
assess(ed) يقيم - يقدر (الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة)	assessment تقييم - تقدير (الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة) assessor مُثمّن / مُقدّر / مُقيّم		
decline ينخفض بشدة - ينهار - يرفض	decline انخفاض - انهيار	declining مُتناقص - مُنخفض	

	efficiency كفاءة - جودة	efficient كفء	efficiently بكفاءة
procrastinate يُسوِّف/يُماطِل - يُؤجِّل	procrastination التسويف/المماطلة - التأجيل		
produce يُنتج - يُحدِث - يُلِد	produce ناتج زراعي producer المُنتِج (شخص/شركة) production (عملية) الإنتاج product مُنتَج productivity الإنتاجية - العائد reproduction التكاثر - النَّسْخ	productive مُنتِج - مُثمِر - مُفيد	productively بوفرة
progress يتقدم/يتطور - يتحسَّن - يستمر	progress تَقدُّم - تَحسُّن progression تَقدُّم/تَطَوُّر - تَسَلسُل/تتابع	progressive تَقَدُّمِيّ/ مُتَجَدِّد/ مُتَحَرِّر	
vary يتنوع / يختلف - يُنَوِّع	variety تَنَوُّع - مجموعة متنوعة / اختلاف	various متنوع / مختلف variable مُتَغَيِّر/ مُتَقَلِّب	variably بشكل متغير

Mini Test 3 Derivatives

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Time management and planning improve our ....
   a. produce b. producer c. productive d. productivity
2. Time management and planning make us more ....
   a. produce b. product c. productive d. productivity
3. In Japan, they .... high-quality electronic devices.
   a. produce b. product c. production d. productivity
4. Japan is famous for the .... of high-quality electronic devices.
   a. produce b. product c. production d. producer
5. Japan is a major .... of high-quality electronic devices.
   a. produce b. product c. production d. producer
6. These .... need more promotion. ترويج
   a. produces b. products c. procrastinations d. productivities
7. It is commonly admitted that .... destroys productivity.
   a. assess b. assessment c. procrastinate d. procrastination
8. Once you start to ...., you take the first step into failure.
   a. assess b. assessment c. procrastinate d. procrastination

9. "There's a decline in the growth rate." The word 'decline' here is a/an ....
   a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. pronoun
10. She .... the dishes she prepares for her children to keep them healthy.
   a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
11. Roses .... in colour and size.
   a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
12. Roses are available in a .... of colours and sizes.
   a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
13. Roses are available in .... colours and sizes.
   a. vary b. varies c. various d. variety
14. I don't agree with Ayman's .... of the situation.
   a. assess b. assessment c. procrastinate d. procrastination

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a study into productivity	دراسة عن الإنتاجية	look for an excuse	يبحث عن عُذر
all night	طوال الليل	on time	في الوقت المُحدَّد
an increase in	زيادة فى	over a six-month period	على مدار ست شهور
at different times	فى أوقات مُختلفة	productivity levels	مستويات الإنتاجية
at the beginning of	فى بداية	research study	دراسة بحثية
at the start of	فى بداية	see you then	أراك حينئذ
be distracted by	يتشتت بـ/ ينشغل بـ	self-management	إدارة الذات - التحكُّم فى الذات
be happy with	سعيد بـ - راضٍ عن	study habits	عادات الإستذكار
be true for	صحيح بالنسبةُ لـ	the amount of work	كَمّ العمل
cause and effect	السبب والنتيجة	the way they study	الطريقة التى يذاكرون بها
depending on	على حسب	To be honest	لأصْدُقك القول
even better	والأفضل من ذلك	try hard to	يحاول جاهداً أن
in conclusion	الخلاصة	until late into the evening	حتى وقت متأخر من المساء.
in detail	بالتفصيل		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

distract ... by	يشتت .... بـ/ ينشغل بـ	prefer to	يُفضِّل أن
come over	يزور	put ... away	يضع ... بعيداً / فى مكانه
force ... to	يُجبِر ... أن	result in	يؤدي إلى/ يَخلص إلى
hand ... to	يُسلِّم ... إلى	switch off	يأخذ استراحة (يفصل)
lead to+ noun/ (inf.+ing)	يؤدى إلى	tend to	يميل إلى أن
look at	يفحص - يُحلِّل	write down	يدوِّن/يُسجِّل

Mini Test 4 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. "Hard work leads to success." This means hard work .... success.
   a. looks at b. results in c. tends to d. switches of
2. I want you to tell me what happened .... detail.
   a. to b. at c. in d. for
3. My biggest problem is that I am distracted .... the unimportant details.
   a. for b. from c. at d. by
4. That "Great Expectations" is the best novel is true .... most readers.
   a. for b. from c. at d. by
5. "I need some more time to examine the findings of the research." This means I want some more time to .... the research findings.
   a. look at b. result in c. tend to d. switch of
6. I will have to finish this job over a two- .... period
   a. months b. month c. month's d. monthly
7. "I'd like you come over on Monday evening." This means I want you to .... me.
   a. discover b. find c. visit d. invite
8. .... be honest, this course has too much grammar.
   a. On b. At c. Of d. To
9. Rodayna writes .... every word her teacher says.
   a. with b. down c. on d. of
10. My opinion might change depending .... what will happen.
    a. on b. in c. into d. to

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

rise – raise

• **rise/rose/risen (v)** (بدون مفعول) تشرق
- The sun rises in the east.

• **rise (v)** (بدون مفعول) يستيقظ
- I rise at 6.00 in the morning.

• rise (v) (بدون مفعول) ينهض / يقف (من الجلوس)
- When the visitor entered, all students rose.

• rise (v) (بدون مفعول) يرتفع / يزداد
- Prices of cars have risen.

• raise (d) + مفعول يرفع
- Raise your hand if you want to answer.

• raise (d) + مفعول يجمع مال
- We raised a lot of money for the charity.

• raise (d) + مفعول يُرَبّي
- My uncle raises cattle and sheep.

• raise + مفعول يطرح موضوع للنقاش
- The general manager raised the issue of the employees' salaries during the last meeting.

among – between

- يُستخدَم حرف الجر (among/amongst) بمعنى (بين) فيما يخص المكان عندما يقع شيء بين أكثر من طرفين:

• **Among / amongst** بين (أكثر من طرفين)
- Sama entered the school and quickly disappeared amongst her schoolmates.

- يُستخدَم حرف الجر (between/in between) بمعنى (بين) فيما يخص المكان عندما يقع شيء بين طرفين:

• **between / in between** بين (طرفين)
- The bakery is between the supermarket and the pharmacy.

يُستخدَم حرف الجر (between) وليس (among/amongst) بعد بعض الأسماء المجردة مثل :
- love – cooperation – relationship – difference ...
- The relationship between my family members is all right.

efficient – sufficient

• **efficient** كفء (علي درجة عالية من الجودة أو المهارة)
- I expect such an efficient doctor will achieve great success.

• **sufficient** كافٍ (من حيث الكمية أو العدد أو النسبة)
- I need sufficient time to deal with the problem.

Mini Test 5 Clear the Confusion

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I wonder how they could .... three children on such a low income. يُربي
   a. raise b. rise c. fall d. drop
2. I haven't expected him to .... early because he went to bed very late.
   a. raise b. rise c. fall d. drop
3. There's a mobile shop .... the restaurant and the cloths shop.
   a. among b. amongst c. a & b d. between
4. I guess you won't recognize Yara .... this large number of girls.
   a. among b. amongst c. a & b d. between
5. Can you tell the difference .... these three words?
   a. among b. amongst c. a & b d. between
6. Mum prepared lunch .... for ten people.
   a. sufficient b. sufficiently c. efficient d. efficiently
7. Email is a/an .... way of communication. It is fast and safe at the same time.
   a. sufficient b. sufficiently c. efficient d. efficiently

8 Master your Key Vocabulary كل ما يخص المفردات

assess

• **assess (ed) [v]**
يُقيِّم - يحدد قيمة - يُقدِّر
- This research aims to assess the effect of using mobile phones on children.

• **be assessed as + noun / (inf.+ing)**
يتم تقييمه على أنه
- This patient has been assessed as suffering from diabetes. مرض السكر

• **be assessed at**
يُقدَّر بـ / تبلغ قيمته
- This house was assessed at five million dollars.

• **assessment [n]**
عملية التقييم - تقدير القيمة - التثمين
- I am waiting for your assessment of the situation.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :
- make/do/carry out an assessment يُجرى تقييمًا
- an objective assessment تقييم موضوعى
- personal assessment تقييم شخصى
- continuous assessment التقويم المستمر

procrastinate

• **procrastinate [v]** يُماطل/ يؤجل/يُسوِّف (يقول سوف أفعل كنوع من المماطلة)
- Many students procrastinate when it comes to studying their lessons.

• **procrastination [n]** مُماطلة/ تأجيل/تسويف
- Procrastination is the first enemy of success.

productivity

• **produce(d) [v]** يُنتِج - يولِّد - يُسبِّب - تنبعث منه - تَلِد
- This factory produces 20,000 washing machines a month. (يُنتِج)
- The wind is used to produce electricity. (يُولِّد)
- Global warming has produced an increase in sea levels. (يُسبِّب)
- This factory produces harmful smoke. (تنبعث منه)
- A dog can produce puppies جراء more than once a year. (تَلِد)

• **produce [n]** انتاج المزارع/ناتج زراعي (كلمة لا تُعد)
- Milk, butter and cheese are all farm produce. (NOT: farm produces)

• **producer [n]** المُنتج/ القائم علي الإنتاج (شخص/شركة)
- Film producers make a lot of money.

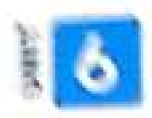
• **product [n]** مُنتَج (مفرد منتجات) / نِتاج
- Milk is one of our farm products.

• **production [n]** (عملية) الإنتاج
- Food production is necessary to feed the ever-growing population.
- There's a drop in milk production.

• **productivity [n]** الإنتاجية/العائد
- Good work environment raises the productivity of workers.

• **productive [adj]** مُثمِر - مُفيد
- Good work environment makes workers more productive.

• **productive [adj]** إنتاجى/له علاقة بالإنتاج (بهذا المعنى تُستخدم فقط قبل اسم)
- We have 350 productive employees who are actually involved in the production process. (NOT: employees who are productive)



vary

- **vary (ied) (in) (v)** يتنوع - يُنوِّع (في)
  - Teachers must vary their teaching methods. يُنوِّع
  - The flowers in the park vary in size and colour. يختلف / يتنوع
- **variety (in) (n)** تنوُّع - نوع
  - Variety in style attracts readers. تنوُّع
  - This forest has 300 varieties of birds. أنواع
- **variable (in) (adj)** متنوع / متغير / قابل للتغيير
  - In the Red Sea, fish is variable in size and colour.
- **various (adj)** عديد / متعدد / مختلف
  - This jacket is available in various sizes.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

تنويه: التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Led lights are energy ....
   a. sufficient b. efficient c. aware d. significant
2. They .... the losses resulting from coronavirus pandemic at 4 trillion dollars.
   a. varied b. raised c. declined d. assessed
3. My grandfather was a simple man who was the .... of the simplicity of life in the countryside.
   a. queue b. equipment c. instrument d. product
4. This is a highly .... I mean a method relating to the production.
   a. method productive b. productive method
   c. productively method d. method productively
5. This applicant has been assessed .... lacking experience.
   a. of b. at c. as d. by

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	b	- التعبير (energy efficient) يعنى (ذو كفاءة عالية في استهلاك الطاقة/ موفر للطاقة).
2.	d	- التعبير (assess ... at) يعني (يُقدِر... بـ).
3.	d	- التعبير (product of simplicity of life ...) يعنى (ابن بيئته البسيطة).
4.	b	- الصفة (productive) بمعنى (إنتاجى) تُستخدَم قبل الإسم فقط.
5.	c	- التعبير (be assessed as) يعنى (يتم تقييمه على أنه).

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

A report on a recent[1] study into productivity amongst[2] students

In our research study, we assessed[3] the productivity[4] levels[5] of sixteen to eighteen-year-old students. The aim[6] was to find out which situations led[7] to an increase[8] in the students' productivity levels while they are studying. We chose a group of 250 students and asked them to keep a diary[9] over a six-month period. In these diaries they wrote down[10] how much time they spent studying every day and what they achieved.

At the start of the study, we asked all the students to make a change [11] to their study habits[12]. We wanted to find out[13] what effect [14] this change would have on the students' productivity. We repeated this process[15] at the start of every month for the rest of the study to look at [16] the effects of varying [17] study habits.

Our analysis[18] of the students' diaries resulted in[19] some interesting conclusions[20]. We noticed that most students' productivity levels increased significantly[21] when they got up earlier to study before school. This was even true for students who had said they weren't very efficient[22] when they studied early in the morning.

On the other hand, most students' productivity levels declined [23] significantly when they regularly studied until[24] late into the evening. Another interesting finding[25] was that studying with other students had a very positive[26] effect on some students' productivity levels, but a very negative[27] effect on other students' productivity levels.

In conclusion, we can state[28] that studying in the morning seems to help most students to become more productive[29], but the effects of other factors[30], like whether or not students study alone [31], vary, depending on[32] the individual[33].

(58 page 64)

Check Vocabulary

(1) حديث
(2) بين
(3) يُقيِّم
(4) الإنتاجية
(5) مستوى
(6) الهدف
(7) يؤدي إلى
(8) زيادة
(9) مُفكِّرة يوميات
(10) يُدوِّن/يُسجِّل
(11) تغيير
(12) عادات
(13) يكتشف
(14) أثر – نتيجة
(15) عملية
(16) يفحص – يُحلِّل
(17) يتنوَّع – يتغيَّر
(18) تحليل
(19) يكشف عن – يُخلُص إلى
(20) استنتاج
(21) بشكل ملحوظ
(22) كفء
(23) ينخفض بشدة – ينهار
(24) حتى/لغاية
(25) اكتشاف – نتيجة
(26) إيجابي
(27) سلبي
(28) يذكر- يقول
(29) مُثمر - مُنتج
(30) عوامل
(31) بمفرده
(32) حسب – استناداً إلى
(33) الفرد

(WB page 38)

Sherif : You said last week your revision was going slowly. Are you getting more done now ?

Hisham : To be honest, my progress is going well this week. My dad will get some changes done to my room to help me raise my efficiency.

Sherif : Really ? Wow ! What sort of changes ?

Hisham : Well, he's going to put a desk under my window. The desk will be big enough for two people, so I can study with friends. Do you want to come over on Saturday and we can study together ?

Sherif : That sounds great. We need to get our English project done and then we can revise for Science.

Hisham : Great. I usually get a lot more work done when I study with friends. What time do you want come ?

Sherif : Well, I prefer to study in the morning. I got a lot of done when I studied yesterday morning. How about 9 o'clock ?

Hisham : Great, see you then.

Things to avoid when studying, to help productivity

(WB page 39)



Check Vocabulary

(1) يُسوِّف/يُماطِل
(2) شائع / منتشر
(3) خطأ
(4) التسويف/المماطلة
(5) يؤخِّر - يؤجِّل
(6) يبحث عن
(7) عذر
(8) يُرتِّب
(9) يتبع

1. Don't procrastinate[1]

There is one common[2] error[3] which stops students from being productive: procrastination[4]. Procrastination is when we delay[5] doing something important.

Students often look for[6] an excuse[7] to do other things, such as tidy[8] their bedrooms, when they should be studying. Make a study plan and then make yourself follow[9] it!

2. Don't study all night

Another bad habit that some students have is studying all night. (Sometimes this is because they have been procrastinating[10] all day!) Studying at night instead of sleeping does not allow[11] the body and brain[12] to rest[13]. It's important to switch off [14] to study effectively [15] the next day.

3. Put the phone away

Some teachers allow students to keep their phones with them in class. But students shouldn't let themselves be distracted[16] by their phones. Even better[17], hand[18] it to the teacher at the beginning of the class – they will let you have it back at the end !

(10) يماطل - يُسوِّف
(11) يسمح - يُمكِّن
(12) المخ
(13) يستريح
(14) يستريح (يفصل)
(15) بفاعلية
(16) يتشتت
(17) والأفضل من ذلك
(18) يُسلِّم (شيءًا) باليد

2 Listening Texts

How to make progress[1] with homework

(SB page 62)

Eman : I try hard to finish my homework on time[2], but I can never get it all done. After just a few minutes my productivity levels start to decline[3] and I start looking at my phone.

Amany : It sounds like you need to raise[4] your productivity so you can get more homework done.

Eman : So I need to become more productive?

Amany : Yes, exactly[5]. You need to do good work, but get it done faster by increasing your efficiency. First, assess[6] when and where you find it easiest to work. You could try to vary the time and place where you work and see what happens at different times[7] and in different places.

Eman : That's a good idea. I'll try doing that and hopefully[8] I'll soon be making more progress with my homework.

Check Vocabulary

(1) تقدُّم/تحسُّن
(2) في الوقت المُحدَّد
(3) ينخفض - ينهار
(4) يرفع
(5) بالضبط
(6) يُقيِّم
(7) في أوقات مُختلفة
(8) على أمل/ من المُنتظر

(SB page 63)

Productivity means managing[1] your study[2] or work time so that you get all your work done in the time you have, but also doing that work well.

When people ask me for tips[3] about how to be productive, the first thing I tell them is that everyone's different, so different things will help different people. Let's start with the place where you work. It's a good idea to try out different places and assess[4] where you can concentrate[5] the best and get the most work done. For example, going to a café to work or study might help some people to make faster progress[6], but it may make it harder for other people to concentrate and they'll get less work done. You need to find the best place for you.

The same is true for[7] the time of day you study. Some people are 'early birds' and their efficiency tends[8] to be higher in the morning. Whereas[9] other people are 'night owls[10]' who are most productive in the evening. Try working at different times of day and find out which time of day is best for you. Then make sure that you always work or study at that time.

Whatever[11] type of person you are, your productivity levels will decline when you try to do several different tasks[12] at the same time, or you quickly move from one task to another. So that's definitely[13] something to avoid[14] if you want to raise your productivity levels. Instead[15], you should complete one task and then move on to[16] the next.

Stress[17] and feeling worried also make us less productive[18]. Assess how you're feeling before you sit down to work. If you are experiencing[19] stress or feeling worried, try to relax[20] by doing exercise or maybe writing your worries down[21] so you stop thinking about them. This should make it easier for you to concentrate on your work rather than[22] other things that are happening in your life and therefore[23] increase your productivity levels.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يُدير/يستغل
(2) دراسة
(3) نصائح
(4) يقيم/يحدد
(5) يُركز
(6) يحقق تقدم أسرع
(7) يصدق علي
(8) يميل
(9) بينما
(10) بومة
(11) مهما يكون
(12) مهام
(13) من المؤكد
(14) يتجنب/يتحاشي
(15) بدلاً من ذلك
(16) ينتقل إلي
(17) الضغط/الإجهاد
(18) مُنتج
(19) يواجه/يعاني من
(20) يسترخي
(21) تُدون أسباب قلقك
(22) بدلاً من
(23) لذلك/ ومن ثَم

(58 page 65)

Woman 1 : Do you think you would get the same results[(1)] with younger students?

Researcher : Hmm, good question. We're actually[(2)] going to let[(3)] younger students take part in[(4)] our next study. And I would expect that we'll see similar[(5)] results. By which I mean: some students will become more productive in response[(6)] to the changes[(7)] we make, and others won't.



Man : Did you have any situations[(8)] where a student really didn't want to make the changes[(9)] that you asked them to make?

Researcher : Well, we definitely didn't want to make anyone study in a specific[(10)] way. That isn't what it's all about and it probably isn't going to work. Fortunately[(11)], all the students who took part were happy to make the changes we suggested. In fact, sometimes it was difficult to stop them from continuing with the change when we needed to move on to the next one.

Woman 2 : I wanted to know if the students in the study allowed you to share[(12)] their diaries[(13)] with other researchers[(14)].

Researcher : Oh no, we agreed to keep all of that information within our research team. We saw that as private[(15)] information and we're just sharing our analysis[(16)] of it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) نتيجة
(2) في الواقع
(3) يسمح لـ/يدع
(4) يشارك في
(5) مُشابه
(6) استجابة
(7) التغيُّر
(8) موقف
(9) يُحدِث تغييرات
(10) مُحدَّد
(11) لحُسن الحظ
(12) يشارك
(13) مذكرات شخصية
(14) باحث
(15) شخصي/خاص
(16) تحليل

Part IV Language

تنويه: تم تقسيم القواعد اللغوية علي دروس الوحدة ليتمكن الطالب من إتقانها.

Causative Verbs : Part 1 (make - let / allow - stop)

1 make يجعل / يُجبر

- يُستخدَم الفعل (make) بمعني (يجعل/يُجبِر) في الصيغة السببية في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

- subj. فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + inf. المصدر.

- Mr Mohammed made the students work hard. (NOT: to work)
- Mum makes me do the shopping. (NOT: to do).

- وفي المبني للمجهول تكون الصيغة كما يلي:

- obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + made + to + inf. المصدر

- The students were made to work hard (by Mr Mohammed).
- I am made to do the shopping (by mum).

- الفعل (make) هو الذي يُحدد زمن الجملة:

- Leen makes Rokaya do the cooking. (مضارع بسيط معلوم)
- Rokaya is made to do the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع بسيط مجهول)
- Leen made Rokaya do the cooking. (ماضي بسيط معلوم)
- Rokaya was made to do the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي بسيط مجهول)
- Leen is making Rokaya do the cooking. (مضارع مستمر معلوم)
- Rokaya is being made to do the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع مستمر مجهول)
- Leen was making Rokaya do the cooking. (ماضي مستمر معلوم)
- Rokaya was being made to do the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي مستمر مجهول)
- Leen has made Rokaya do the cooking. (مضارع تام معلوم)
- Rokaya has been made to do the cooking (by Leen). (مضارع تام مجهول)
- Leen had made Rokaya do the cooking. (ماضي تام معلوم)
- Rokaya had been made to do the cooking (by Leen). (ماضي تام مجهول)
- Leen will make Rokaya do the cooking. (مستقبل بسيط معلوم)
- Rokaya will be made to do the cooking (by Leen). (مستقبل بسيط مجهول)

٤ تتحول ضمائر المفعول إلى ضمائر فاعل عند استخدامها في بداية الجملة المبنية للمجهول والعكس بالنسبة لضمير الفاعل :



لاحظ ذلك في المثال التالي :

- He made me wait for an hour. (معلوم)
- I was made to wait for an hour (by him). (مجهول)

٥ لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبنى للمعلوم:

- Subj. فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + inf. المصدر
- Subj. فاعل + force (حسب الزمن) يُجبر + obj. مفعول + to + inf. المصدر
- The manager made the employees do extra hours.
- The manager forced the employees to do extra hours.

٦ لاحظ الصيغة التالية في المبنى للمجهول:

- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + made + to + inf. المصدر
- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + forced + to + inf. المصدر
- The employees were made to do extra hours.
- The employees were forced to do extra hours.

٧ لاحظ الصيغة التالية:

- Subj. فاعل + make (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة
- The good news has made us happy.

2 let - allow

يسمح / يدع

١ يُستخدَم الفعلين (let/allow) بمعني (يسمح/يدع) في الصيغة السببية في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

- Subj. فاعل + let (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + inf. المصدر
- Subj. فاعل + allowed (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + to + inf. المصدر
- Mr father let me go out with my friends. (NOT: to go)
- Mr father allowed me to go out with my friends. (NOT: go)
- Omar lets the children play in the garden. (NOT: to play)
- Omar allows the children to play in the garden. (NOT: play)

❶ في المبني للمجهول يُستخدم الفعل (allow) فقط وليس (let):

- Obj. مفعول+ be (حسب الزمن) + allowed + to + inf. المصدر
- I was allowed to go out with my friends (by my father). (NOT: was let)
- The children are allowed to play in the garden (by Omar). (NOT: are let)

❷ لاحظ استخدام (let) مع الضمائر المنعكسة في الصيغة التالية:

- ... let + myself/himself/herself/itself/yourself/yourselves/ ourselves/themselves + be + p.p. ...
- He let himself be tricked by a stranger.
- Don't let yourselves be laughed at.
- وفي حالة وجود فعل لازم (لا يأخذ مفعول) بعد الضمير المنعكس نستخدم (inf.) وليس (be + p.p.):
- She let herself fall off her bike. (NOT: be fallen)

❸ في حالة وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدهما (to + inf.):

- ... allow + obj. + to + inf.
- Mr Ayman doesn't allow anyone to use the office laptop.
- وفي حالة عدم وجود مفعول بعد (allow) يأتي بعدها (inf. + ing) في المبني للمعلوم:
- Mr Ayman doesn't allow using the office laptop.

❹ لاحظ الصيغ التالية:

- ... allow + obj. + noun
- The law allows citizens responsible freedom.
- ... allow + noun
- The law allows responsible freedom.

3 stop ... from

يمنع ... من

❶ يُستخدم الفعل (stop) بمعني (يمنع/يوقف) في المبني للمعلوم كما يلي:

- Subj. فاعل + stop (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) ...
- Subj. فاعل + stop (حسب الزمن) + obj. مفعول + (inf. + ing) ...
- Mr Ali has stopped us from making noise.
- Mr Ali has stopped us making noise.

٢ يُستخدَم الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع/يوقف) في المبني للمجهول كما يلي:

- Obj. مفعول + be (حسب الزمن) + stopped + from + (inf. + ing) ...
- We have been stopped from making noise (by Mr Ali).

General Exercise On Language ● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My mother usually lets my elder sister .... lunch when she is away. *(LM)*
   a. to make b. making c. makes d. make
2. Am I .... to use this dictionary ? *(LM)*
   a. allowed b. making c. aimed d. allowing
3. Unfortunately, the bad weather .... us .... out. *(LM)*
   a. made / to go b. allowed / to go
   c. stopped / from going d. prevented/ to go
4. I let my friends use my mobile phone. This means that I .... them to use it. *(LM)*
   a. made b. allowed c. forced d. suggested
5. Mr Ashraf made us .... the essay again.
   a. write b. writing c. to write d. be written
6. We were made .... the essay again.
   a. write b. writing c. to write d. be written
7. Can you tell me what has made .... get so nervous?
   a. herself b. she c. hers d. her
8. I .... happy when I heard about your success.
   a. made b. was made c. allowed d. was allowed
9. We are .... to follow the law.
   a. made b. forced c. a & b d. let
10. The officer forced .... to put his gun down and raise his hands.
    a. he b. him c. his d. himself
11. Never .... a little child to go out on their own.
    a. let b. make c. allow d. a & b
12. Never .... a little child go out on their own.
    a. let b. make c. allow d. a & b

13. Areej let me .... her marker.
a. use b. to use c. be used d. using

14. I .... out.
a. allowed to go b. was allowed to go
c. let to go d. was let to go

15. I don't allow others .... my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden

16. I don't let others .... my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden

17. I don't allow .... my bike.
a. to ride b. ride c. riding d. to be ridden

18. You are .... the right to vote.
a. let b. made c. stopped d. allowed

19. They .... personal calls at work.
a. aren't allowed b. aren't let c. let d. are made

20. I stopped the children .... on the grass.
a. from walking b. walking c. a & b d. to walk

21. I .... Salma making noise.
a. let b. stopped c. made d. b & c

22. I made her tell the truth. - .... was made to tell the truth.
a. She b. Her c. I d. Me

23. I let them have a break. - They were .... have a break.
a. let b. made c. allowed d. allowed to

24. She makes us laugh. - .... are made to laugh.
a. She b. Her c. We d. Us

25. I will allow you to leave. - I will .... you leave.
a. allow b. let c. stop d. a & b

*راجع أفكارك مع ملحمة.

Feedback Grammar :

26. Sorrowfully, no one does their task well, ... ?
a. do they b. don't they c. does he d. doesn't he

27. She was tired, so she returned .... early.
a. to home b. home c. the home d. a home

28. He .... silly mistakes, does he ?
a. never made b. has c. never makes d. makes

LESSONS 3 & 4

SB pages 66 & 67 WB pages 40 & 41



Part I Vocabulary & Definitions

تنويه
- اختبر مدى اتقانك للمفردات الرئيسية في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.
- المفردات اللغوية باللون الأحمر هي المفردات الأكثر اهمية.

1 Important Vocabulary

absolutely(adv)	تماماً	improve(d) (v)	يُحسِّن
active(adj)	نَشِط/نشيط	go for (phr.v)	يؤيد
alternative(n/adj)	بديل	logic(n)	مَنطِق
analyse(d) (v)	يُحلل	massive(adj)	ضخم/هائل
benefit(n)	فائدة	mentally(adv)	ذهنياً/عقلياً
blog(ged) (v/n)	يقوم بالتدوين - مُدوَّنة	option(n)	خيار/اختيار
brainstorm(ed) (v)	يستثير الفكر - يعصف ذهنياً	organised(adj)	مُنظم
		overall(adv)	في المجمل/ككل
carry(ied) on (phr. v)	يستمر في	performance(n)	أداء
chaos(n)	الفوضي	period(n)	فترة
coach(n)	مُدرِّب	pillow(n)	وسادة
come round to(phr.v)	يغير رأيه الي	point(n)	فكرة / وجهة نظر - نقطة
cycling(n)	ركوب الدراجات	plug(n)	سدادة/مقبس
cyclist(n)	دَرَّاج	priority(n)	أولوية
definitely(adv)	بالتأكيد	refresh(ed) (v)	يُنعش/يجدد نشاط
depression(n)	اكتئاب	reflect(ed) (n)	يمعن التفكير
decide on(phr.v)	يختار	reflection(n)	إمعان التفكير
diet(n)	نظام غذائي	set – set - set (v)	يضبط
difference(n)	اختلاف/فرق	strategy(n)	خطة/سياسة (استراتيجية)
disturb(ed) (n)	يزعج		
drawback(n)	سلبية	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
evaluate(d) (v)	يُقيِّم	take action	يتعرف
evidence(n)	دليل	task(n)	مهمة
expand(ed) (n)	يفسر / يسهب في	tough(adj)	صارم / صعب
focused(adj)	في حالة تركيز	unpleasant(adj)	غير سار
forward(adj.)	مسبق / مقدماً	waste(n)	تضييع/إهدار
grades(n)	علامات/درجات	well - being(n)	رفاهية
impact(n)	أثر - انطباع	world record(n)	رقم قياسي عالمي
importance(n)	أهمية		

2 Definitions تعريفات

analyse (d)(v) يُحلل	to examine يفحص or think about something carefully, in order to understand it
blog (ged)(v) يقوم بالتدوين	to keep a blog; مُدوّنة to write something in a blog
brainstorm (ed)(v) يستثير الفِكر- يعصف ذهنياً	to have a discussion or meeting with other people at work, to suggest a lot of ideas for an activity or for solving a problem
carry (ied) on (phr. v) يستمر في	to continue doing something
evaluate (d) (v) يُقيّم	to judge يحكم how good, useful, or successful something is
evidence (n) دليل	facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true
priority (n) أولوية	the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else
strategy (n) خطة/سياسة (استراتيجية)	a planned series سلسلة of actions for achieving something

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1 Important Vocabulary

1. When you make a change to the way you work, you need to .... its advantages and disadvantages first. (LM)
   a. concentrate b. fabricate c. evaluate d. regulate
2. Pollution has a serious impact on the weather. Impact here is similar in meaning to .... (LM)
   a. importance b. influence c. affect d. cause
3. I usually have a thirty-minute walk every day; sport has a .... effect on health. (LM)
   a. negative b. positive c. terrible d. rare

4. What are the pros and .... of social networking websites ? *(LM)*

a. canes b. cans c. coins d. cons

5. How do you usually............ ideas amongst a group of friends to get more information about something? *(LM)*

a. rise b. mind c. brainstorm d. storm

6. I tried .... my study time into twenty-minute periods and took breaks between them. *(LM)*

a. continuing b. cutting c. dividing d. leaving

7. Well done, Rokaya! .... hard work.

a. Brainstorm b. Carry on c. Waste d. Suppose

8. My brother is a/an .... member of a charity. He exerts great efforts.

a. unpleasant b. frustrated c. active d. massive

9. I understand the .... of taking breaks. It raises productivity.

a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic

10. I need support with the .... I was asked to do.

a. evidence b. strategy c. importance d. task

11. Stress affects your .... at work. It reduces your productivity.

a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative

12. Taking breaks while working is necessary to .... you.

a. blog b. evaluate c. refresh d. analyse

13. I have no .... but to follow the rules. I've no choice.

a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic

14. I lost my money and I had to borrow. It was a/an .... situation.

a. unpleasant b. focused c. active d. massive

15. No one can deny the .... of education to the progress of nations.

a. evidence b. strategy c. importance d. task

16. Low productivity is a/an .... of being overworked.

a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative

17. Never .... your time or energy.

a. brainstorm b. carry on c. waste d. suppose

18. I can't tell the .... between the two mobiles. They're exactly the same.

a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic

19. The High Dam is a/an .... work of modern engineering.
 a. unpleasant b. focused c. active d. massive

20. The .... you followed to solve the problem was really effective.
 a. waste b. strategy c. importance d. task

21. Solar energy is a clean .... to fossil fuels.
 a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative

22. It is the first time for me to .... That's why I don't have much likes or comments.
 a. blog b. evaluate c. refresh d. analyse

23. My mother has gone shopping, I ....
 a. brainstorm b. carry on c. waste d. suppose

24. To have a good night's sleep, you need a comfortable ....
 a. difference b. option c. pillow d. logic

25. Your health is a/an .... It is the first thing you need to look after.
 a. drawback b. priority c. performance d. alternative

2 Definitions

26. To .... is to judge how good, useful, or successful something is.
 a. blog b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm

27. To .... is to keep a blog; to write something in a blog.
 a. blog b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm

28. To .... is to examine or think about something carefully, in order to understand it.
 a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm

29. To .... is to continue doing something.
 a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm

30. .... means facts or signs that show clearly that something exists or is true.
 a. Blog b. Priority c. Evidence d. Strategy

31. To .... is to have a discussion or meeting with other people at work, to suggest a lot of ideas for an activity or for solving a problem.
 a. analyse b. carry on c. evaluate d. brainstorm

32. A/An .... is the thing that you think is most important and that needs attention before anything else.
 a. blog b. priority c. evidence d. strategy

Part II Vocabulary Study

تنويه ساعد مُعلمك على الارتقاء بمستواك عن طريق استذكار هذا الجزء مُسبقاً بشكل جيد.

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

brainstorm	ideas يقوم بالعصف الذهني للأفكار	**get**	better organised يُصبح أكثر تنظيماً
do	a task يؤدي مهمة	**give**	evidence يُقدِّم الدليل/يبرهن
have	a break يأخذ استراحة	**reach**	a conclusion يصل لإستنتاج
make	sure يتيقَّن	**set**	an alarm يضبط المنبه
	a big difference يُحدِث فرقاً كبيراً	**take**	a break يأخذ استراحة
	changes to يُحدِث تغييرات في	**use**	a strategy يستخدم خطة (استراتيجية)

Mini Test 1 Collocations

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. How many tasks have you .... so far?
   a. told b. reached c. brainstormed d. done
2. It is recommended that you .... a break between work hours.
   a. reach b. make c. take d. set
3. Your time will .... better organized if you work to a plan.
   a. get b. give c. brainstorm d. do
4. After two hours of discussion, we finally .... a conclusion.
   a. reached b. did c. took d. set
5. The ideas we have .... are all productive.
   a. got b. given c. brainstormed d. done
6. My best friends .... a big difference in my life.
   a. reach b. make c. take d. set
7. You need to .... evidence to back up what you say.
   a. get b. give c. brainstorm d. do
8. I got up late since I had forgotten to .... the alarm.
   a. reach b. make c. take d. set

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a positive impact on	أثر إيجابي على	mentally active	نشط ذهنياً
at all	على الإطلاق	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
brainstorming session	جلسة عصف ذهني	put ... into practice	يُطبّق / يُدخِل حيّز التنفيذ
eat healthily	يأكل بشكل صحي	revise for exams	يراجع للإمتحانات
feel less stressed about	يشعر بتوتر أقل من	set a world record	يُسجّل رقماً قياسياً عالمياً
looking back	بالعودة للوراء.	sleeping habits	عادات النوم

3 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يضيف ... إلي	improve ... by	يُحسّن ... بنسبة
carry on = go on/continue	يستمر في	increase by	يزداد بنسبة
focus on	يركز على	take part in	يشارك في
go with	يتلازم مع	wake up	يستيقظ

Mini Test 2 Expressions, Prepositions & Idioms

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "You are doing well," my coach said. "I'm sure you will carry .... achieving more success !" (LM)
   a. in b. on c. of d. at
2. The employment rate مُعدّل التوظيف has increased .... 3%.
   a. in b. for c. by d. from
3. .... back, I realize how hard my parents tried to bring me up.
   a. Look b. Looking c. Looked d. To look
4. "She carried on looking after her parents." The phrasal verb 'carried on' here means ....
   a. went on b. continued c. interrupted d. a & b
5. I look forward to taking .... the final match.
   a. out b. after c. part in d. place
6. To raise your productivity, keep focused .... the task in hand.
   a. on b. to c. with d. by
7. I don't like grilled fish .... all.
   a. from b. with c. for d. at
8. Success goes .... working hard.
   a. up b. with c. down d. out
9. It matters how you will put this plan ....
   a. into practice b. into practise c. away d. away from

Part III Reading & Listening

1 Reading Texts

Trying to raise my productivity levels: Week 1

(SB page 67)



I tried dividing my study time into twenty-five-minute periods (1) and taking breaks between them. I can understand the logic (2) of doing this and I'm sure it helps some people to concentrate better because they only have to concentrate for short periods.

However, the big drawback (3) for me was that I kept looking at the time to see when it was time to have a break. Looking back, I suppose (4) I should have set (5) an alarm (6) instead so I didn't have to do that and then it might have been more helpful for me.

I decided to always do the task (7) that I found the most difficult first and, of course, this was quite hard to do at first because it isn't what you naturally want to do. However, I kept going with it and after a few days, I noticed how it was helping me to manage (8) my time better and meant that I made a better job of the unpleasant (9) tasks than I did before. This definitely (10) had a positive impact on my productivity.

I liked the idea of making a study plan because I thought it would help me to get better organised(11). It definitely helped me to feel less stressed about what I needed to do because I wrote down exactly what I had to do in a list and that made it seem easier to get everything done. I was surprised by what a big difference (12) the study plan made. I'm definitely going to carry on (13) making study plans.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فترة
(2) منطق
(3) سلبية
(4) يفترض
(5) يضبط
(6) منبه
(7) مهمة
(8) يدير
(9) غير سار
(10) بالتأكيد
(11) منظم
(12) اختلاف/فرق
(13) يستمر في

Huge benefits[1] from small changes

(WB page 41)



The last time I blogged,[2] I was worried about my exams. Well, you won't believe what happened! A teacher told me about a coach[3] called David Brailsford. He helped the British Olympic cycling[4] team set 7 world records[5] in the 2012 London Olympics. But how did this coach change their performance[6]? Well, he analysed[7] absolutely[8] everything and improved[9] each thing by 1%. He made lots of small changes to the cyclists'[10] clothes, their diet[11] and even their pillows[12]! It had a very positive impact[13] on their productivity.

So, I thought I'd do the same to help me study more effectively. I looked into the following areas:



- when I concentrate best
- for how long I can concentrate before I need a break
- where I concentrate best
- how I sleep best
- what food makes me feel my best

At first, I thought it was a waste[14] of time but I kept going with it. I realised I was more mentally[15] active[16] in the morning and after 6 pm so that's when I studied the most difficult subjects. I also reduced the amount I ate for dinner and bought some ear plugs[17] to avoid any outside noise. I now wake up[18] feeling really refreshed[19] and ready to go.

Did it work? Well, I was surprised by what a big difference this strategy[20] made. In maths and history, my worst subjects, I got the second highest marks[21] in the class and my grades[22] in all my other subjects increased by 48% in just one month! Looking back, I should have done this before! Making a 1 % change in different things made a massive[23] difference for me and I'm sure it'll help you too! So, why not try it yourself?

Adam

Check Vocabulary

(1) فائدة
(2) يقوم بالتدوين
(3) مُدرّب
(4) ركوب الدراجات
(5) رقم قياسي عالمي
(6) أداء
(7) يُحلل
(8) تماماً
(9) يُحسّن
(10) درّاج
(11) نظام غذائي
(12) وسادة
(13) أثر - انطباع
(14) تضييع/إهدار
(15) ذهنياً/عقلياً
(16) نشط/نشيط
(17) سدّادة/مقبس
(18) يستيقظ
(19) منتعش
(20) استراتيجية
(21) درجات
(22) علامات/درجات
(23) ضخم/هائل

2 Listening Texts

(SB page 66)

Zeinab : OK, we're all here now and we have everything we need. So, we need to come up with[1] ideas for how we can welcome[2] new students to our school and make them feel comfortable[3] here. Does anyone already have any ideas they want to share?

Nabila : I was thinking that we could put every new student together with[4] a student who's already here. That student could show the new student and be there to help them when they need it.

Zeinab : That sounds like[5] a nice idea. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions[6], Reem?

Reem : Sure, yes. I was just thinking how that would work. But, I think it could work well.

Nabila : Well, it might lead to[7] a new student spending a lot of time with just one other student, but at least the new student will get a lot of support[8].

Reem : Yes, exactly and that's our priority[9].

Zeinab : Great. So, do we all agree that this could be a good solution?

Nabila : Well, I clearly[10] do!

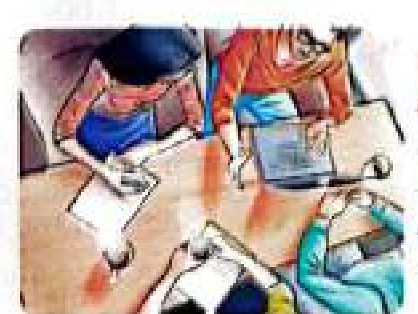
Reem : Yes, I think it's a good idea too. Let's add it to our options[11].

Check Vocabulary

(1) يأتي بـ/يستنبط
(2) يرحب بـ
(3) مُستريح
(4) سوياً مع
(5) يبدو كأنه
(6) حلّ
(7) يؤدي إلى
(8) دعم/مساندة
(9) أولوية
(10) بوضوح/بشكل صريح
(11) خيار/بديل

(WB page 40)

Sami : Ok, Rami, do you want to summarise[1] what we have so far[2] ?



Rami : OK, we have two ideas so far. One is close your bedroom door and ask your family not to disturb[3] you and the other one, which Adel mentioned[4], is to leave your phone in another room.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يُلخِّص
(2) حتى الآن
(3) يزعج
(4) يذكر

Does anyone have any other ideas they want to share?

Sami : How about making a study plan[5] ? It might lead to using some valuable[6] study time but at least you have things clearly organised[7] and know when you should take a break[8] and what subjects you need to concentrate more on. What do you think, Adel ?

Adel : That's a good idea. Let's add it to our options. Another way to be more productive when revising for exams is to revise with a friend.

Rami : Yes, but don't you think that might lead to you chatting[9] about other things?

Adel : Perhaps. But at least it makes the revision more interesting, and you can test[10] one another too.

Sami : I see your point[11]. It could be useful. Would you be happy for us to add that to our possible solutions?

Adel : Yes, of course. Can you think of other ideas?

Rami : I think it's important to eat healthily and practise self-care[12] when we're stressed[13] about studying.

Sami : Really? Can you expand[14] on that?

Rami : Well, revising for exams can be really stressful[15]. When we're stressed, we produce a hormone[16] called cortisol[17] in our bodies. If we have too much in our bodies for a long time, it can lead to heart problems, depression[18] and anxiety[19] which is not good for our well-being[20] at all.

Adel : Wow! Where did you hear that?

Rami : My mum's a doctor. She told me about it when she made me create a study plan[21] because she said good organisation[22] and forward[23] planning is the best way to avoid negative[24] stress. Organising ourselves well should be a priority because it helps to reduce stress.

(5) يُعِد خطة استذكار
(6) قيِّم
(7) مُنظَّم
(8) يأخذ استراحة
(9) يدردش/يتحدث
(10) يختبر
(11) فكرة
(12) يمارس العناية بالنفس
(13) مضغوط
(14) يُفسِّر / يُسهِب في
(15) ضاغط/مُجهِد
(16) هرمون
(17) كورتيزول
(18) اكتئاب
(19) القلق
(20) رفاهية
(21) يُعِد خطة استذكار
(22) التنظيم
(23) مُسبَق/مقدماً
(24) سلبي

Adel : Interesting point. So, we have five solutions, but we need to decide on[25] which is the most efficient way to be more productive when revising for exams. What do you think Sami ?

Sami : That's a tough[26] one. I'm between 'making a study plan' and 'leaving your phone in a different room'. What about you Rami?

Rami: Yes, both ideas are good. But speaking from experience[27], I'd go for[28] the study plan as the most effective. How about you Adel?

Adel : At first, I thought that eating healthily was the most efficient idea but after hearing what Rami's mum said, I've come round to[29] that idea too.

Sami : So, do we all agree that this is the best option?

Rami: Yes, I think so.

Adel : Yes, I agree.

(25) يختار
(26) صارم/صعب
(27) من واقع الخبرة أقول
(28) يؤيد
(29) يغير رأيه إلى

3 Video Script

(SB page 67)

Reflection [1] is something that more and more people are talking about today. We're told that it will help us to improve our performance [2] – either at school or in the workplace. But a lot of us aren't sure exactly what reflection is.

The simplest definition of reflection is that it's careful thought[3]. It involves [4] thinking about what has happened to you and analysing your actions [5] and the beliefs [6] that led to them in a lot of detail [7]. When you reflect [8], your brain can take a break from the chaos [9] of normal life, organise the experiences you have had and find some meaning in them. Reflection is, therefore, a learning process [10] that lets you grow and develop as a person.

And the evidence [11] suggests that reflection is a learning process that improves our quality of life. For example, a study of people travelling to work in the UK, found that the commuters [12] who used their journey

Check Vocabulary

(1) إعمال التفكير
(2) أداء
(3) تفكير
(4) يتضمن
(5) أفعال
(6) معتقدات
(7) تفصيل
(8) يُمعن التفكير
(9) الفوضى
(10) عملية
(11) دليل
(12) مسافرين للعمل

to work to think about their day and plan the next day were happier, more productive and less burned out than those who didn't.

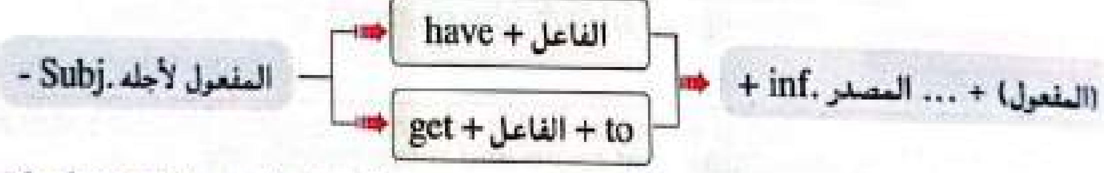
So, why do people often avoid [13] reflection? Some people find it difficult to think back to and analyse to what they've done, and others think it's better to just take action [14] instead. Whatever your opinion about reflection, it might be worth [15] at least giving it a try [16] and finding out if it can make you happier and more productive.

(13) يتجنب
(14) يتصرف
(15) يستحق
(16) يقوم بمحاولة

Part IV Language

Causative form صيغة المفعول لأجله (المُسبب)

- تُستخدم صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) لتعني أن الفاعل أقنع أو جعل شخصاً آخر يقوم بالفعل.
- نستخدم في هذه الصيغة الفعلين (have / get) حسب الزمن
- وتتكون هذه الصيغة في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:



- I had my sister water the flowers. (جعلت أختى تروى الزهور لأجلى)
- I got my sister to water the flowers. (أقنعت أختى أن تروى الزهور لأجلى)

- وتتكون هذه الصيغة فى المبنى للمجهول كالتالى :



- I had / got the flowers watered (by my sister). (لقد تم ريّ الزهور لى)

Mini Test Apply

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mum sometimes has Rodayna .... the cooking.
   a. do b. to do c. done d. a & b
2. Mum sometimes gets Rodayna .... the cooking.
   a. do b. to do c. done d. a & b

3. Mum sometimes has the cooking .... by Rodayna.
a. do b. to do c. done d. a & b

4. I .... my car serviced regularly.
a. have b. let c. get d. a & c

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 يمكن وضع الفاعل بعد (by) في الصيغة المبنية للمجهول :

- Marwa gets the babies looked after by her mother.

2 تُستخدم ضمائر المفعول وليس ضمائر الفاعل بعد (have / get) في هذه الصيغة :

- Walid had me feed the birds. (NOT: had I ...)
- I'm worried about my eyes. I get them checked regularly. (NOT: get they ...)

3 يتم النفي وتكوين السؤال حسب زمن (have / get):

- Mum doesn't have lunch prepared. (NOT: hasn't lunch ...)
- Did you have anyone help you? (NOT : Had you ...)

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

1 في المبني للمعلوم يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بدلاً من (inf. / to + inf.) كالتالي:

- Subj. المفعول لأجله + have (حسب الزمن) + agent الفاعل + (inf. + ing) ......
- Subj. المفعول لأجله + get (حسب الزمن) + agent الفاعل + (inf. + ing) ......

- Nada had her friends helping her during the party.
- Nada got her friends helping her during the party.

2 يمكن استخدام الفعل (make / let / help) في المبني للمعلوم كالتالي:

- Subj. + make يجعل / let يسمح + help يساعد + agent الفاعل + inf. ......

- Yara made her sister make some juice for the guests.
- Reem let me use her mobile.
- Amr helped us (to) solve our problems.

3 يمكن استخدام الفعل (allow / permit / require...) بمعنى (يسمح / يتطلب) كالتالي:

- Subj. + allow / permit / require ... + agent الفاعل + to + inf. ......

- Hussein allows / permits / his friends to use his calculator.

General Exercise On Language 

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting Started

1. At first, he insisted on his opinion, but I managed to .... him to change his mind. (LM)
   a. allow b. get c. make d. let
2. Cruel managers usually .... less work done. (LM)
   a. prevent b. allow c. get d. let
3. I went to the dentist's to .... my teeth checked. (LM)
   a. allow b. let c. prepare d. have
4. I was too busy, so I .... my sister .... my room. (LM)
   a. had / to tidy b. allowed / tidy c. made / to tidy d. got / to tidy
5. The boss got the employees .... till late at night. (دور ثان ٢٠١٩)
   a. to work b. be working c. work d. worked
6. I got my hair .... before the wedding. (أزهر ٢٠١٩ - أدبي)
   a. cut b. cuts c. cutting d. to cut
7. My mother has me .... the shopping every week. (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠٢٠)
   a. do b. done c. to do d. had done
8. Dina .... last week. (نموذج الوزارة الثاني ٢٠٢٠)
   a. gets her house to decorate b. has her house decorated
   c. got her house to decorate d. had her house decorated
9. Ali got his credit card .... (نموذج الوزارة الأول ٢٠١٩)
   a. change b. to change c. changing d. changed
10. Wait there and I'll .... someone to help you with those bags. (السودان ٢٠١٩)
    a. have b. get c. let d. make
11. Why don't you have your mobile .... instead of buying a new one?
    a. to fix b. fixing c. fixed d. fix
12. We had a carpenter .... the broken window.
    a. to fix b. to fixing c. fixed d. fix

13. My mother makes me .... up my room on Fridays.
   a. to clean b. clean c. cleaned d. cleaning

14. After I had seen Dr Amr, I ....
   a. didn't have my teeth check b. didn't have my teeth checking
   c. hadn't had my teeth checked d. didn't have my teeth checked

15. My boss allowed me .... time off when my son was ill.
   a. takes b. take c. taken d. to take

16. We had our house .... last year.
   a. paint b. painted c. painting d. to paint

17. She .... that he wouldn't tell anyone.
   a. had him promise b. had him promised
   c. promised to have d. had him to promise

2 Special Cases

18. Adel .... He made it himself. (دور أول ٢٠١٩م)
   a. cooks his dinner b. cooked his dinner
   c. has his dinner cooked d. had his dinner cooked

19. Sometimes, my friend .... me borrow his car.
   a. lets b. allows c. gets d. permits

20. Sama wants us to let her .... her friend's birthday.
   a. attending b. to attend c. attend d. attended

21. Omar was very ill. I got .... to take three days off work.
   a. he b. his c. him d. himself

22. We need to .... our computer checked out for viruses.
   a. make b. have c. let d. allow

23. Zamzam .... her clothes washed. She washes them by herself.
   a. hasn't b. doesn't have c. hadn't d. had never

24. We were angry with Ali. He had .... laughed at by all our colleagues.
   a. ourselves b. we c. ours d. us

25. My manager .... me work overtime every day last week.
   a. got b. made c. allowed d. caused

26. When I was little, my parents always made me .... to school.
   a. walk b. to walk c. walked d. walks

27. .... your meal prepared before you went home?

a. Had you
b. Have you had
c. Had you had
d. Do you have

28. He is very persuasive مقنع . He got .... to join his team.

a. I
b. me
c. mine
d. myself

3 Check your understanding

29. "I paid a carpenter to fix the door." This means ....

a. I made a carpenter pay for fixing the door.
b. I got a carpenter fixed the door.
c. I had a carpenter fixed the door.
d. I got a carpenter to fix the door.

30. "I had my lunch cooked." This means ....

a. I cooked my lunch.
b. someone cooked my lunch for me.
c. I cooked my lunch for someone.
d. I got my lunch cooking.

31. "I made my brother do the shopping" What does this mean?

a. I got my brother to do the shopping.
b. I got my brother to go shopping.
c. I had the shopping done by my brother.
d. a, b & c

32. "I usually do not have anyone clean my room." This means ....

a. I usually have my room cleaned.
b. I usually clean my room.
c. I usually get my room cleaned.
d. I usually get my room to clean.

33. "Sama had someone water the flowers." What does this mean?

a. Sama didn't water the flowers herself.
b. Sama hadn't the flowers watered.
c. Sama didn't get the flowers watered.
d. Sama didn't get the flowers to water.

34. "I wrote the report for Omar after he had told me to." This means ....

a. Omar made I write the report.
b. Omar had me write the report.
c. Omar got I write the report.
d. b & c

35. "Did you ask anyone to help you?" I said, "............"
  a. Did you make anyone to help you?
  b. Had you anyone helped you?
  c. Did you have anyone help you?
  d. a & b

36. "Mum got Leen to set the table for lunch." This means ....
  a. Mum got the table set for lunch by Leen.
  b. Mum had Leen to set the table for lunch.
  c. Mum had Leen setting the table for lunch.
  d. a & c

Advanced Exercise on Language

تنويه : التدريبات التالية يتبعها الإجابة والتوضيح

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Never let yourselves .... into such a trick.
  a. fall b. be fallen c. falling d. to fall
2. He will get us .... on the report.
  a. worked b. work c. working d. to be worked
3. He is funny. He had us all .... during the meal.
  a. laughed b. laughing c. to laugh d. have laughed
4. I've got some of the cleverest students .... for the competition. Many teachers participated in preparing them..
  a. preparing b. prepared c. to prepare d. prepare

No.	Answer & Explanation	الإجابة والتوضيح
1.	a	الفعل (fall) فعل لازم لذلك لا يُبنى للمجهول فنستخدم المصدر ولا يمكن استخدام (be fallen)
2.	c	يمكن استخدام (inf. + ing) بعد (get + obj.)
3.	b	يمكن استخدام (inf.+ing) بعد (have + obj.)
4.	b	في هذا السياق (the cleverest students) مفعول لذلك نستخدم التصريف الثالث (prepared)

LESSONS **5 & 6**

SB pages 68 & 71 WB pages 42 & 43



Part I Chapter 6

تنويه • هذا الجزء خاص بالمفردات والتعبيرات الرئيسية للقصة. لقراءة نص القصة المقررة وللمزيد من المفردات اللغوية والتدريبات نهاية الكتاب.

Key Vocabulary, Idioms & Collocations
المفردات الرئيسية ، التعبيرات الرئيسية والمتلازمات اللفظية

affectionately(adv)	بمَحَبَّة/ بمَوَدَّة	hold on to	يتشبث بـ
anxious(adj)	متوتر/قَلِق	impressed(adj)	مُنبَهِر
at the request of	بناء على طلب	life sentence(n)	سجن مُؤبَّد
boast(ed) (v)	يتباهي/يتفاخر	remarkable(adj)	ملحوظ/بارز
boastfully(adv)	بتفاخر	scar(n)	ندبة(أثر جرح في الجلد)
come back to	يعود إلي		
disappointed(adj)	مُحبَط – خائب الأمل	shiny(adj)	لامع
enthusiastic(adj)	مُتحمِّس	sleeves(n)	أكمام
fortunately(adv)	لحُسن الحظ	surprised(adj)	مُندهش
haunt (ed) (v)	يطارد/يلاحق – يوسوس	wrist(n)	مِعصَم

Exercise On Vocabulary • Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She is .... about the project; she speaks about its benefits all the time. (LM)
   a. kind b. worried c. angry d. enthusiastic
2. He used to talk proudly about his possessions. He .... about how much money he had made. (LM)
   a. complained b. told c. boasted d. beat
3. The prisoner was given a life .... for his crimes. (LM)
   a. insistence b. sentence c. tolerance d. negligence
4. This research was done .... the request of the science teacher. (LM)
   a. from b. at c. in d. for

5. It was .... how the whole class got top marks in their final exam.
a. remarkable b. impressed c. disappointed d. anxious

6. What the criminal did will .... him for his whole life.
a. tend b. boast c. haunt d. procrastinate

7. A new coin is very ....
a. anxious b. disappointed c. impressed d. shiny

8. Mr Ashraf spoke .... to his students while he was saying goodbye. They were near to tears.
a. carelessly b. affectionately c. fortunately d. boastfully

9. I have a .... on my face from an accident.
a. request b. wrist c. sleeve d. scar

10. The mountaineer held .... the rope.
a. at b. on to c. for d. from

Part II Skills

تنويه: المهارات الخاصة بالوحدة تم شرحها متنوعة بالتدريبات في ملحق (Master your skills) كل وحدة على حدة.

Translation

① Choose the best Arabic translation :

1. You'd better do the hard jobs first; the easy ones will undoubtedly take care of themselves.

أ. من الأفضل أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ السهلة سيعتنون بأنفسهم بلا شك.
ب. أنت أفضل من أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ فالسهلة سيعتنون بأنفسهم بلا شك.
جـ. من الأفضل أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ المهام السهلة ستتم من تلقاء نفسها دون شك.
د. من الأفضل أن تقوم بالمهام الصعبة أولاً؛ المهام السهلة ستتم من تلقاء نفسها في شك

2. I get my productivity assessed at regular times to make sure I am on the right route.

أ. أقيّم إنتاجيتي في أوقات منتظمة للتأكد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.
ب. يتم تقييم إنتاجيتي في أوقات منتظمة للتأكد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.
جـ. أحصل على انتاجيتي مقيمة في أوقات منتظمة للتأكد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.
د. يتم تقييم إنتاجيتي في أوقات منتظمة لأصنع التأكيد من أنني على الطريق الصحيح.

3. I can't believe that you really had let yourself be a helpless victim to bad company.

أ. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك تركت نفسك حقًا تكون ضحية عاجزة لرفقة سيئة.

ب. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك سمحت لنفسك حقًا بأن تكون ضحية عاجزة لشركة سيئة.

جـ. لا أستطيع أن أعتقد أنك تركت لنفسك حقًا بأن تكون ضحية مساعدة لرفقة سيئة.

د. لا أستطيع أن أصدق أنك سمحت لنفسك من قبل بأن تكون ضحية عاجزة لرفقة سيئة.

---

4. The tragedy in life doesn't lie in not reaching your goal. The tragedy lies in having no goal to reach.

أ. مأساة الحياة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، المأساة تكمن في عدم وجود هدف للوصول.

ب. حياة المأساة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، المأساة تكمن في عدم وجود هدف للوصول.

جـ. مأساة الحياة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، بل تكمن المأساة تكمن في وجود هدف للوصول إليه.

د. مأساة الحياة لا تكمن في عدم الوصول إلى هدفك، بل تكمن المأساة في عدم وجود هدف للوصول إليه.

② Choose the best English translation :

١. عليك أن تُركِّز على هدفك، وألا تدع التفاصيل الصغيرة غير المهمة تشتتك عمًا تسعى لتحقيقه.

a. Focus on your goal and don't let small, unimportant details to distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

b. Focus on your goal and don't allow small, unimportant details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

c. Focus on your goal and don't make small, unimportant to details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

d. Focus on your goal and don't let small, unimportant details distract you from what you're trying to achieve.

---

٢. إن العمل على تنظيم الوقت وتوزيع الجهد أثناء استذكار دروسك يساعد على زيادة نسبة تحصيلك.

a. Working on organizing time and distributing effort while studying your lessons help to increase your achievement rate.

b. To organise time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps to increase your achievement rate.

c. Organizing time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps increase your achievement rate.

d. Worked on organizing time and distributing effort while studying your lessons helps to increase your achievement rate.

٣. يمكنك التغلب على انخفاض تحصيلك الدراسي عن طريق إزالة أسباب التشتيت وتقسيم الوقت إلى جلسات قصيرة بينها استراحات.

a. You can overcome your underachievement by eliminating distractions and dividing your time into short sessions with breaks in between.
b. You can overcome your achievement by eliminating distractions and dividing your time into short sessions with breaks in between.
c. You can overcome your law productivity by eliminating distractions and dividing your time into short sessions with breaks in between.
d. You can overcome your underachievement by eliminating distractions and multiplying your time into short sessions with breaks in between.

٤. إن التسويف هو أول خطوة في طريق الفشل، فقديماً قالوا "لا تؤجّل عمل اليوم إلى الغد".

a. Procrastination is the first step on the road to failure, as they used to say, "Do not postpone today's work until tomorrow."
b. Procrastination is the first step on the road to failure. It has formerly been said, "Do not put off today's work until tomorrow."
c. Procrastination is the first stop on the road to failure, as they used to say, "Do not postpone today's work until tomorrow.
d. Procrastination is the first step on the road to failure. They used to be said, "Do not postpone today's work until tomorrow."

Test on Unit 6

تنويه
للتدريب على أسئلة
اختيارى MRQ
بنك الأسئلة

• Understand • Apply • Create



✪ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Interests .... from one person to another.
   a. lead b. vary c. distract d. switch off
2. Encouraging students improves their ....
   a. procrastination b. analysis c. productivity d. permission
3. His need for money .... him to accept such a tiring job.
   a. forced b. stated c. mentioned d. b & c
4. .... is the process of getting better at doing something, or getting closer to finishing or achieving something.
   a. Efficiency b. Productivity c. Procrastination d. Progress
5. .... some changes to your study habits may raise your productivity.
   a. Assessing b. Stating c. Making d. Mentioning
6. "She declined his offer to marry her saying they have different personalities." The verb 'declined' here gives the same meaning as ....
   a. accepted b. flourished c. reduced d. turned down
7. Ayman .... the situation in a way I don't agree with.
   a. assesses b. assessments c. procrastinate d. procrastination
8. "You need to take a rest to renew your energy." This means you need to ....
   a. look at b. result in c. tend to d. switch off
9. I don't let others .... my tablet.
   a. to use b. use c. using d. to be used
10. I don't allow .... my tablet.
    a. to use b. use c. using d. to be used
11. We are .... the right to express our opinion.
    a. let b. made c. stopped d. allowed
12. We .... outside meals at school.
    a. aren't allowed b. aren't let c. let d. are made
13. I stopped Sama .... computer games for a long time.
    a. from playing b. playing c. a & b d. to play

14. Mum .... Rahma wasting her time.
   a. let   b. stopped   c. made   d. b & c
15. I .... my teeth checked once every three months.
   a. let   b. get   c. have   d. b & c
16. You should have your clothes ....
   a. to wash   b. be washed   c. washed   d. washing

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

At school, you have probably had the support of your teachers, your family and your friends. When you leave secondary school, you will start to have responsibility for your own life. This means being in control of your time and also your choice of career. However, it is important never to forget the values and morals that your family and your school have taught you.

Show respect to not only older people, but also to your work colleagues, both male and female. Remember to be tolerant of people who are different to you. Be loyal to all your friends.

When you are at work, make sure that you help and support your work colleagues. It is good to be ambitious, but do not envy people who are promoted before you. Be patient and always work hard, and you will be rewarded one day.

When you are not at work, spend some time helping your local community. This is an excellent way to meet new people, and to help improve the lives of others. Try to help the poor whenever you can. Most people find that voluntary and charitable work is so rewarding that they are happy to do it.

Your school has taught you how to pass your exams, but it has also taught you important values and morals that will help whatever career you choose.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

17. The main idea of the passage is that "............" .
   a. How to be successful after leaving school
   b. How to succeed at your school
   c. Tolerant people lose a lot in their life
   d. You will be rewarded one day

18. In your future careers, ... will support you.
   a. your family and teachers
   b. morals and values
   c. your school and colleagues
   d. males and females
19. Voluntary work is rewarding although it is ....
   a. unseen
   b. unpaid
   c. valueless
   d. fruitless
20. Being .... helps you to get on well with other people.
   a. violent
   b. tolerant
   c. shy
   d. ashamed
21. Remember to be tolerant of people who are ....
   a. different to your colleagues
   b. similar to your colleagues
   c. different to you
   d. similar to you
22. Young people are likely to become responsible ....
   a. before their 8th birthday
   b. after their 18th birthday
   c. after prep school
   d. after primary school
23. The word "............" from the passage means the people who live in the same area.
   a. responsibility
   b. morals
   c. community
   d. colleagues
24. Which of the following can summarise the second paragraph?
   a. The rules you have to follow at school to succeed.
   b. The instructions which you have to obey at your community.
   c. How to deal with your colleagues at work
   d. Some tips help you to stay healthy all the time.

Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

For almost 800 years, Chillingham Castle has been the home to ghosts of all different types. In the early 1900s, visitors to the castle reported seeing the ghost of a little boy. They gave him the name "Blue Boy" because he was always seen wearing blue clothes and surrounded by a blue light. Late in the 1920s, workmen fixing a wall in an unused bedroom had an unpleasant surprise. While working, they discovered the bones of a small child wearing blue clothes buried within the wall. Interestingly, after these remains were buried in the local cemetery, the ghost boy was never seen again.

Another ghost that has been seen in the castle is that of Lady Mary Berkeley. She died alone in the castle after her husband left her for another woman. People have heard the sound of her dress rustling as she walked by. Also, the "White Lady" who is supposed to be the ghost of a woman poisoned to death many years ago. She has been known to go up to people, ask for a drink of water, and then disappears.

Instead of avoiding Chillingham Castle, it has now turned into a tourist attraction visited by thousands of people every year. Some just tour the grounds and eat in the castle tea-room, but others actually stay in the castle itself. For those people who want a more special experience, the castle hosts weddings, concerts, operas, and fairs regularly to make Chillingham Castle their home. Chillingham Castle has also been used as a background location for movies and TV shows.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

25. The best title for this passage is ....
    a. Friendly ghosts
    b. The Castle of ghosts
    c. The White Lady
    d. The Blue Boy

26. After being buried, ...
    a. the blue boy was never seen
    b. people heard Mary's dress rustling
    c. the white woman asked people for water
    d. the ghosts appeared in the English Castle

27. The last paragraph can be summarized as ....
    a. it was amazing to have wedding and concerts in Chillingham Castle
    b. Chillingham Castle is best used now
    c. Chillingham Castle is ignored nowadays
    d. it was interesting to make movies in Chillingham Castle

28. .... ghosts were mentioned in the passage.
    a. Three
    b. Four
    c. Five
    d. Two

29. On the contrary, Chillingham Castle has become a very .... place.
    a. scary
    b. fascinating
    c. fearful
    d. isolated

30. Ordinary people may drink tea in the Castle, but braver people may .... in it.
    a. eat
    b. tour
    c. stay
    d. dream

31. The writer thinks that we should ....
a. change our perspective of bad things to be positive
b. change our positive view to be negative
c. not care of our points of view
d. not care of the others' points of view

32. The author implies that burying the bones found in the wall ....
a. put the ghost to rest
b. made no difference
c. was a scary action
d. caused many problems

Choose the best Arabic translation :

33. Workplace engagement and productivity are influenced by several factors. As a result, many people do not feel engaged at work when they work in an inappropriate environment. *(LM)*

أ. تتأثر المشاركة في مكان العمل والانتاجية بعدة عوامل. نتيجة لذلك، لا يشعر الكثير من الناس بحب العمل عندما يعملون في بيئة غير حارة.

ب. تتأثر المشاركة في مكان العمل والانتاجية بعدة عوامل. نتيجة لذلك، لا يشعر الكثير من الناس بالاندماج في العمل عندما يعملون في بيئة غير مناسبة.

جـ. تؤثر النواحي النفسية وعوامل أخري في مكان العمل والانتاجية بعدة عوامل. نتيجة لذلك، لا يشعر الكثير من الناس بالاندماج في العمل عندما يعملون في بيئة غير مناسبة.

د. تتأثر المشاركة في مكان العمل والانتاجية بعدة عوامل. نتيجة لذلك، يشعر الكثير من الناس بالاندماج في العمل عندما يعملون في بيئة مناسبة.

34. Political conflicts have a significant impact on the global economy. As a result, leaders of the world should settle their disagreements peacefully to avoid destruction and instability. *(LM)*

أ. للصراعات السياسية تأثير كبير على السلام العالمي. نتيجة لذلك، يجب على قادة العالم تسوية خلافاتهم بسرعة لتجنب الدمار وعدم الاستقرار.

ب. للصراعات السياسية تأثير كبير على الاقتصاد العالمي. نتيجة لذلك، يجب على قادة العالم تسوية خلافاتهم سلمياً لتجنب الدمار وعدم الاستقرار.

جـ. للصراعات الإقليمية تأثير كبير على الاقتصاد العالمي. نتيجة لذلك، يجب على شعوب العالم تسوية خلافاتهم سلمياً لتجنب الدمار وعدم الاستقرار.

د. للصراعات الاقتصادية تأثير كبير على السلام العالمي. نتيجة لذلك، يجب على قادة العالم تسوية خلافاتهم سلمياً لتجنب الدمار وعدم الاستقرار.

Choose the best English translation :

٣٥. تهدف مبادرة حياة كريمة إلي التخفيف عن كاهل المواطنين بالمجتمعات الأكثر احتياجاً في الريف والمناطق العشوائية في الحضر، وتسعي هذه المبادرة لضمان حياة كريمة لتلك الفئة وتحسين ظروف معيشتهم. (LM)

a. The "Haya Karima" initiative hopes to alleviate burdens off citizens in the neediest communities in Upper Egypt and urban slums. This initiative seeks to ensure a dignified life for this category and to improve their living conditions.

b. The "Haya Karima" initiative aims to alleviate burdens off employees in the neediest communities in the countryside and urban slums. This initiative is adopted to ensure a dignified life for this category and to improve their living conditions.

c. The "Haya Karima" initiative aims to alleviate burdens off citizens in the neediest communities in the countryside and urban slums. This initiative seeks to ensure a dignified life for this category and improve their living conditions.

d. The "Haya Karima" initiative aims to alleviate burdens off citizens in the neediest communities in the countryside and urban slums. This initiative is adopted to provide a dignified life for this category and remove their living conditions.

٣٦. يجب أن تكون عضواً فعالاً في المجتمع، فلا تكن سلبياً وتكتفي بمجرد الشكوى وانتقاد أفعال الأخرين، لابد أن نكون موضوعيين ونسعى للنقد البَنَّاء، وقبول الأخر. (LM)

a. You must be an active worker in society. Do not be negative and only complain and criticise the actions of others. We must be subjective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.

b. You must be an active member of society. Do not be negative and only complain and criticise the actions of others. You must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.

c. You must be an active member of your country. Do not be negative and only complain and criticise the opinions of others. You must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.

d. You must be a productive member of society. Do not be negative and only try to criticise the actions of others. You must be objective and strive for constructive criticism and the acceptance of others.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

37. The core point in the following paragraph is .... *(LM)*

a. Technology can replace man in all fields of life.

b. Technology is the main cause of destruction, so we must avoid using it.

c. Technology has advantages and disadvantages, so we must use it carefully.

d. A lot of people fall prey to technology addiction.

Technology plays an important role in our lives. We use it in a lot of fields of life. However, I'm totally in favour of using technology carefully in a way that doesn't cause trouble or lead to addiction. We should bear in mind that technology is a double-edged weapon. That is why we should use technology in a constructive way that benefits us all. I'm against those who call for the mass use of technology at the expense of human security and safety. Also, I am against using it instead of people; technology can't replace man in many fields. Teaching, for example, requires actual contact between students and teachers.

38. Which of the following is punctuated correctly? *(LM)*

a. Do you have sugar free cookies, Huda?

b. Do you have sugar-free cookies, Huda.

c. Do you have sugar, free cookies Huda?

d. Do you have sugar-free cookies, Huda?

39. A/An .... is used to express strong feelings in written language.

a. quotation mark

b. exclamation mark

c. question mark

d. period

40. Which of the following sentences has the perfect punctuation?

a. I ate: fish, rice and salad for dinner.

b. I ate / fish, rice and salad for dinner.

c. I ate fish, rice and salad for dinner.

d. I ate, fish, rice and salad. for dinner.

Answers of Test on unit 6

اسم الطالـب (رباعياً) : ....

• تعليمات: ظلل الدائرة المقابلة تماماً للإجابة الصحيحة. إذا ظللت الدائرة أمام الإجابة الخطأ، اشطب عليها بشكل واضح ثم ظلل الدائرة المقابلة للإجابة الصحيحة.

1. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		21. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
2. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		22. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
3. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		23. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
4. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		24. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
5. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		25. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
6. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		26. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
7. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		27. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
8. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		28. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
9. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		29. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
10. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		30. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
11. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		31. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
12. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		32. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
13. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		33. (د)	(ج)	(ب)	(أ)
14. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		34. (د)	(ج)	(ب)	(أ)
15. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		35. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
16. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		36. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
17. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		37. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
18. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		38. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
19. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		39. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ
20. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ		40. ⓐ	ⓑ	ⓒ	ⓓ

General Exercises
for Al Azhar students on Unit 6



1. Finish the following dialogue :

Amr wants Mustafa's advice on which sport he should do.

Amr : They are starting lots of sports at a sports centre soon. (1) .... ?

Mustafa : It depends on why you want to do sport.

Amr : (2) .... ?

Mustafa : Well, do you want to keep fit or to meet other people ?

Amr : (3) ....

Mustafa : The answer is quite easy. Sports like squash are individual sports.

Amr : Yes, I see. And (4) ....

Mustafa : That's right. You can't play them on your own. You need a team.

2. Write a paragraph of one hundred and twenty (120) words on :

"Productivity amongst students"

....

3. Translate into Arabic :

- Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare of their families. They are also ready to sacrifice themselves when their country is in danger.

....

4. Translate into English :

- فى موسم الأمطار، تكون هناك الكثير من المياه، وتقوم السدود بتخزينها لاستخدامها خلال أشهر الجفاف، فى نفس الوقت، فإنها توفر المياه المستخدمة لتوليد الكهرباء.

....

5. Answer the following question : (Islamic Selections)

- What did the barren desert represent in Khalid's vision? (الأزهر - أدبي ٢٠٢١)

....

Revision 2

Based On Units 4, 5 & 6

تنويه
تقييمات تراكمية في بنك الأسئلة

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 44 : 49

Part I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary & Derivatives المفردات الرئيسية والمشتقات

alternatively(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	mistake(n)	خطأ
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب/يتحاشى	please(d) (v)	يُسعِد/يَسُرّ
benefits(n)	فوائد	possible solutions	حلول ممكنة
blame(d) (v)	يلوم	practise(d) (v)	يمارس - يتدرب علي
burnt out(adj)	مُنهَك	pressure(n)	ضغط
conflict(n)	صِراع	procrastination(n)	التسويف/المماطلة
deal - dealt (v)	يتعامل	progress(n)	تَقَدُّم
digital (adj)	رقمي	react(ed) (v)	يتصرف/يستجيب
efficiency(n)	كفاءة	recommend(ed) (v)	يُزكّي - يوصي بـ
equally(adv)	بشكل متساوي	reward(n)	مكافأة
exhausted(adj)	مُرهَق	self(n)	النفس/الذات
experience(d) (v)	يواجه/يعايش	set-set-set (v)	يضع/يُحدِّد
go on (phr. v)	يحدث - يستمر	stress(n)	الضغط/الإجهاد
imagine(d) (v)	يتخيل	survey(n)	بحث استطلاعي
impact(n)	أثر - انطباع	task(n)	مَهَمّة
inevitable(adj)	حتمي/لازم	tough(adj)	قاسي/صارم
level(n)	مستوَى	unmute(d) (v)	يلغي كتم الصوت
long-term(adj)	المدي البعيد	unrealistic(adj)	غير واقعي
management(n)	إدارة	well-being(n)	العافية/الرفاهية
mental(adj)	عقلي/ذهني		

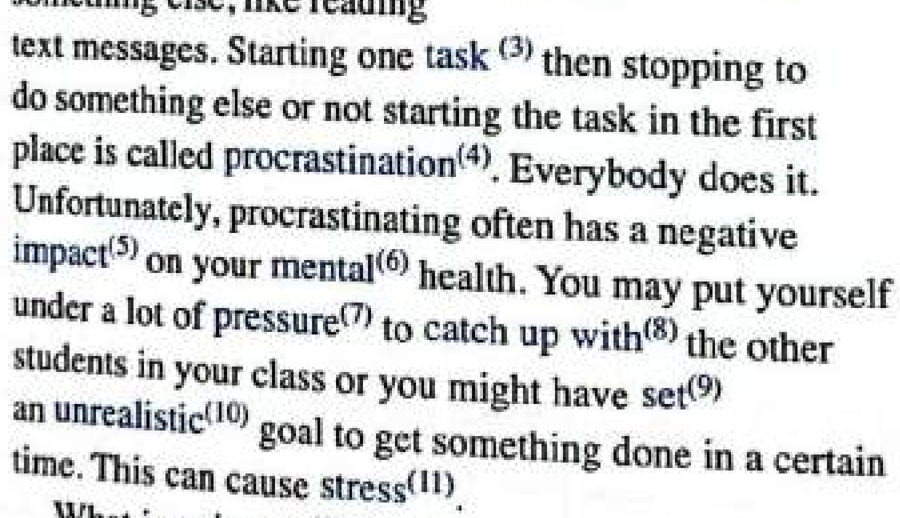
Reading & Listening Texts

1 Reading Text

Procrastination ?

58 page (72)

Blame(1) your brain !



Have you ever tried to get something done, but found that you don't make much progress(2) ?

Perhaps you do ten minutes of work, then start doing something else, like reading text messages. Starting one task (3) then stopping to do something else or not starting the task in the first place is called procrastination(4). Everybody does it. Unfortunately, procrastinating often has a negative impact(5) on your mental(6) health. You may put yourself under a lot of pressure(7) to catch up with(8) the other students in your class or you might have set(9) an unrealistic(10) goal to get something done in a certain time. This can cause stress(11).

What is going on(12) in the brain which makes us avoid(13) doing something, even though we know we should do it ? Scientists suggest we imagine(14) that there are two parts of our brain: our present self(15) and our future self. The present self wants to feel good right now and see the benefits(16) of the work you're doing immediately. Whereas the future self is focused on achieving long-term(17) goals. It's inevitable(18) that the two selves come into conflict(19). If the present self wins, you usually find yourself procrastinating.

How can you deal(20) with these two different selves so you can keep up efficiency(21) levels(22) and improve your time management(23) skills ? One suggestion is that you try to please(24) your present self.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يلوم
(2) تقدُّم
(3) مَهَمّة
(4) التسويف/المماطلة
(5) أثر - انطباع
(6) عقلي/ذهني
(7) ضغط
(8) يلاحق/يواكب
(9) يضع/يحدد
(10) غير واقعي
(11) الضغط/الإجهاد
(12) يحدث
(13) يتجنب/يتحاشى
(14) يتخيل
(15) النفس/الذات
(16) فوائد
(17) المدى البعيد
(18) حتمي/لازم
(19) صراع
(20) يتعامل
(21) كفاءة
(22) مستوى
(23) إدارة
(24) يُسعد/يُبهج

For example, give yourself little rewards[25] after working for a short period of time, like checking messages after finishing a task. Alternatively,[26] you could try to focus on the benefits that reaching your long term goals will bring you. Try imagining how good it would feel to achieve them and holding on to[27] that feeling.

(25) مكافأة
(26) بدلاً من ذلك
(27) يتشبث بـ

SB page (75)

To : Ahmed@mail.com
From : Ahmed@mail.com



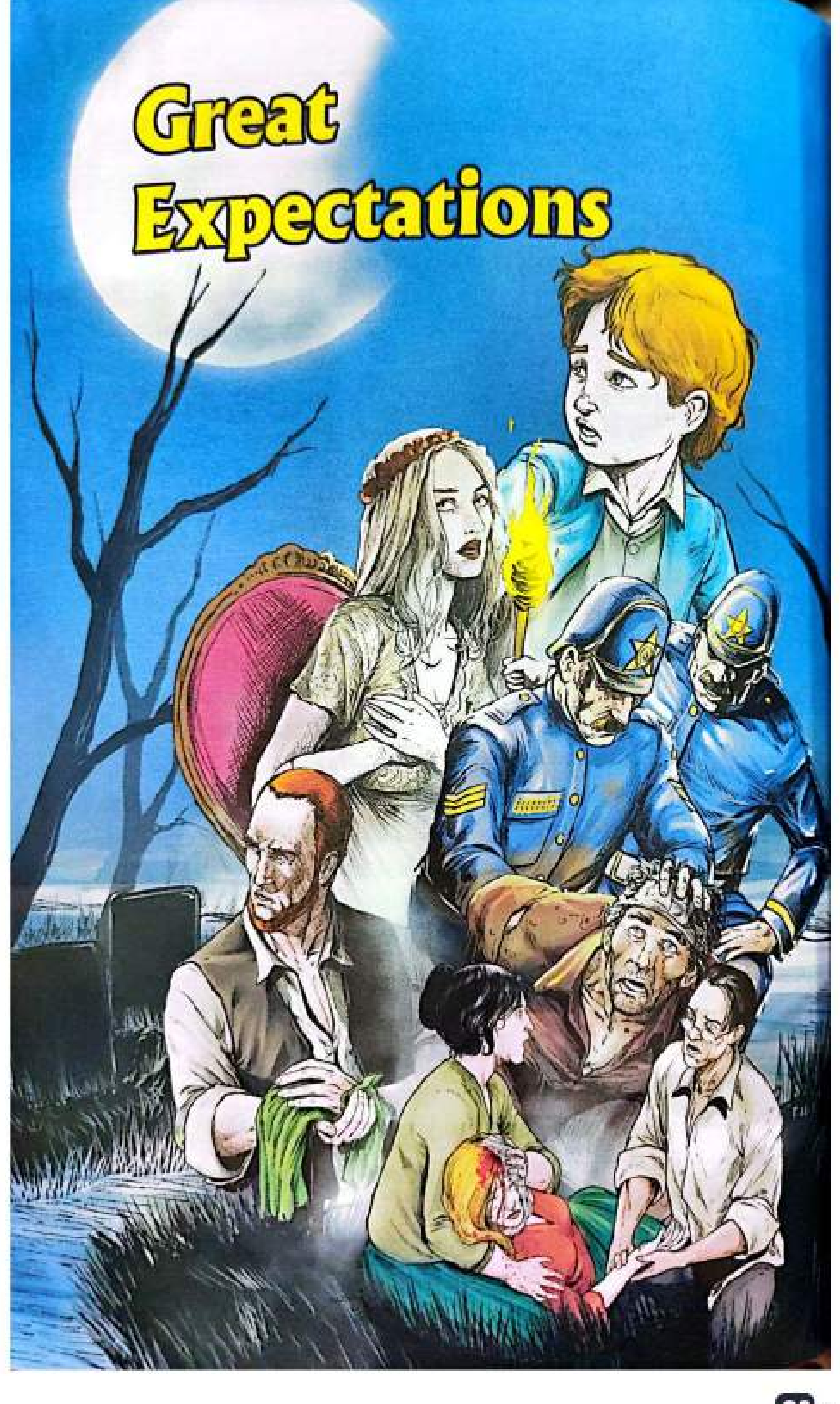
Check Vocabulary

(1) قاسي/صارم
(2) يواجه/يعايش
(3) مُقارنةً بـ
(4) العافية/الرفاهية
(5) مُرهَق
(6) مُنهَك

Dear 11-year-old Ahmed,
I know you're finding life tough[1] at the moment. You're experiencing[2] stress at school and you're working hard with your sports training. You're finding it harder at your new school because the schoolwork is a lot more difficult than it was at your old school. You have more homework so it is harder to find time to practise swimming and running. How about telling your teachers about the problems you're having and asking for help?

Try to remember that life is actually quite easy at the moment compared to[3] how it will be later, even though you might not believe me about that. When you're my age, you'll be really good at time management. You'll be able to balance your schoolwork and your sports practice. I know you want to be like Ahmed Elgendy one day. Don't worry-you'll achieve amazing things. Enjoy the free time that you have now! Don't forget to spend time doing things that improve your well-being,[4] like talking to family. Play football with your friends at the weekend!

You're going to be just fine, but remember to ask for help when you need it and enjoy the free time that you have so you don't end up feeling exhausted[5] and burnt out[6].
See you in 9 years,
20-year-old Ahmed


Great
Expectations

By: Sawsan Kamel

Main Characters

الشخصيات الرئيسية



Pip

Village boy aspiring to more



Miss Havisham

Rich, grim, secluded lady



Mrs. Gargery

Pip's cruel older sister



Joe Gargery

Pip's kindhearted brother-in-law; a blacksmith



Estella

Miss Havisham's ward; beautiful and aloof



Magwitch / Provis

Pip's "convict" and secret benefactor



Mr. Jaggers & Wemmick

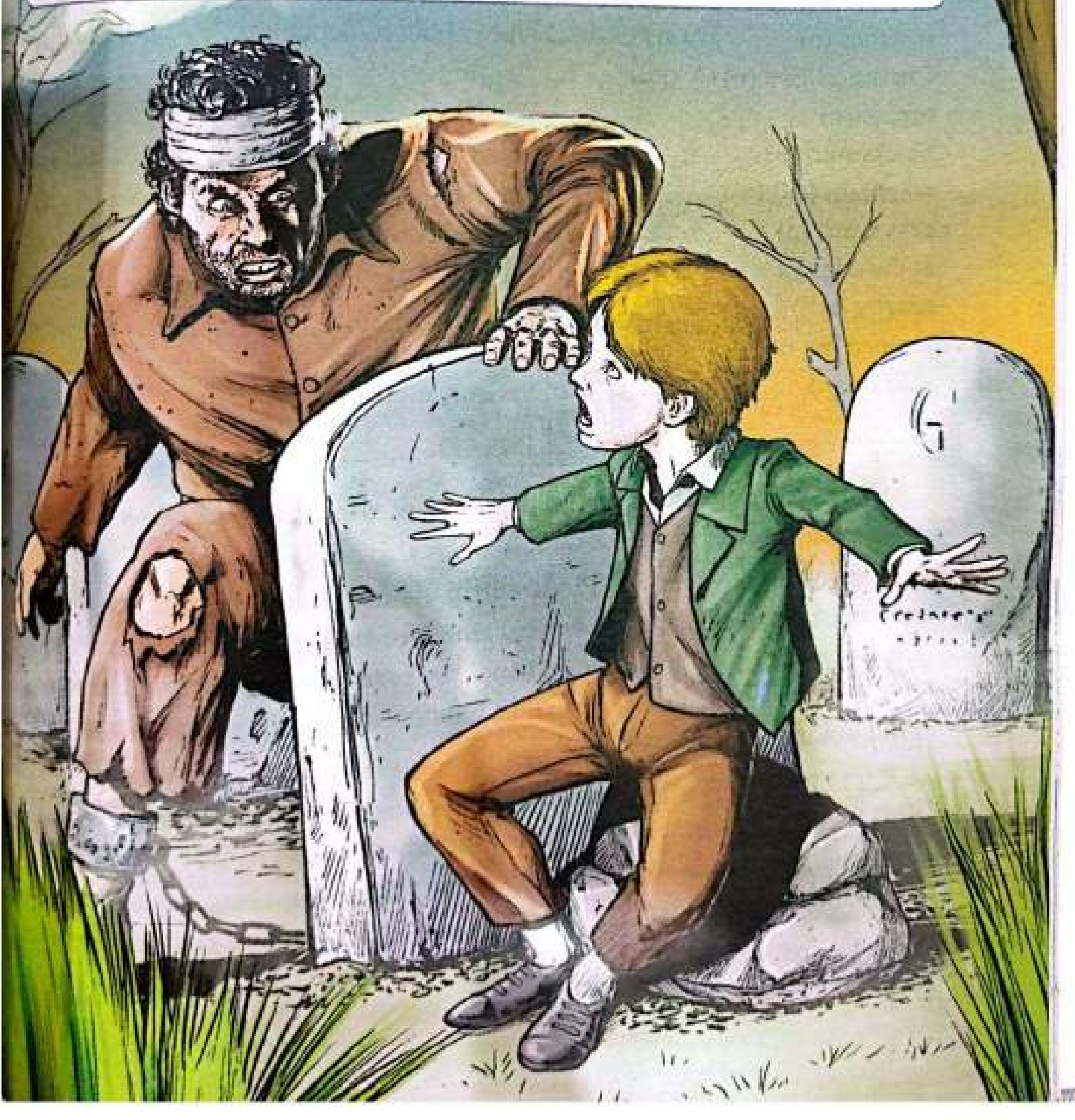
London lawyer and his clerk

Characters List

قائمة الشخصيات

- Philip Pirrip (PiP) : a young man; the main character
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Mr Pumblechook / Uncle Pumblechook : Joe's uncle
- A convict
- Biddy : teacher and friend to Pip, Joe and Mrs Joe
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Estella : a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham / Miss Havisham's adopted daughter.
- Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond pocket : Miss Havisham's relatives اقارب
- Orlick : a man who works for Joe at the blacksmith
- Mr Wopsle : a friend of Mr and Mrs Gargery
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Matthew pocket : Miss Havisham's cousin; father of Herbert pocket; pip's teacher in London
- Mr Wemmick : Mr. Jagger's clerk
- Sarah pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham
- Herbert pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham; who pip will live with in London / son of Pip's teacher Pip's friend in London.
- Miss Havisham's half-brother
- Miss Havisham's fiancé
- Startop : a man who is staying with Herbert pocket and Pip / Pip's friend and house-mate
- Bently Drummle : a man who is staying with Herbert pocket and Pip / Pip's house-mate
- Molly : Mr Jaggers' housekeeper
- Two convicts
- Magwitch : the convict Pip helped to escape

CHAPTER 1



Chapter 1 character list

- Philip Pirrip (Pip) : a young man; the main character
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Mr Pumblechook / Uncle Pumblechook : Joe's uncle
- A convict



Vocabulary

set off (phr.v)	ينطلق - يبدأ رحلة	escaped (adj)	هارب
mist (n)	ضباب	take off (phr.v)	يخلع / ينزع
with an angry look	بنظرة غاضبة على	scare (d) (v)	يخيف
on his face	وجهة	feel sorry for	يشعر بالحزن على...
feel guilty	يشعر بالذنب	cold meat pie	فطيرة لحم باردة
missing (adj)	مفقود	appearance(n)	ظهور
horror (n)	رعب / خوف	soldiers (n)	جنود
feel nervous	يشعر بالتوتر	handcuffs (n)	أصفاد - قيود
marshes (n)	مستنقعات / أهوار	(be) about to happen	على وشك الحدوث
Christmas Eve (n)	ليلة عيد الميلاد	leg-irons	قيود / أصفاد للرجل
orphan(n)	يتيم	shake (v)	يرتعش / يهتز
blacksmith (n)	حداد	black smith's file	مبرد الحداد
complain (ed) (v)	يشكو	grab (bed) (v)	ينتزع - يخطف
graveyard (n)	مدفن / جبانة	got my breath back (exp.)	يقبض على
at the edge of	على حافة / طرف	convict (n)	استعدت أنفاسي
nearby (adj)	قريب من	get away (phr.v)	سجين (محكوم عليه)
jumped out of my	قفزت من جلدى	commit a crime	يهرب
skin (exp.)	(تعبير يدل عن	prison ship (n)	يرتكب جريمة
	الخوف الشديد)		سفينة السجناء

One cold, grey afternoon in the middle of winter, a small boy sat alone near the marshes. He was crying.

That small boy was me, Philip Pirrip. As my name was difficult to say when I was small, my name became Pip. I was crying because it was Christmas Eve, and I was an orphan – my parents were dead, and so were five of my brothers and sisters. This happened when I was very young, so I did not remember them.

I had lived with my sister and her husband, Joe Gargery, for most of my life. Joe was the village blacksmith, and Mrs Joe was twenty years older than me. She was tall and thin and liked to complain about me; she was often angry, but Joe was my friend.

On this grey afternoon, when I was about seven years old, I had walked down to the graveyard at the edge of the village. I sat by my parents' grave as the afternoon light slowly disappeared. The marshes nearby became dark and frightening.

I was going to leave and go home, when a terrible voice shouted 'Quiet!'

Then a man appeared from behind a grave. I nearly jumped out of my skin!

'What's your name, boy?' he shouted, walking slowly towards me.

'Pip, sir.'

'Show me where you live!' said the man.

I pointed to my village, not far away.

'Who do you live with?'

'My sister, sir – Mrs Joe Gargery – she's the wife of Joe Gargery, the blacksmith, sir.'

'A blacksmith!'

The man looked down and I saw his leg-irons. Then I noticed his old grey clothes, and his thin dirty face. He was shaking.

'Do you know what a blacksmith's file is?' he asked.

'Yes, sir.'

He suddenly grabbed my shoulders and shook me.

'I want you to bring me that file early tomorrow morning. And some food, too. Then I will let you live! What do you say?'

I was frightened, so I promised to bring the file and the food to him the next day.

'Now go home!' he shouted.

I ran until I could run no more. When I looked back, I saw the man far out on the marshes, a black shape against the angry red sky. Once I got my breath back I hurried home as fast as I could.

When I ran into the kitchen, feeling happy to be home safely, Mrs Joe angrily asked me where I had been.

'Only to the graveyard,' I cried.

'Graveyard!' she shouted. 'You're lucky not to have been put in the graveyard long ago! It's because of me that you're still here. But I didn't want to look after you! It's bad enough being a blacksmith's wife. I never asked to be your mother!'

That evening, I had work to do in the kitchen as usual. It was almost bedtime and I was helping to prepare lunch for the next day, when I heard a loud noise.

'Listen! What is that?' I said.

'A convict escaped last night,' Joe explained. 'That noise was a warning to everyone in our village that another convict has got away!'

'From the prison ships,' Mrs Joe added.

'What are they?' I asked.

'They're ships where they put people because they have committed a crime,' replied my sister. 'Now go to bed!' she shouted.

I remembered that I had seen a broken old ship, far out on the marshes that day. Perhaps it was a prison ship.

As I fell asleep, I realised that the man I had met that day was one of the escaped convicts. He wanted a blacksmith's file so that he could take off his leg-irons and get away from the marshes quickly. He scared me, but I also felt sorry for him.

Early the next morning, I got up and went into the kitchen. It was Christmas Day, and guests were invited to dinner. There was some delicious cheese in the kitchen, as well as nuts, apples and oranges, and a cold meat pie. I took them all. Then I went into Joe's workroom and found a blacksmith's file.

Closing the front door quietly behind me and holding all the food carefully, I set off. I ran to the graveyard and then out into the mist and over the wet marshes.

Suddenly, quite by surprise, I saw a man in grey who seemed to be asleep. He wore leg-irons and stood up when he saw me. At first, I thought he was the man that I knew, but then I realised that his face was different. He looked at me for a moment before disappearing into the mist. I wondered who he could be and what he was doing out here.

Soon afterwards, I found the man I was looking for. I gave him the food at once, and he ate it quickly as I told him about the other man that I had just seen. He wanted to know who he was and where he had gone, but I could not tell him. Then, as soon as he had eaten, he took the file from me and started trying to remove his leg-irons with an angry look on his face.

I was afraid again, so I ran home as fast as I could. As I ran back across the marshes, I could hear the sound of the file on the leg-irons through the mist.



Mrs Joe was busy preparing the house for guests, so Joe and I were alone together. I began to feel guilty about the food and the file which I had stolen that morning, and I wanted to tell Joe what I had done. But then I thought he might not want to be my friend if I did, so I said nothing.

It was not long before the guests arrived and we sat down to Christmas dinner.

At first, nobody noticed that anything was missing. But then, to my horror, Mrs Joe invited everyone to try the delicious meat pie that Joe's uncle, Mr Pumblechook, had given us. The guests happily agreed and she went to find it. Joe told me I could have some, and I felt very bad. At any moment, Mrs Joe was going to discover that the meat pie had disappeared from the kitchen.

Unable to stay at the table with all the guests any longer, I got up from my chair and ran to the front door. But when I opened it, a group of soldiers entered, just as Mrs Joe came back into the room shouting, 'The pie has gone!'

The appearance of a group of soldiers made the guests forget about the pie and they all stood up from the table. Everyone wondered why the soldiers had come, and we all felt nervous.

'We need a blacksmith to mend some handcuffs, please,' the first soldier said. 'We're looking for two convicts who broke their handcuffs and escaped. We think they are hiding out on the marshes, although they probably won't try to get away until tonight.'

When he asked if we had seen them, everybody else said no. I did not speak.

Joe mended the handcuffs for the soldiers, and they waited with us as he worked. When they were finished, Joe and I followed the soldiers out of the village and onto the marshes.

'I hope we don't find the convicts, Joe,' I said quietly.

'Me too, Pip,' Joe replied.

Day became night as we walked over the marshes. It was raining and the wind blew the rain into our faces.

Suddenly, we heard angry shouts nearby. I was afraid of what was about to happen.

Check
your Understanding Chapter 1

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I was late, so I .... my bag and ran away.
   a. shared b. shocked c. spoiled d. grabbed
2. I went to the airport to .... my father off.
   a. talk b. see c. look d. speak
3. His need to money led him to .... a crime.
   a. convict b. commit c. cure d. care
4. People say that he was arrested because he is one of the .... of the explosion.
   a. convicts b. audience c. protestors d. ignorants
5. I ran quickly for half an hour, then I got my .... back.
   a. breathe b. breeze c. breath d. birth

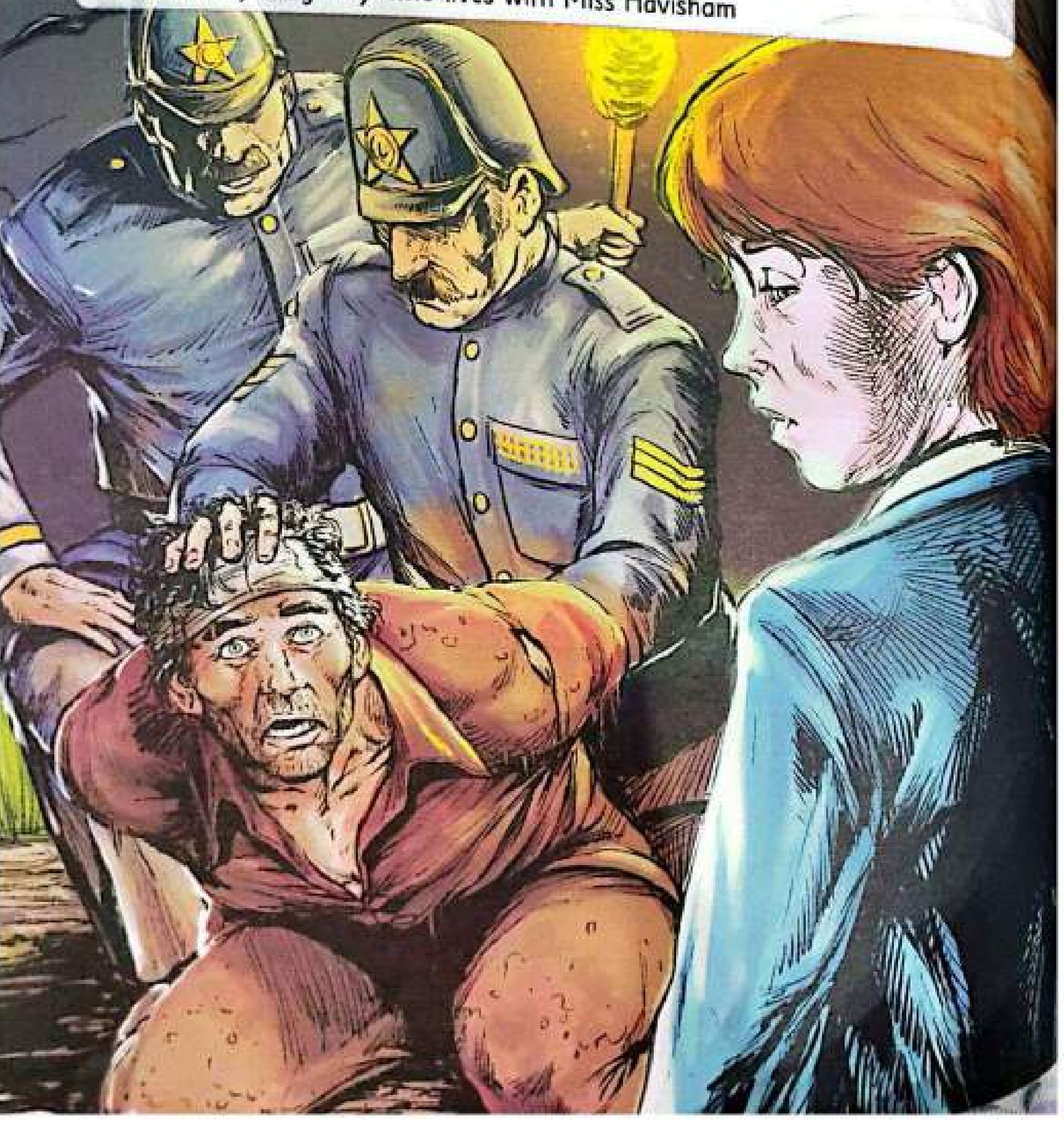
Definitions :

1. .... means a light cloud low over the ground that makes it difficult for you to see very far.
   a. Fist b. Mist c. List d. Gist
2. To begin a journey is to ....
   a. set out b. see into c. set off d. see off
3. A/An .... is a low ground which is usually wet.
   a. ocean b. island c. pool d. marsh
4. Two metal rings linked with a chain, which are attached to a prisoner's ankles are called ....
   a. leg-irons b. handcuffs c. leg-breaker d. handcycle
5. To .... means to escape from someone who is chasing you or trying to catch you.
   a. give away b. give up c. get away d. get up

CHAPTER 2

Chapter 2 character list

- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Biddy : teacher and friend to Pip, Joe and Mrs Joe
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Mr Pumblechook / Uncle Pumblechook : Joe's uncle
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Estella : a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham



Vocabulary

covered in mud	مغطى بالطين	(be) dressed	ترتدى زى
pull away	يسحب بعيداً	completely in white	ابيض كامل
in the light of	على ضوء	veil (n)	حجاب - سترة
kindly (adv)	بعطف / بطيبة	bride (n)	عروس
in the distance	على المدى	wedding dress (n)	فستان الزفاف
go out (phr.v)	ينطفئ	broken heart	قلب مكسور
village school (n)	مدرسة القرية	clearly (adv)	بوضوح
grand-daughter (n)	حفيدة	silently (adv)	بصمت
sitting by the fire	جالس بجوار المدفأة	ugly boots (n)	حذاء برقبه قبيح
practise my writing	أتدرب على الكتابة	let ... in	يسمح بالدخول
have a good heart	لديه قلب حنون / طيب	ashamed (adj)	خجلان - مكسوف
fine (adj)	محترم	rude (adj)	وقح
grateful (adj)	ممتن / شاكر لـ	hand (ed) (v)	يُسلم
fortune (n)	حظ / ثروة	tears (n)	دموع
gate (n)	بوابة	simple life (n)	حياة بسيطة
proud (adj)	فخور / متكبر / مغرور	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
through an untidy garden	خلال حديقة غير مهندمة	common (adj)	من العامة / عادى / شائع
candle (n)	شمعة	position (n)	مكانة - وضع
went upstairs	صعد للطابق العلوى	better education (n)	تعليم أفضل
dressing room (n)	حجرة لإرتداء الملابس	on my way home	فى طريقى للمنزل
curtains (n)	ستائر	thick (adj)	سميك - كثيف
daylight (n)	ضوء النهار	feel uncomfortable	يشعر بعدم الراحة / يشعر بالقلق
stir (red) (v)	يقلب (الشاى)		

Words and their definitions

- **ashamed :** feeling embarrassed or bad about something. يشعر بالخجل
- **bride :** a woman who is getting married. عروس
- **candle :** something made of wax you burn to produce light. شمعة
- **fortune :** a lot of money. ثروة
- **veil :** a piece of fine material worn to protect your face حجاب
- **grateful :** feeling thankful and lucky. ممتن / شاكر
- **shake :** move quickly from side to side or up and down. يهز - يرج
- **stir :** mix a liquid by moving a spoon around it. يُقلب

The soldiers ran into the marshes and we saw two men. They were fighting and covered in mud. The soldiers pulled them away from each other.

In the light of the soldiers' torches, I saw the man that I had helped. I wanted to say, 'I didn't tell the soldiers where to find you,' but all I could do was shake my head. He gave me a long, strange look which I will never forget.

'I have something to say,' he said. 'It was me. I stole the food from the blacksmith's house this morning.' He looked at Joe and added, 'I'm sorry that I ate your meat pie.'

'You're welcome. We don't want you to be hungry,' Joe replied kindly.

The man turned away. Then he was taken to a boat nearby which took him to the black prison ship, far out on the marshes. We watched as he climbed back onto the ship in the distance and disappeared.

At that moment, the torches went out.

A year passed. I worked every day, helping neighbours with small jobs, but in the evening I went to the village school. The old lady who taught me often fell asleep, leaving her grand-daughter, Biddy, to show me how to read and write.

One night, Joe saw me sitting by the fire, as I was practising my writing.

'You know, Pip, you are very clever!' he said.

'Did you never go to school, Joe?' I asked.

'No, Pip,' he replied. 'My father didn't let me go, but he had a good heart. He taught me to be a blacksmith. And after he died, I met your sister. She's a fine woman.'

I looked into the fire.

'I'm glad you think so, Joe,' I said at last.

'I wish she wouldn't hit you, though,' Joe said. 'I would rather she hit me than you! We'll always be best friends, won't we, Pip?'

Just then Mrs Joe came in.

'If this boy isn't grateful to me now, he will never be!' she said.

I tried to look grateful, but I didn't understand what Mrs Joe meant.

'Miss Havisham wants Pip to go to her house,' she said. 'And he must go, or I will make him work hard here!'

Everyone in the village had heard of Miss Havisham; she was a very rich lady who lived in the nearest town. However, most people had never seen her because she never left her large, old house.

'So how does she know Pip?' Joe asked.

'She doesn't know Pip. Uncle Pumblechook visited her, and she asked him if he knew a boy who would go there to play with a child who lives there,' Mrs Joe replied. 'The boy will make his fortune by going to Miss Havisham's house, and he's going there tomorrow!'

Then she jumped on me, like an eagle on a lamb. I was washed very well that night. Uncle Pumblechook took me to Miss Havisham's house in my best clothes, the next day.

We waited at the gate until a very pretty, but proud, young girl appeared.

'This is Pip,' said Mr Pumblechook.

'Come in, Pip,' she said, opening the gate.

Uncle Pumblechook was not invited in so I left him at the gate. I followed the girl through an untidy garden.

The house looked unused and most of the doors were closed. Everything was dark inside, and we went upstairs with a candle.

The girl left me at a door, telling me to enter.

Inside was a dressing room lit by candles; the curtains were closed, so no daylight could enter. And then I saw her: the strangest lady I had ever seen, or would ever see.

She was dressed completely in white, with a long white veil and flowers in her hair. But her hair was white, the flowers were dead, and the white dress was now yellow with age. I saw a bride in a wedding dress, but everything about her was old and sad.

'Let me look at you,' she said.

As I stood before her, I noticed that the clock had stopped at twenty to nine.



'Do you know what I have here?' the lady continued, her hands on her heart.

'Yes, madam.' I replied. 'It's your heart.'

'A broken heart' she said. Then after a moment, she added, 'I am tired, and I am bored. Play!'

I wondered what game I could play, so I replied that I could not play alone

'Call Estella!' the old lady said

When Estella entered, I saw that she was the girl who had let me in. Now she was told to play with me.

'But he is just a poor working boy!' she complained.

Miss Havisham said something to her. I could not hear clearly, but I thought she said, 'Well? You can break his heart.'

And so Estella and I played games while Miss Havisham watched silently.

'What dirty hands you have!' Estella said, unkindly. 'And what ugly boots!'

I was ashamed. Finally, Miss Havisham called me to her side.

'What do you think of her?' she asked, looking at Estella.

'I think she is very proud. And very pretty. And very rude,' I said. 'I would like to go now, please.'

Miss Havisham made me promise to come back in six days. Then Estella led me back through the dark house and out into the garden.

Before I left, Estella gave me some food and drink, but did not hand it to me. Instead, she put it on the ground. Tears came to my eyes. When she saw that I was crying, she smiled.



I returned home, hurt and ashamed of my simple life. In the kitchen, Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook were waiting for me. They wanted to know what had happened, but I didn't want to tell them the truth. Later, when I was alone with Joe, I told him everything. I said that the beautiful girl at Miss Havisham's house had said I was common, and that I felt ashamed.

Joe told me to be happy with my position in life, but I could not forget what had happened. I knew that this was the beginning of something that would change the rest of my life. I decided to learn as much as I could at the village school. If I had a better education, perhaps Estella would be kinder.

Two days later, I asked Biddy if she would help me more with my lessons, and she happily agreed. The village school was very busy and noisy, but when I left it that evening I hoped that with hard work, I would one day leave my simple life behind and become a fine gentleman.

On my way home, I met Joe at the village inn. He was sitting with a man I had not met before. He looked at me strangely.



'It's bad weather tonight,' Joe said. 'The mist is so thick, you wouldn't know there was a prison ship out there on the marshes!'



'Oh, is there?' asked the man. 'I don't know this area. It seems very lonely out on those marshes.

'Marshes are always lonely,' replied Joe.

'Perhaps you're right,' said the man.

The man then asked if any escaped convicts had been found recently, and I began to feel uncomfortable.

Then the man stirred his cup of tea, and I saw that he was using a blacksmith's file. It was the same file that I had taken from Joe's workshop a year ago! But Joe did not notice.

Check
your Understanding Chapter 2

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You should .... your food after eating.
   a. connect b. grow c. cover d. throw
2. My mother .... me a promise to buy a new tablet when I come first.
   a. did b. made c. shook d. took
3. We all respect Mr. Ayman. He .... a good heart.
   a. ignores b. dismisses c. gives d. has
4. She got a/an .... because it was very dark there.
   a. insect b. image c. candle d. canal
5. After his loss, he lived with a/an .... heart.
   a. broken b. pleasant c. official d. illegal

Definitions :

1. To .... means to say that you are annoyed, not satisfied, or unhappy about something or someone.
   a. complain b. obtain c. maintain d. contain
2. The situation that someone is in, especially when this affects what they can and cannot do is a/an ....
   a. opinion b. view c. article d. position
3. To .... means to a liquid by moving a spoon around it.
   a. steer b. stir c. store d. stare
4. To move quickly from one side to side or up and down is to ....
   a. tear b. share c. shake d. take
5. .... means feeling thankful and lucky.
   a. Recognizable b. Grateful c. Curable d. Careful

CHAPTER 3

Chapter 3 character list

- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Estella : a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham
- Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond Pocket : Miss Havisham's relatives
- Mr Pumblechook / Uncle Pumblechook : Joe's uncle
- Biddy : teacher and friend to Pip
- Orlick : a man who works for Joe at the blacksmith



Vocabulary

inn (n)	حانة - فندق صغير	fair hair	شعر أشقر
coin (n)	عملة معدن	send... away	يطرد
take out (phr.v)	يُخرج	on his knees	على ركبتيه
wrap (ped) (v)	يلف - يغلف	the boy was my age	الولد كان نفس سنى
immediately (adv)	فى الحال - مباشرة	got a black eye	أصيب بتورم فى العين
shelf (n)	رف	visits (n)	زيارات
remain (ed) (v)	يظل - يبقى	dusty (adj)	مترب / عليه غبار
gloomy (adj)	كئيب - متجهم	apprentice (n)	صبى/مبتدئ فى مهنة
relatives (n)	أقارب	reward (n)	مكافأة
dark-haired (adj)	ذو شعر داكن	pay for (v)	يدفع لـ
On the stairs	على درجات السلم	apprenticeship (n)	التدريب المهنى
Behave yourself !	أحسن التصرف	that's your lot	هذا هو نصيبك
walk up the stairs	يصعد السلم	boss (n)	مدير
dining room	حجرة الطعام	thoughts (n)	أفكار - معتقدات
table-cloth	مفرش المنضدة	thanks to	بفضل / بسبب
wedding celebration	أحتفال بالزفاف	argument (n)	جدال - مناقشة حادة
covered with	مغطى بـ	could not put my	لم استطع التعرف
spiders' webs	شبكات العنكبوت	finger on	على...
pale skin	جلد شاحب		

When I realised that the man in the inn had met the convict I helped on the marshes, I wanted to take Joe away. Before we could go, however, the man took out a new coin. He wrapped it in some paper and gave it to me.

'This is yours,' he said, 'but be careful!'

Feeling frightened, I took the coin and left with Joe. When we got home, we realised that the paper wrapped around the coin was a pound note. Joe went back to the inn immediately to try to find the man and return his note to him. However, the man had left. Mrs Joe put the pound note on a shelf where it would be safe and there it remained.

On my next visit to Miss Havisham's house, Estella took me into a gloomy room where three ladies and a gentleman were waiting. They were Miss Havisham's relatives, Sarah, Georgiana, Camilla and Raymond Pocket, and they had also come to see her that day.

A bell rang far away. Miss Havisham was ready to see me. Holding up her candle, Estella led me through the dark house.

'Well, boy!' she asked. 'Am I pretty?'

'Yes, you are very pretty.'

'Why don't you cry?' she asked, looking unkindly at me.

'I'll never cry again,' I said.

Just then, we met a large, dark-haired man on the stairs.

'Ah, you are a neighbour, I think?' he asked.

'Yes, sir,' I replied.

'Why are you here, boy?'

'Miss Havisham asked for me,' I explained.

'Well, behave yourself! This is not a place for children to play,' he said, before walking away.

I thought that he might be a doctor, and I continued walking up the stairs. I soon found myself in Miss Havisham's room again. Everything was the same as before.

'So! Are you ready to play?' she asked.

'I don't think I am, madam,' I replied. 'Well, do you want to work then?'

I said that I did, and she told me to wait for her in the dining room opposite.

When I entered the dark room, I could see a long table laid with a table-cloth and plates, prepared for a wedding celebration, but now it was dusty and covered with spiders' webs. The room looked like it had been exactly the same for many years. There were spiders and mice everywhere. I was looking around the room and watching the spiders when Miss Havisham came quietly into the room behind me.



'What do you think that is?' asked Miss Havisham, pointing at a tall shape in the centre of the table.

I went closer.

'It's a cake, Pip. A wedding cake! Mine!' she went on. 'And now, walk with me.'

She asked me to walk with her around the room, which we did for some minutes, until Estella and the Pockets came in. They asked about Miss Havisham's health and wished her a happy birthday, but she sent them away.

'That wedding cake was brought here, a long time before you were born,' Miss Havisham told me. 'And everything is still here.'

She stood for a long time, looking at the table.

Then we returned to her dressing room and Miss Havisham told Estella and me to play. So we sat down to play games in her dressing room but this time Estella refused to speak to me. Finally, Miss Havisham asked me to return in a few days and allowed me to leave. Estella led me out of the house, again put my food and drink on the ground and shut the door.

Alone in the garden, I was surprised to see another boy looking at me out of a window. He disappeared into the house, and then came out into the garden to speak to me. He had very pale skin and short fair hair, so in my mind, I called him 'the pale young gentleman'.

'Hello, who let you in?' he asked.

'Estella,' I replied.

'Come and fight, then!' he said, preparing to hit me.



The boy was my age, but much taller than me. I ran at him hard and he fell over. He jumped up, prepared to fight again, so I ran at him again. This time he got a black eye. He did not seem to be strong and never hit me hard.

The fight continued for several minutes until the boy was on his knees, saying, 'You have won!'

He was so brave that I felt sorry for him.

'Can I help?' I asked.

'No, thank you. Goodbye,' he answered.

I knew that it was time to leave.

I did not see the pale young gentleman at Miss Havisham's again, although my visits continued.

Nothing ever changed. Miss Havisham sat in her wedding dress, in her dusty dressing room; Estella and I played games as she watched; and Miss Havisham asked if I thought Estella was pretty. I always said yes, and Miss Havisham seemed happy with this answer.

Mrs Joe and Uncle Pumblechook had been talking about the same thing ever since I had started to visit Miss Havisham. They were sure that she wanted to give me all her money, and they wanted my visits to continue.

'What will you be when you grow up, Pip?' she asked one day.

'I am going to become Joe's apprentice and learn to be a blacksmith,' I said.

'Then tell Joe to come here at once,' she replied.

When Joe came with me on my next visit, Miss Havisham gave him a large bag of money.

'Pip will become your apprentice now,' she said. 'He is a good boy and this is his reward. The money is to pay for his apprenticeship. But that's your lot! This is all you will get from me, Mr Gargery!'

'Shall I visit you again, Miss Havisham?' I asked.

'No,' she replied, 'Joe is your boss now. Estella, show them out!'

And so my apprenticeship with Joe began.

But I had changed. I no longer wanted to be a blacksmith; now, I was ashamed of my home and my family.

Estella was often in my thoughts, although I did not see her any more. I was sure that she did not like my position in life, so I continued my education and worked hard. This was largely thanks to Biddy, who gave me lessons and taught me as much as she knew. Although she was older than me, Biddy was my friend.

About a year after my apprenticeship with Joe had begun, I asked Joe for an afternoon's holiday, so that I could visit Miss Havisham and thank her for helping me. When Orlick, Joe's workman, heard that I was going, he was very angry. He did not think it was right that I should have an afternoon's holiday, while he could not have one too. I did not like Orlick; he was large and slow, and he often tried to make my life difficult at work. An argument began between Orlick and Mrs Joe, who wanted me to see Miss Havisham again. In the end, Joe had to stop them. But there was something strange about Orlick, but I could not put my finger on what it was.



Check your Understanding Chapter 3

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't be rude and .... yourself.
   a. deceive b. believe c. behave d. save

2. There was a bad storm and my flat was ....
   a. dusty b. sunny c. rainy d. snowy

3. Before being a famous mechanic, he was a/an ....
   a. painter b. apprentice c. reporter d. expert

4. The salesman .... the present with colourful paper.
   a. shared b. divided c. printed d. wrapped

5. I asked my friend to .... out of his neighbourhood.
   a. bear b. tear c. lend d. lead

• Definitions :

1. A marriage ceremony, and the meal or party that follows it is a/an ....
   a. battle b. bottle c. weeding d. wedding

2. To .... means to give something to someone because they have done something good or helpful or have worked for it.
   a. prove b. reward c. improve d. award

3. A member of your family is called a/an ....
   a. owner b. organ c. relative d. classmate

4. .... means having a skin colour that is very white, or whiter that it usually is.
   a. Pale b. Pile c. Will d. Well

5. A number of people or things that is more than a few, but not a lot means ....
   a. similar b. formal c. several d. popular

CHAPTER 4

Chapter 4 character list

- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Sarah Pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham
- Estella : a young lady who lives with Miss Havisham
- Mr Wopsle : a friend of Mr and Mrs Gargery
- Orlick : a man who works for Joe at the blacksmith
- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Biddy : teacher and friend to Pip
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Mr Pumblechook / Uncle Pumblechook : Joe's uncle



Vocabulary

from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا	upset (v)	يزعج / يضايق
on the way	فى الطريق	(be) worth effort	تستحق المجهود
Christmas dinner	عشاء ليلة رأس السنة	make a mistake	يخطئ
get darker	يظلم / يصبح مظلم	my heart was set on	كان قلبى متحمسًا لـ
act strangely	يتصرف بغرابة	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
on my return to	عند عودتى إلى ...	privately (adv)	سرًا / بصورة شخصية
a crowd of	زحام / حشد من	expectations	تطلعات / طموحات
suspect (ed) (v)	يشتبه فى	property (n)	ممتلكات - عقار
proof (n)	دليل - إثبات	condition (n)	شرط
unable to speak	غير قادر على الكلام	benefactor (n)	ولى النعمة - فاعل خير
hammer (n)	شاكوش	make no difference	لا يحدث فارق
improve(d)	يحسن - يتحسن	congratulate (d) (v)	يهنئ
member (n)	عضو	delighted (adj)	مسرور
household (n)	أهل المنزل / أسرة	in truth	فى الواقع / الحقيقة
lead a different life	يحيا حياة مختلفة	poor education (n)	تعليم سيئ

Words and their definitions

- **benefactor** : a person who gives someone money to help them improve their life. متصدق - متبرع
- **be worth the effort** : something that is useful or good but difficult to do. تستحق العناء / التعب
- **expectations** : feelings that good things will happen. أحلام تطلعات
- **from now on**: an action that starts at a specific point in time and continues into the future. من الآن فصاعدًا
- **my heart was set on**: when you really want something or want to do something. مصمم - عازم
- **proof** : an object or some information that shows something is true. دليل
- **property** : a building that belongs to you. ملكية

When I visited Miss Havisham the next day, I was sorry that Estella was not there. Miss Sarah Pocket opened the door to me.

'What do you want?' Miss Havisham said angrily. 'I hope you don't want anything from me, because you will get nothing!'

'I don't want anything. I have come to say thank you – for my apprenticeship,' I explained.

'Well,' Miss Havisham replied, 'from now on, come to see me once a year, on your birthday!'

I promised that I would.

'You are looking for Estella, aren't you?' Miss Havisham continued. 'She has gone away for her education and she will become a lady. Do you feel that you have lost her, Pip?'

She laughed, and I did not know what to say. Then she asked me to leave, so I set off for home.

On the way, I met Mr Wopsle, one of the guests from that Christmas dinner a few years ago, and we walked together. It was getting darker now. In the mist, a man came slowly towards us, and we realised it was Orlick. He told us that some more convicts had escaped from the prison ship, and he seemed to act strangely as he walked with us along the road back.

On my return to the house, I was surprised to find a crowd of people in the kitchen. While Joe had been out that evening, someone had broken into our house and they had hit Mrs Joe on the head, injuring her badly. Nothing had been taken, but a convict's leg-irons lay on the floor.

I immediately remembered the convict who I had helped two years before in the graveyard. However, I felt sure that the person who committed the crime was not him. I suspected Orlick because he had been so angry with my sister. However, I had no proof.

Mrs Joe was unable to speak or walk again after the attack, but she could draw, and one day, she drew a hammer. Biddy and I knew at once that the hammer meant the blacksmith's hammer, which meant Orlick! When Mrs Joe was able to sit in the kitchen again, we could see that she was scared of him.





Mrs Joe could not hurt me now and because Joe needed help in the house, Biddy came to cook and clean for us. At last, my life was improving.

Some years passed, and I continued my apprenticeship at the blacksmith's. My visits to Miss Havisham's house continued once a year. It seemed as though time, like her old clocks, had stopped there. I did not see Estella again during that time, although I often thought of her. And when it was time to leave, Miss Havisham always gave me a coin and told me to come back on my next birthday.

Biddy soon became an important member in our household. She looked after everything well, and also cared for my sister. Mrs Joe could no longer walk or speak, and now I felt sorry for her. As the weeks became months, and the months became years, I also saw how kind and good Biddy was.

One day, I said to her. 'Biddy, I want to become a fine gentleman.'

'But don't you think you are happier as you are, Pip?' she asked, surprised.

'No, Biddy,' I explained. 'I will never be happy unless I can lead a different life to the one I live now.'

She looked down and was quiet.

'I don't want to be just a blacksmith,' I continued. 'Ever since I met Estella at Miss Havisham's, I have wanted to improve myself. She is so beautiful and clever, and I admire her very much!'

After a moment, Biddy asked quietly, 'Do you want to become a gentleman to upset her, or to marry her? If you want to upset her, then you shouldn't care what she thinks; if you want to marry her, she probably isn't worth the effort.'

'That may be true,' I replied, 'but I still admire Estella so much!'

I knew that I was making a mistake, but I could not change my feelings.

Biddy told me then that she was glad I could talk to her, and said she would never tell anyone else.

'I will always tell you everything, Biddy!' I said.

'Until you're a fine gentleman,' she replied, in a strange, sad voice.

I wished that I could love Biddy! She was a far better person than Estella, but my heart was set on Estella.

It seemed impossible that my wish to become a gentleman would come true. But one evening, while Joe and I were at the village inn, listening to Mr Wopsle reading aloud from a newspaper, I noticed that a stranger was looking at us. Then I remembered him. He was the gentleman I had met on the stairs at Miss Havisham's house, years before.

'Is your apprentice, Pip, here?' the dark man asked us, looking at Joe. 'I need to speak privately to you both.'

He sounded like an important man, so we invited him to come back to the workshop with us. Once there, he said he was Mr Jaggers, a lawyer from London.

'I am working for someone but I cannot tell you their name,' he explained. 'I have to tell you that Pip has great expectations. He will receive a large amount of property in future, so now he must have an education. The only condition is that he does not ask who his benefactor is.'

I immediately agreed. Joe was so surprised that he did not object at all when Mr Jaggers asked him if he could end my apprenticeship immediately.

'I have a large sum of money for you,' Mr Jaggers continued, turning to me, 'and your education will begin soon in London, with Mr Matthew Pocket. He will be your teacher and he will make a gentleman of you! But first, take these twenty pounds to buy some new clothes.'

When Joe was asked if he needed any money for losing me at the blacksmith's, he replied, 'Pip is welcome to go and find his fortune. Money makes no difference to my feelings for him. We will always be best friends.'

Joe was so good and kind, and really cared about me. When he and Biddy realised that I was to leave them in just a week, they both congratulated me, but they did not say much more than that. I knew that they were sad that I was leaving. My sister did not understand what was happening, although Biddy tried to explain everything to her.

I decided that when I had bought my new clothes, I would put them on at Uncle Pumblechook's house.

'I don't want all the poor people in this village to see me in my fine clothes,' I explained to Joe and Biddy.

They were both silent. Uncle Pumblechook, however, was delighted.

'I will never forget you, Joe,' I said, as I left the blacksmith's a week later. However, in truth, I had begun to feel more and more ashamed of Joe's poor education. When I said goodbye to Biddy, I asked if she could teach Joe to speak better, but to my surprise she refused. Suddenly, I felt lonelier than ever before.



Check

your Understanding Chapter 4

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To fix the wooden box, he needed a/an .... and some nails.
   a. oven b. opener c. hammer d. mixer
2. Try to be calm; don't be ....
   a. upset b. tolerant c. confused d. astonished
3. Never .... the same mistakes, or it would be a kind of stupidity.
   a. deal b. make c. damage d. do
4. You know that my .... is set on my children. They are the world for me.
   a. elbow b. lung c. stomach d. heart
5. The police .... him to commit the murder.
   a. evaluate b. suspect c. appreciate d. respect

Definitions :

1. Someone who is invited to an event or special occasion is a/an ....
   a. operator b. attendant c. guest d. host
2. A/An .... means a building that belongs to you.
   a. honesty b. facility c. ability d. property
3. Isnformation that shows something is true a ....
   a. accusation b. proof c. robbery d. theft
4. Your heart is .... on something when you really want it or want to do it.
   a. set b. stir c. stare d. sit
5. Feeling that good things will happen means ....
   a. objection b. determination c. evaluation d. expectation

CHAPTER 5

Chapter 5 character list

- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Matthew Pocket : Miss Havisham's cousin; father of Herbert Pocket; Pip's teacher in London
- Mr Wemmick : Mr Jagger's clerk
- Herbert Pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham; who Pip will live with in London
- Miss Havisham : a rich, elderly lady
- Estella : Miss Havisham's adopted daughter
- Miss Havisham's half-brother
- Miss Havisham's fiancé
- Startop : a man who is staying with Herbert Pocket and Pip
- Bentley Drummle : a man who is staying with Herbert Pocket and Pip



Vocabulary

ahead of you	أمامك	inherit(ed) (v)	يرث
look pleased	يبدو مسرورًا	share (n)	نصيب (فى الميراث)
a quick goodbye	وداع سريع	jealous (adj)	غيور
clerk (n)	موظف / مساعد	got engaged	تم خطبتها
unpleasant (adj)	كريه - غير سار	against the advice of	ضد نصيحة ...
lodgings (n)	غرف مفروشة (بها الأثاث)	trust (ed) (v)	يثق
difficulty (n)	صعوبة / مشكلة	receive the news	يستقبل الأخبار
disappointed (adj)	محبط	get dressed	يرتدى (ملابسه)
footsteps (n)	خطوات الأقدام	despite	بالرغم من
handsome (adj)	وسيم	ordinary (adj)	عادى
cheerful (adj)	مرح - بشوش	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى (طفلا)	good-natured (adj)	ذو طبيعة جيدة
suitable (adj)	مناسب / ملائم	grumpy (adj)	عصبى/متذمر/صعب المزاج
fiancé (n)	خطيب / خاطب		
cruel (adj)	قاسى	proudly (adv)	بفخر / بعزة
take revenge on	يثأر من	wooden castle	قلعة خشبية
convinced (adj)	مقتنع	dare (d) (v)	يجرؤ
half-brother (n)	أخ غير شقيق	rob (bed) (v)	يسرق - يسلب

Words and their definitions

- **adopt** : to take legal responsibility for a person. يتبنى
- **clerk** : a person who works in an office. موظف
- **dare** : to be brave enough to do something. يجرؤ
- **fiancé** : a man who has promised to marry someone. خطيب
- **get engaged** : to formally promise to marry someone. يخطب
- **inherit** : to receive money from someone after they die. يرث
- **lodgings** : a room or rooms in a house that a person rents. غرف مفروشة
- **share** : to divide something so that each person gets a part of it. يتقاسم/يشارك
- **take revenge on**: to do something bad because someone has upset you or made you sad. يثأر



I visited Miss Havisham, wearing my new clothes.

'I have been given a fortune since I last saw you, Miss Havisham,' I said. 'And I am so grateful!'

'I know,' she replied, 'and you have a good life ahead of, you. But remember to follow Mr Jaggers' advice!'

She looked pleased as I said goodbye, and I felt sure that she was my secret benefactor. After all, Mr Jaggers had told me that I was to be educated in London by Mr Matthew Pocket, one of Miss Havisham's relatives.

When I was sitting on the coach to London the next day, after a quick goodbye to Joe, my sister and Biddy, I felt as though the whole world was waiting for me.

It was five long hours before I arrived at Mr Jaggers' office in London. His clerk, Mr Wemmick, explained that because Mr Jaggers was still at work, I should wait for him in his office. It was an unpleasant place, and I was sad that I had left the blacksmith's.

When Mr Jaggers returned, he said that I should go to my lodgings at Barnard's Inn, where I would share rooms with Mr Matthew Pocket's son. He wanted to take me to his father's house in a few days' time, so that I could meet my new teacher.

'Here is some money, Pip,' Mr Jaggers continued. 'It is a lot of money! But don't worry; I will know how much you spend, in case there are any difficulties.'

This was good news! I felt happier now, and I agreed to go to my lodgings with Mr Wemmick. He told me that Mr Matthew Pocket lived in Hammersmith, five miles away.

When we came to Barnard's Inn, I was disappointed. It looked dusty and gloomy. Mr Wemmick left me at the door, but no one answered it.

I thought that no one would come and let me in, but after about half an hour, I heard footsteps. A tall, thin young man appeared.

'Mr Pip?' he asked. 'I am sorry! I went to buy some fruit at the market and I thought you would arrive later than this.'

He invited me in. It was only when he turned to speak to me, in the light of the window, that I saw who he was – the pale young gentleman!

Herbert Pocket was the pale young man. He was not handsome, but his face was cheerful, and I liked him at once. However, I had a strange feeling that he would never become rich.

We immediately began talking. I discovered that Miss Havisham had once thought she might adopt Herbert, so she had invited him to visit her. That was on the day that I had met Herbert, and fought with him in the garden. After that visit, however, Herbert was not invited to Miss Havisham's again.

'She didn't think I was suitable,' Herbert told me. 'But if she had adopted me, I would probably be rich now. And if that had happened, then I might even be Estella's fiancé, too!'

'You must be disappointed!' I said.

'No, not at all,' he replied. 'I think I have had a lucky escape! Estella is proud and cruel. Miss Havisham adopted her, you know. She wants to use her – to take revenge on men!'



I was very surprised. Estella was adopted! Why did Miss Havisham want to use her in such a strange way?

When we sat down to eat, Herbert continued to tell me about Miss Havisham. First, however, he told me how to behave at the dinner table, for which I was grateful.

I soon discovered from Herbert that Mr Jaggers was Miss Havisham's lawyer. Mr Jaggers had suggested that Herbert's father, Mr Matthew Pocket, should be my teacher in London. I was convinced now that Miss Havisham was my secret benefactor!

Herbert told me more about Miss Havisham. He explained that when she was a young woman, she and her half-brother had inherited a fortune from their father.

It was not long, however, before her half-brother spent his share of the money and became jealous of her. He wanted to have her money, and he started to think about how he could get it from her. He didn't care if he had to hurt her to get it.

Soon afterwards, Miss Havisham got engaged. During this time, she gave most of her fortune to her fiancé. This was against the advice of her cousin, Matthew Pocket, who warned her not to trust her future husband too much. Miss Havisham became very angry with Matthew Pocket and ordered him to leave her house. He has never been there since.

'Is your father still angry with Miss Havisham for ordering him to leave?' I asked Herbert.

'No, he's not angry at all,' replied Herbert. 'But when Miss Havisham sent him away that day, she said that he wanted to get her money himself. If he visited now, it would look as if he still wanted her money .'

On the morning of the wedding, when everything was ready and the guests were expected, there was some bad news. Miss Havisham's fiancé had left her! She received the news at twenty to nine in the morning, while she was getting dressed. Ever since that time, more than twenty-five years ago, neither Miss Havisham, nor her house, had changed at all. Even the clocks in the house had been stopped.

'But why didn't Miss Havisham's fiancé marry her?' I asked. 'He would have had all her property then.'

'Perhaps he was already married,' Herbert said.

It seemed that the fiancé had, in fact, planned everything with Miss Havisham's half-brother, hoping to take as much money from her as they could. Nobody knew if the two men were still alive, or not.

The following day, I was taken to meet the Pocket family at their home in Hammersmith in West London. They lived by the river in an old house. When we arrived, we found Herbert's younger brothers and sisters playing noisily in the garden. Despite the place being very ordinary, it was a happy house, and I immediately felt comfortable there.

Mr Matthew Pocket and his wife were as cheerful as their son, and made me welcome. After they showed me my room, they introduced me to two other young men who were also staying there. We soon got to know each other very well. Startop was good-natured, but Bentley Drummle was proud and grumpy.



I was learning how to live like a young gentleman and improving my education because I would be very rich one day. Mr Jaggers gave me more money whenever I asked, which was quite often. I noticed, however, that he never laughed, and everyone seemed scared of him.

One day, while waiting in Mr Jaggers' office, I had a conversation with Mr Wemmick about Mr Jaggers' work. I noticed that Mr Wemmick was proudly wearing a ring. He told me that it was a present from people he had worked with.

I was invited to Mr Wemmick's house. He lived with his father some distance from the centre of London, in a strange building that looked like a small wooden castle.

Mr Wemmick told me that all of London's criminals were afraid of Mr Jaggers, so they left him alone. I learnt that Mr Jaggers did not even lock his house at night, and often said, 'I want to see the man who'll dare to rob me!'

Check
your Understanding Chapter 5

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. We all were .... of the Egyptian Handball Team who came fourth in the Olympic Games.
   a. ashamed b. proud c. ignorant d. anxious
2. Marwa isn't .... for this job. She is too young.
   a. abnormal b. social c. suitable d. valuable
3. She often smiles; never frown. She is a/an .... person.
   a. excited b. interested c. careful d. cheerful
4. When something isn't rare, it is ....
   a. impossible b. extinct c. ordinary d. unavailable
5. When he gets up, he is usually .... Don't annoy him.
   a. grumpy b. friendly c. delighted d. pleased

- **Definitions :**

1. To .... means to do something bad to someone who was unpleasant to you.
   a. take after b. take control c. take turns d. take revenge
2. To be strong or dare enough to something that is risky is to ....
   a. dare b. care c. purify d. clarify
3. A/An .... is a part of something that has been divided.
   a. cattle b. battle c. share d. group
4. To formally promise to marry someone means to ....
   a. get ahead b. get around c. get arrested d. get engaged
5. .... means feeling unhappy and angry because someone else has something you want.
   a. Ambiguous b. Jealous c. Poisonous d. Precious

CHAPTER 6

Chapter 6 character list

- Mr Jaggers : a lawyer
- Herbert Pocket : a relative of Miss Havisham; Pip's friend in London; son of Pip's teacher
- Startop : Pip's friend and house-mate
- Bentley Drummle : Pip's house-mate
- Molly : Mr Jaggers' housekeeper
- Matthew Pocket : Pip's teacher in London; Miss Havisham's cousin
- Biddy : teacher and friend to Pip
- Joe Gargery : the husband of Pip's older sister; a blacksmith
- Mrs Joe : Pip's older sister
- Two convicts
- Magwitch : the convict Pip helped to escape





Vocabulary

serve (d) (v)	يخدم	argue (d) (v)	يجادل
boast (ed) (v)	يتفاخر	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
talk boastfully	يتحدث بتفاخر	relief (n)	ارتياح - انشراح الصدر
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	at the request of	بناء على طلب ....
a form of	شكل من أشكال	sincerely (adv)	بإخلاص
entertainment	التسلية	tutor (n)	معلم خاص
anxious (adj)	قلق - مهموم	hold on to	يمسك بقوة
housekeeper(n)	مديرة منزل	nervously (adv)	بعصبية / بتوتر
strength (n)	قوة	annoyed (adj)	متضايق
wrist (n)	رسغ (اليد)	cough (ed) (v)	يكح - يسعل
sleeves (n)	أكمام (القميص)	affectionately (adv)	بحنان - بعطف
scars (n)	ندبات	unfriendly (adj)	غير ودود / غير ودى
remarkable (adj)	جدير بالملاحظة - بارز	recognise (d) (v)	يتعرف على
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	coach (n)	حافلة / مركبة
attention (n)	أهتمام	avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب
make good use of	يستغل - يحسن استخدام	shiny (adj)	لامع / مشرق
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	life sentence (n)	عقوبة السجن مدى الحياة
enthusiastic (adj)	متحمس	came back to	عاد ليطاردني
audience (n)	جمهور	haunt me	

A few days afterwards, I was invited to dinner at Mr Jaggers' house with Herbert Pocket, Startop and Bentley Drummle.

Mr Jaggers lived in a large, gloomy building, not far from his office. We all sat down at a big table. There was plenty for everyone to eat and drink, but Mr Jaggers kept everything at his side, and served us himself.

When he saw Drummle, he immediately asked me who he was.

'That is Bentley Drummle,' I replied.

'So, Bentley Drummle is his name, is it?' he said. Mr Jaggers thought about this information for a moment before saying, 'I like the look of him!'

Mr Jaggers spent a lot of time looking at Drummle. He talked to Drummle for a long time, and I heard Drummle boasting that he was

much stronger than Startop and me. We were both annoyed, and Startop and I found ourselves talking boastfully as well. Our conversation became a competition to show who had the best skills.

Mr Jaggers seemed to enjoy our talk as a form of entertainment. But I didn't enjoy it at all. I don't know why I said some of the things I did, but being among these people seemed to make me behave that way.

Just then, a woman of about forty entered the room. She was tall and thin, with pale eyes and long hair, and she gave Mr Jaggers an anxious look as she put more food on the table. She seemed to be worried that Mr Jaggers would say something bad about the food. He introduced her as Molly, his housekeeper.

'Now, if you gentlemen want to see some real strength, show them your wrists, Molly!' Mr Jaggers continued.

She pulled up her sleeves and showed them to us. One of her wrists had terrible scars on it; it must have been cut badly in the past.

'I have never met a man or a woman with stronger hands than Molly,' Mr Jaggers said. 'They are remarkable! Don't you just think so?'

We all took turns to look at her arms. Then, Mr Jaggers thought that Molly was getting too much attention, so he told her to leave the room again.

'At half-past nine, gentlemen,' said Mr Jaggers, 'We need to finish. Please make good use of your time here.'

Until that time, Drummle continued to boast about things he had done, which Mr Jaggers seemed to encourage. However, when Drummle left the house with Startop, Drummle realised that he no longer had an enthusiastic audience for his boasting, and the two started to argue.

Before leaving, I told Mr Jaggers that I did not like Drummle at all. He advised me to keep away from him and then he said good night.

Fortunately, however, Drummle finished his education with Mr Matthew Pocket soon afterwards and returned home, to my great relief. A few weeks later, a letter arrived from Biddy. She wrote:

Dear Mr Pip,

I am writing to you at the request of Mr Joe Gargery to let you know that he is going to be in London and would be very glad to see you. He will arrive at nine o'clock tomorrow morning and hopes that this will be a good time for you. I am sure that you will be happy to see him because you always had a good heart.

Your poor sister is much the same as when you left. We talk about you every day and think about what you are saying and doing.

Yours sincerely,

Biddy

I wished that I could pay Joe not to come. He was my friend, but I was ashamed of him now. He wanted to visit me at Barnard's Inn, where I still had lodgings with Herbert. It was lucky, I thought, that he was not visiting me at my tutor's home in Hammersmith. I didn't want to introduce him to everyone there.

Early one morning, Joe arrived at my lodgings. He would not sit down. He looked very uncomfortable and he remained standing. He held on to his hat nervously. He seemed anxious not to do or say the wrong thing, but I was annoyed. If only he would not call me 'Sir' so often!

We ate breakfast with Herbert, who tried to help Joe to feel comfortable. But Joe coughed too much, sat too far away from the table, and dropped food everywhere. It was only when Herbert left for work, and we were alone, that I found out why he had come.

'Miss Havisham wishes to see you, Sir,' Joe said. 'And she wants you to know that Estella has come home.'

I hoped that Joe could not see how I felt.

'Pip, my dear friend,' he said, affectionately. 'I wish you well!'

Then he left. A few minutes later, I was sorry that I had been so unfriendly to Joe. I hurried outside, hoping to call him back, but it was too late. I could not see him anywhere.

I decided to go home the following day. Although I thought of staying with Joe, I told myself that a room would not be ready for me at the blacksmith's.

I told myself that it would be better for Joe if I stayed at a hotel instead, so I found one near Miss Havisham's house.

As I was waiting to leave London on the coach, I saw two convicts standing nearby. They wore leg-irons and handcuffs; their guard had a gun. I recognised one of the convicts immediately. It was the man who had given me a shiny new coin at the village inn a long time ago. I hoped that he would not recognise me. After all, I was older now, and dressed like a gentleman!

When the coach arrived, the two convicts and their guard climbed up, sitting just behind me. I tried not to look at them, but I could not avoid their conversation.



'When I first went to prison,' I heard the first convict saying. 'I was only inside for a few months. When I was told that I could leave, another convict, Magwitch, asked me to help him. He wanted me to find a boy who had helped him, years before, when he had escaped and was hiding on the marshes. Magwitch didn't know me then, but he gave me a shiny new coin to give to that boy, if I ever found him. And I did!'

'So the convict I gave the food and file to, all those years ago, is called Magwitch!' I thought.

'Huh!' said the second convict. 'Magwitch trusted you then, did he?'

'Yes, he did,' the first convict replied. 'But he didn't know me very well.'

'Magwitch got a life sentence for that escape, you know!' the guard said.

Memories came back to haunt me, and I was scared. I got off the coach as soon as I could, and walked the rest of the way. It was late when I arrived at the hotel. I was feeling very tired, but I didn't sleep very well that night.

Check your Understanding Chapter 6

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. During their journey, they had to stay a night in a/an .... They all slept in the same room.
   a. restaurant   b. café   c. inn   d. airport

2. He always .... of his family and his position. I got bored of him.
   a. boosts   b. boasts   c. cares   d. cures

3. We had much .... in the park last weekend.
   a. entertainment   b. improvement   c. environment   d. development

4. When the doctor told them that their son was alive, they all sighed in ....
   a. objection   b. anger   c. sadness   d. relief

5. In the 17^{th} century, people used to travel in a/an ....
   a. coach   b. aeroplane   c. aircraft   d. bus

• Definitions :

1. A/An .... is a permanent mark is left on your skin after you have had a cut or wound.
   a. operation   b. scar   c. owner   d. bar

2. Smooth and bright means ....
   a. misty   b. dusty   c. stormy   d. shiny

3. .... means unusual and surprising and therefore deserving attention or praise.
   a. Remarkable   b. Flexible   c. Readable   d. Valuable

4. The part of a piece of clothing that covers all or part of your arm means a/an ....
   a. occasion   b. belief   c. sleeve   d. offer

5. A/An .... is the part of your body where your hand joins your arm.
   a. ankle   b. eyebrow   c. wrist   d. tongue

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٤ - ١٤ - ٢ - ٢٩٤